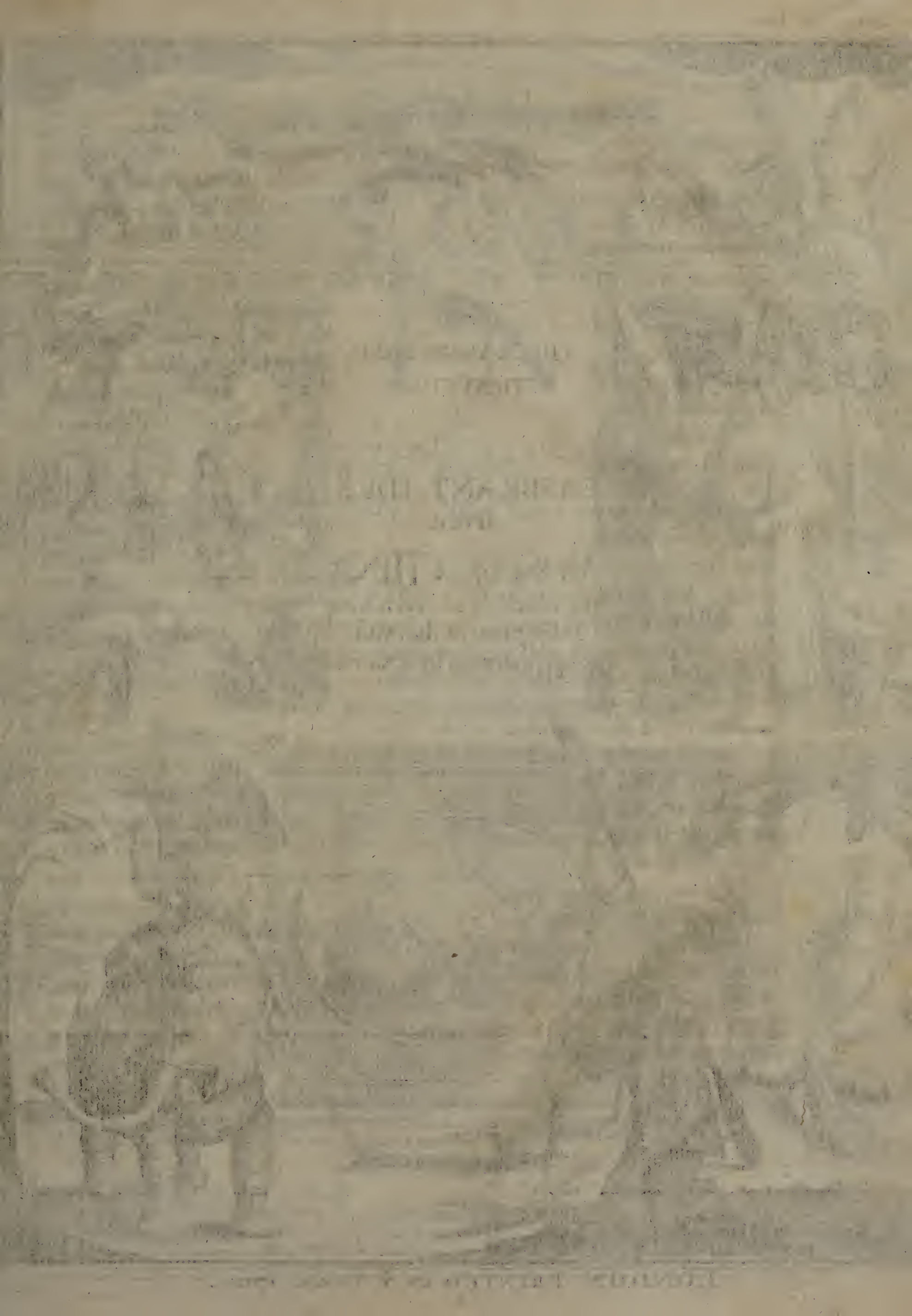


X - 3



X - 3.

2 - 1.





LONDON PRINTED IN Y YEAR. 1705.

Three Years Travels
FROM
M O S C O W
OVER-LAND TO
C H I N A :
THRO'

Great *Ustiga*, *Siriania*, *Permia*, *Sibiria*, *Daour*,
Great *Tartary*, &c. to *Peking*.

CONTAINING,
An exact and particular Description of the Extent and
Limits of those Countries, and the Customs of the Barbarous In-
habitants; with reference to their Religion, Government, Marriages,
daily Employments, Habits, Habitations, Diet, Death, Funerals, &c.

Written by his Excellency *E. YSBRANTS IDES*,
Ambassador from the Czar of *Muscovy* to the Emperor of *China*.

Illustrated with a large Map of the Countries, drawn by the Ambassador
upon his Journey, and many curious Cuts.

To which is annex'd an accurate
Description of CHINA,

Done Originally by a *Chinese* Author: With several Remarks
by way of Commentary, alluding to what our *European*
Authors have writ of that Country.

*Printed in Dutch by the Direction of Burgomaster Witzen, formerly
Ambassador in England; and now Faithfully done into English.*

L O N D O N :
Printed for *W. Freeman*, *J. Walthoe*, *T. Newborough*, *J. Nicholson*, and
R. Parker. 1706.



Author's Epistle Dedicatory.

To the most Serene and most Potent Sovereign Czar, and Great Prince, PETER ALEXEWITZ, by the Grace of God, Emperor of the whole Great, Little, and White Russia; Monarch of Muscow, Kiof, Vladimirof, and Novogorod; Czar of Kasan, Czar of Astracan, Czar of Sibiria; Lord of Pleskow, Great Duke of Smolensko, Tweer, Jugoria, Permia, Weatken, Bulgaria, &c. Lord and great Prince of Novogorod, of the Nederigen Countries, Zernigou, Refau, Polosko, Rostof, Jearoslaf, Beloferia, Udoria, Obdoria, Kondinia, and of the whole North Sea: Commander and Lord of the Ivershian Countries, the Kartalinschian and Grufinschian Czars, the Kabardinschian Dominions, the Zerkassian and Gorfischian Princes, and many other Countries and Territories, extending East, West and North; The Inheritance of his Ancestors.

Most Illustrious and most Potent C Z A R and Monarch,

Most Gracious Sovereign,

TIS well known to all who are acquainted with the Descriptions of the World, that your Czarish Majesty Governs with a Sovereign Imperial Sway, a considerable and conspicuous part of *Europe*: And considering that the insufficiency of my Head and my Pen, would not allow me to describe the whole State of Great, Little and White *Russia*, I have here attempted a short view of your Majesty's Kingdoms of *Sibiria* and *Daour*, which I now with utmost humility lay before your Feet, with the Annex'd Map; to the end that all the World may see that your Czarish Majesty's Great and Powerful Command takes

The Author's Epistle Dedicatory.

in a great part of the Universe, not only in *Europe* but likewise in *Asia*; I having travelled over the most considerable and conspicuous part of these wide-extended Countries, when your Imperial Majesty did in the Year 1692 command me to go upon an Embassy to the King of *China*; and that Journey being by the Grace of God, and your Czarish Majesty's bountiful protection, brought to a happy conclusion in the Year 1695.

Besides, most Illustrious Monarch, your Majesty's Royal Pleasure has lodged an Obligation upon me to impart to the curious World what I saw and observ'd in my Journey; and my ingagement is still inforc'd by this consideration, that your Imperial Majesty's Dominions out of *Europe*, are for the most part unknown, in regard that only *Russians*, and no *German* had hitherto travell'd thro' great *Tartary* to *China*: However, I have here to the utmost of my Power affected truth and brevity, leaving the more prolix accounts to those who make it their business to describe Countries.

In the next place, most Serene Monarch, my principal aim in this sorry Performance, is to give the whole World to know, that besides your Imperial Majesty's known Puissant Monarchy; there are many other unknown Forreign Countries, Confines, and adjacent People, who in effect owe their Safety and Security to your Czarish Majesty's goodness, and in process of time can't avoid stooping and paying due homage to your Imperial Majesty's Sovereign Authority.

At least, most Puissant Sovereign and Lord, all clear and impartial Heads, must needs be sensible that your Czarish Majesty's whole Empire, with the Kingdoms, Principalities and Countries therein included, is justly compared to a Terrestrial Paradise. For what advantages

The Author's Epistle Dedicatory.

tages do's the Universe afford that are not to be found here? What Treasures and Minerals, such as Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Salt-peter, Sulphur, Salt; what rich plenty of these and the like do's the Earth harbour in her bosom, which hitherto were not brought to light; but now thro' your Czarish Majesty's Fatherly bounty and wise Government, groan for their freedom and relaxation.

The *Palus Mæotis* is subject to your Imperial Majesty's Sovereignty; and the *Caspian* Sea, which to the amazement of all Naturalists, has no visible communication with the Ocean, waits only for the honour of being covered and adorned with your Majesty's Naval Force, in order to give an In-let and Out-let, to immense Treasures in the course of a regulated Trade to the *East*. The *Tanais* again presents us with a Wonder: your Czarish Majesty's Men of War and Pompous Gallies have struck such a terror into its Mouth, which had been shut up for some Years before, that now it opens of its self and dares not to stay for its Barriers; by which means the black Sea is become accessible, and entertains a Communication Southward and Westward, with the Mediteranean Sea and with the great Ocean. Nor is the *Duina* crown'd with less glory, as finding it self united with the white Sea, by which means it hands the Commerce to the Ocean, and in after times will disappoint those who mean to ingross the command of that wild Element. The Rivers *Uda* and *Tungur* in *Siberia* seem to prepare for the same end, to disembogue in the *Amoersbian* or Eastern Sea: And in a word every thing provides to welcome the Sons of *Neptune*, fitted out by your Czarish Majesty's unwearied care, as being rare and uncommon Guests.

The

The Author's Epistle Dedicatory.

The Power and Populoufness of your Majesty's Dominions, most Illustrious Monarch, is not to be exprefs'd. The fertility of your Countries is without a parallel : And over and above that, the multitude of Rivers that spring up all round, shew their unanimity in conspiring to serve and accomodate your People, by affording them many hundred sorts of excellent Fish, that are not to be met with in any other part of the World. The Woods, adorned with a thousand sorts of Trees, display all that Nature can produce; and when by the season of the Year their Leaves and Greens are dead, they seem to revive in all sorts of Beasts, that are of use either for Venison or rich Furs : In so much that their Herds are always numerous, and their Bodies in good case. The overflowing plenty of tame Cattle, and Animals; and the wonderful multiplicity of their kinds, I pass over in silence, as being beyond the reach of a Pen to exprefs. But this I must say by way of conclusion, that your Czarish Majesty's Country is a Land flowing with Milk and Honey ; and surpasses most Countries in the World, in its Riches, in its healthful Air, and in the fertility of its Soil.

But after all, most Illustrious Monarch, tho' these Gifts and Advantages of Nature are to be highly valued ; this noble and wide extended Monarchy could not have been crown'd with a greater happiness than to have such a matchless Sovereign bestow'd upon 'em, who, in effect, as a Wonder of the World, has by his penetrating and accomplish'd Genius, brought up as a new Light the Invention and Establishment of so many useful Sciences, Arts, and Handycraft-Trades ; by which means the Eyes of his Subjects are opened ; so that in process of time and experience, which discovers all things, they will
equal

The Author's Epistle Dedicatory.

equal or possibly go beyond the Politest and most Ingenious People of the World. And indeed I can scarce imagine, that the Histories and Records of Time, afford any such extraordinary Heroe, as can parallel the solid greatness of your Czarish Majesty, which questionless will be immortaliz'd by the Politest Pens.

The Consideration of these things may seem to charge me with a daring forwardness in appearing before your Czarish Majesty's Throne, with this mean fruit of my humblest Devotion and Allegiance, which doubtless will be expos'd to the Censures and Calumnious Reflections of ill-natur'd People of this critical Age. It may be offered that my consciousness of my own weakness, and the just dread of laying such a performance before your penetrating Eyes, and of misusing the name of such an unexpressible Power, ought to deter me from such an Undertaking. No, most Gracious Sovereign, the Bounty and Clemency of your Czarish Majesty, renown'd all over the World, has been measur'd out to me in such over-flowing plenty ; particularly, the unspeakable marks of your favour, and the continued irradiation of your Countenance upon me, have been so open and publick, that in the whole course of my Life, I shall not be able to pay the due Acknowledgment and Praise. This encourages me to depend upon your Imperial Majesty's Protection of this work, how mean soever it may be ; and to lay it before your Czarish Majesty's Feet as the simple Product of a good and an humbly loyal heart : And that once granted, 'tis not in the power of the Universe to make me uneasy upon this head.

Most puissant Monarch, I pray to God with the strongest passion of my Heart, and beseech the Almighty, that he would please to crown your Czarish Majesty's sacred
Person

The Author's Epistle Dedicatory.

Person with perfect health for many Years upon Earth, and with a singular degree of prosperity and glory ; that he would please to confirm and establish your ancient and hereditary Throne to the latest days of Posterity, with success over its Enemies, to the everlasting Prosperity of the People and the Confusion of their Enemies ; That he would graciously please to preserve it for a Looking-glass to the World that has not a parallel. The small remainder of my Life that is yet to come, I desire to pass and finish under the Wings of God and your Majesty's protection, and your most gracious influence ; and so long as I have breath to draw, to continue with utmost Reverence and Devotion, in your Czarish Majesty's Service. This is the sincere wish, of

Most Illustrious,

Most Potent Czar and Monarch ;

Most Gracious Sovereign and Lord ;

Your Czarish Majesty's

Most humble Servant

E. Y SBRANTS IDES.

THE

THE
CONTENTS
OF THE
Three Years Land-Travels.

- Chap. I. **T**HE Author's Journey from Muscow to the Limits
of Asia, with Remarks on the Provinces and
Towns thro' which he pass'd, Page 1
- Chap. II. A Description of the Rivers Suzawaia and Kama ;
and a very particular Account of the Country, Government, Cu-
stoms, &c. of the Siberian Tartars, p. 6
- Chap. III. A further Account of the Siberian and Kalmakian Tar-
tars ; and a Description of the Castle of Utka, the River To-
bols, and the Towns of Neujanskoi, Tumeen, and Tobo-
lesk, p. 9
- Chap. IV. A Description of the River Irtis, the Inhabitants upon
its Banks, the City of Surgut, with some curious Observations of
Dogs, Foxes and Beavers, p. 14
- Chap. V. A Description of Narum, of the Ostiacks, their Idols,
Customs, &c. and of the Banks of the Obi, p. 19
- Chap. VI. A Description of the Village Makofskoi, the River Ke-
ta, and the City of Jenizeskoi ; with a curious Account of the
Mammuts Tongues and Legs, p. 24
- a Chap.

The Contents of the

- Chap. VII. *A Description of the Island Ribnoy, the City of Ilinskoi, the Tungusians, their Necromancy and odd Customs; and of the Negromantick Waterfall,* p. 28
- Chap. VIII. *A Description of Buratskoi, Bulanskoi; the Customs, Cattle, &c. of the Burattians; of Jekutskoi, the Lake Baikol, and the Castle of Bakania, with Remarks on the Pagan Superstition,* p. 32
- Chap. IX. *A Description of Ilunskoi, Tanzienskoi, Undinskoi, Jarauna, Nerzinskoy, &c. with Remarks on the Tungusians, Mongolians and Russian Cossacks,* p. 39
- Chap. X. *A Description of the Muscovite Frontiers towards China, of the River called the Silver River, the Tartarian Wilderness, the Chinese Frontiers, &c.* p. 46
- Chap. XI. *The Borders of China describ'd; the Chinese Province of Xixigar, the Daurians, the manner of Travelling, and the Author's reception in that Country,* p. 52
- Chap. XII. *A Description of the Chinese Buildings, Imagery on Walls, a holy Mountain, a steep Rock with an Idol-Temple, annual Tiger-hunting, &c.* p. 56
- Chap. XIII. *An exact Description of the Chinese Wall, Chinese Musick, Diet, Furniture, Idolatry, &c. their acting of a Play, &c. Of Galchan, and Xungunxa,* p. 60
- Chap. XIV. *The Author's Progress and Entry into Peking, his Reception, the Ceremony of his Entertainment by the Emperor, &c.* p. 65
- Chap. XV. *A Continuation of the Ceremony, the Palace describ'd, the Emperor's Equipage, Diversions, &c. the Customs of the Citizens,* p. 71
- Chap. XVI. *The Jesuits treat the Ambassador. An Account of the Emperor's Elephants, of Dogs, Apes, &c. The Ambassador sets out upon his return homewards. A Description of the Tartarian Desert, the Joolschian Hills, &c.* p. 79
- Chap.

Three Years Land-Travels.

Chap. XVII. Of the Rivers Sadun, Kailan, and Gan. The great Inconveniencies of travelling in that Country, and the danger of Field burning, p. 83

Chap. XVIII. The progress of the Journey to the River Argum, &c. and arrival at Muscow, p. 86

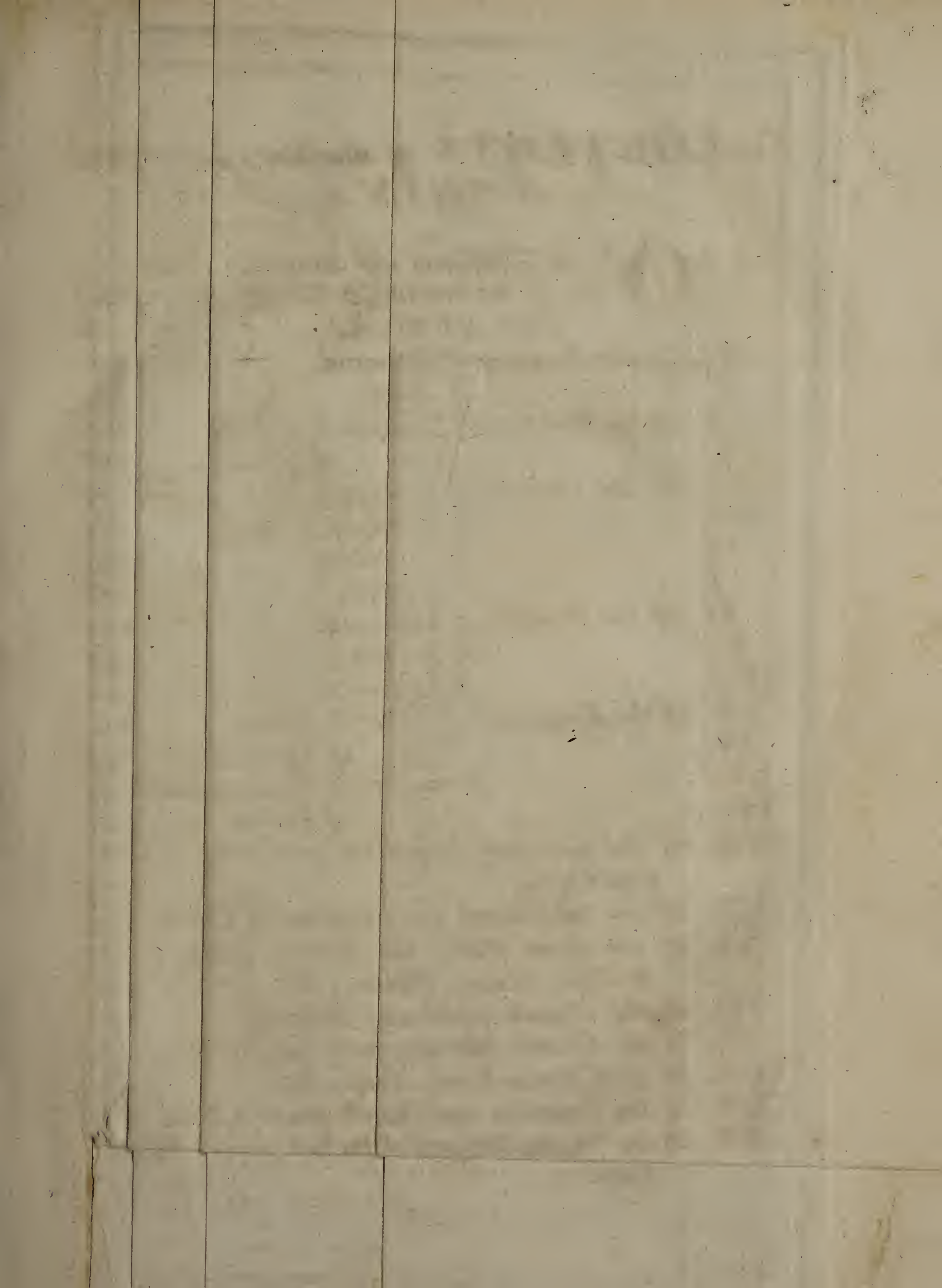
Chap. XIX. The Authors Reflections upon his Travels, and Review with reference to the Samojedes, the Weigats, the Poias, and several observable particulars, p. 89

Chap. XX. A particular Account of the Inhabitants, Cities, Castles, &c. near the Rivers Kugur, Ofer, Jenisea, &c. And a short Account of China, p. 95

THE

The CONTENTS of the *Short Description* of *CHINA*.

Chap. I.	O <i>F the Division of the Empire,</i>	Page 115
II.	<i>Of the Province of Peking, the Imperial Court and Metropolis,</i>	118
III.	<i>Of the Province of Xantung,</i>	121
IV.	<i>Of the Province of Xansi,</i>	124
V.	<i>Of the Kingdom or Province of Xienfi,</i>	126
VI.	<i>Of the Province of Honan,</i>	128
VII.	<i>Of the Province of Leaotung,</i>	129
VIII.	<i>Of Nanking,</i>	134
IX.	<i>Of Chekiang,</i>	137
X.	<i>Of Kiangfi,</i>	138
XI.	<i>Of the Province of Huquang,</i>	140
XII.	<i>Of Suchuen,</i>	141
XIII.	<i>Of Queicheu,</i>	142
XIV.	<i>Of the Kingdom or Province of Junan,</i>	ibid.
XV.	<i>Of Quoangfi,</i>	143
XVI.	<i>Of Quoangtung,</i>	145
XVII.	<i>Of Fokien,</i>	148
XVIII.	<i>Of the bordering Countries, and their distance from China,</i>	153
XIX.	<i>Of the Inhabitants and Christians of China,</i>	155
XX.	<i>Of the Great Wall, the Rivers, Ships, Lakes, Bridges, Sluces, Havens, &c.</i>	161
XXI.	<i>Of the Chinese Faith and Doctrine,</i>	167
XXII.	<i>Of the Chinese Morality and Good Breeding,</i>	174
XXIII.	<i>Of the Chinese Trees, Fruits, &c.</i>	181
XXIV.	<i>Of the Countries and Islands round China,</i>	191
XXV.	<i>Of the Original Descent of the last Race of Chinese Emperors.</i>	197





A
DESCRIPTION
 Of the Three Years
LAND-TRAVELS
 OF HIS

Excellency *Evert Ysbrand Ides*, Ambassador from
 the Czars of *Muscovy*, to the Emperor of *China*.

C H A P. I.

The occasion of the Author's Journey to China. His Departure from Muscow in a Slead, and fatiguing Passage to Vologda, by reason of the Rains : Leaving that Place, and a Description of the River Dwina. Arrival at the City of Great Ustiga ; also at Solowitzjogda, and in the Province of Syrene, or Wollost-Usgy. A Description of the Natives which speak a particular Language. A conjecture concerning their Original, which they themselves are ignorant of. The Extent and Situation of their Country and Dwellings. His Travels yet more incommoded by the violent Rains. Arrival at Kaigorodt, where he and his Retinue staid several Weeks. The Barbarous plundering of that City by Robbers : His going thence to Solikamskoi. The difficulty of travelling from hence : His departure by Water. Saline Springs and Saltpits very numerous at Solikamskoi. The manner of conveying the Salt thence to the Ships, which are also described. The Ambassador and his Retinue pass out of Europe into Asia, on the River Kama.

THE most Illustrious great Czars and mighty Princes, *John* and *Peter Alexewitz*, my most gracious Lords, having in their Wise Council of State resolved to send a splendid Embassy, on some important Affairs, to the Great *Bogdaichan*, or Sovereign

B

reign of the famous Kingdom of *Kitai*, by us *Europeans* commonly called *China*: This obliged me with a welcome and favourable opportunity of traveling through part of the famous, but hitherto unknown, *Sibeirian* and *Kitaian* Countries, (never before visited by any *German*) and informing my self by credible witnesses of the remainder of those Lands, as well as obtaining a certain knowledge of several things with which the World hath not been hitherto truly acquainted. For by God's Paternal Providence, and the never enough to be praised particular favour of their *Czarish* Majesties, I obtained the great Honour of being dispatched their Envoy or Ambassador to the *Chinese* or *Kitaian* Court, furnished with sufficient Credentials and other Necessaries.

The Preparation of my Retinue and Equipage, took me up so much time, that I did not set out before the 14th of *March*, in 1692, when I went from *Muscow* in a Slead. The beginning of my Journey proved very uneasy, by reason of the violent Rain which accompanied us without intermission from *Muscow* to *Vollogda*, and occasioned such an Innundation, that our Sleads almost swam over the remaining Ice of the Rivulets and Brooks, and the overflowen deep Roads. However, by the Divine assistance, tho' not without difficulty, we at last reached the City of *Vollogda*, where I rested three Days in expectation of better Weather, which happened according to my wishes; for within two Days it froze so hard, and snowed so violently, that all the Water was froze up in Four and twenty Hours after; so that we could easily pass over all the Rivulets and Ditches in our Sleads, without any apprehension of danger. Wherefore the 22d of the same Month, I set forwards from *Vollogda* to *Suchina*, where I arrived on the 23d, and without stopping advanced forwards to the City of *Great Ustiga*, where the Rivers *Suchina* and *Irga*, proceeding from the same head, unite, and thereby compose the famous River *Dwina*; the name of which in the *German* Language imports a double River.

The Course of the *Suchina* is almost full North, through a fertile Country, and its Banks on each side are adorned with numerous well inhabited Villages, besides *Totma* an indifferent City situate on its left Shoar; and several Travellers annually pass this River, going from *Vollogda* to *Archangel*, in small Ships very well laden, as long as the Water is open: But the Stream running in a stony Channel, those Ships which pass it must be provided with good Plank at both ends, by reason of the multitude of hidden Rocks, and the rapidity of the Stream, which would otherwise soon sink them to the bottom. At the Mouth of this River is situate the City of *Great Ustiga*, where I
was

was obliged to stay about 24 Hours, partly on account of refreshment, and partly out of respect to my particular friends the *Waywodes*, who treated me with a splendid Dinner. Leaving that place I came the 29th of *March* to *Solowitzjogda*, a very large City, inhabited by many considerable Merchants, and several curious Artificers, especially, in Silver, Copper and Bone: here are also a great many Salt-pits that yield vast quantities of Salt, which are transported to *Vollogda*, and all over the Land.

I set out from this Place on the first of *April*, and the same Day reached the Province of *Sirene* or *Wollost-Usgy*; the Inhabitants of which speak a particular Language, that has not the least affinity with the *Muscovite*, but is somewhat like the Barbarous *German Livonian* Language; for some of my Retinue who understood that could understand a great part of the Speech of these People. They are of the *Greek Church*, and subject to his *Czarish Majesty*, to whom they pay their customary Tribute; tho' they are not under the Jurisdiction of any *Viceroy* or *Waywode*; but choose their own Judges amongst themselves, and important Causes which cannot be decided before them, are removed to the *Forreign Posolsche* or Ministers Court at *Muscow*, to be determined there. The Stature and Habit of both the Men and Women, are not very different from those of the *Russian* Commonalty; all which considered, I cannot but think that these People might antiently (urged by War or some other occasion) transplant themselves hither from the borders of *Livonia* or *Coral*. I asked some of them out of curiosity, concerning their Original; but they were not able to give me any account, whether their Ancestors came thither out of Foreign Countries or not, nor could they give any reason why their Language has no affinity with the *Russian*. They generally live by Agriculture, except that part of them which are employed in the Manufacture of Grey-Furrs; near the River *Zizol*. They inhabit a considerable tract of Land, which extends to the City of *Kaigorod*, and is about 70 *Sumka's* long, each *Sumka* being a large *German* Mile. These People don't live in Cities or Towns, but for the most part only in small Villages, built in the large Woods: and their Houses are like those of the *Russians*.

This Country terminating in a great Wood, we were again infested with a violent Rain, and such a Thaw, as in the space of one Night swelled the Waters to that degree, that I could not pass them without great difficulty: In this uneasy condition I remained four Days, during which time I was obliged to struggle with all the incident inconveniencies; our Sleads swam continually, and the Rivulets

and Brooks on each side of the Woods perpetually poured in upon us, so that, as tho' we had been in a Sea, we could neither proceed forwards nor return backwards: Nor would the Ice of the great Rivers bear any longer; notwithstanding which, by the help of Bridges and other proper means, at last sufficiently wet, on the 6th of *April* I reached *Kaigorod*, an indifferent large but strong City, situate on the River *Kama*.

From whence I designed to have set forwards immediately to *Solikamskoi*, the chief City of *Great Permia*, in order to prosecute my Journey to *Siberia*, over the Mountains of *Werchaturia*: But the Thaw at the end of Winter continuing, forced me to alter my resolution, and stay there several Weeks, till the opening of the River *Kama* favoured my departure by Water; during which time I made all necessary preparations for furthering my Journey. Another thing which occasion'd my stay here was the great damage that the City of *Kaigorod* had suffered lately by Robbers.

This misfortune which also fell upon the same Commandant of the Place that had that post when I was there, happen'd in the following manner. On a certain *Sunday* about Noon, several well manned Barks, with flying Colours, Drums and Hoboys, came Sailing on the River *Kama* to the City; the Men leaped on Shoar, whilst the innocent Inhabitants suspected no harm in time of Peace and a in quiet Country, but took them for Friends and Acquaintance from the Neighbouring Villages, met together to divert themselves; but the Robbers set the *South* part of the City on Fire, and falling upon the Inhabitants of the *North* quarter, cut all of them to pieces that came in their way, and at last went to the *Waiwod's* Apartment which they plundered, and besides, committed all manner of Hostilities, Insolencies and Outrages on his Servants; after which carrying off whatever they pleased, they returned to their Boats, and uninterrupted sailed down the *Kama*. But diligent search being made after these Birds of Prey, they were found to be a Rabble of run-away Servants gotten together, some of which were at last taken and tortured, and each of them punished according to his Crime. I caused Wood for Firing to be brought to warm me, and kept still upon my guard, appointing with utmost care a constant strong Watch by Water and by Land.

After my Vessel was equipped, and the *Kama* free of Ice, on the 23^d of *April* we set forwards, and safely arrived on the 27th in the City of *Solikamskoi*, from whence I should have gone over the Mountains of *Werchaturia*, which is only practicable in Winter; the multitude of the Morasses and deepness of the Roads rendring that way
utterly

utterly unpassable in Summer, for which reason all travelling Officers as well as Merchants, are necessitated to lye still the whole Summer in *Solikamskoi*, till they meet with hard lasting Winter Roads, 'Tis true indeed that 'tis possible to Sail round these Hills by Water, but that passage is absolutely forbidden, neither Commanders nor Merchants being allowed to go that way. Notwithstanding which, the Governour of *Solikamskoi* knowing that my Embassy would admit of no delay, ordered me to be immediately supplied with as many small Barks as were requisite to pass the River *Suzawaia*.

Solikamskoi is a very fine large and rich City, where several very considerable Merchants reside. Here are also many *Salt-works* or *Pits*, besides above 50 *Saline-Springs*, from 25 to 35 Ells deep, out of which great quantities of Salt are taken and boiled, and thence Shipped off in great Tide-Ships built for that purpose; each of which will easily stow from One hundred, to One hundred and twenty, thousand *Poeds*, that is, from 1600 to 2000 Tun; and is manned with about 7 or 800 Sailors and Labourers, and furnished with Kitchens, Bagnio's, and all sorts of Conveniencies. These Vessels are from 35 to 40 Ells long, and carry a Mast, to which is fixed a Sail of 30 Fathom broad, which they make use of to Sail up the River, when the Wind is good; but when they go down they only Row, and that chiefly to keep the Ship's head right, which the Rudder alone is not strong enough to do. They are flat bottomed, and have no Nails, or other Iron-work in them, but are made intirely of Wood. They float along the *Kama* with the Tide, till it falls into the famous River *Wolga*, where they are forced to be towed up against the Tide, or sail up if the Wind be favourable; but the Salt is unladen from *Kasan* to *Nisna*, on the *Wolga*, and at several convenient places.

The 14th of May I set forwards from *Solikamskoi* by Water, and passed on the *Ufolkat*, a small River about half a Mile from the City, again into the *Kama*: On which River we drove entirely out of *Europe* into *Asia*. So on *Whitsunday* I went on Shoar, and upon a high and beautiful Green Hill eat my last Dinner in *Europe* on the Grass. And after I had drank a Glas of Wine as a farewell to dear *Europe*, I immediately returned on Board, in order to proceed on our Voyage along the River; which was accompanied with several difficulties, as will appear by the second Chapter.

C H A P. II.

The Author's arrival at the River Suzawaia in Asia, which is not near so pleasant as the Kama River, which is here described. Arrival amongst the Siberian Tartars, who possess a very fine Country. A further Description of that People, their Religion, and manner of living. They Pray but once in a Year. Their Opinions, and the Ambassadors Discourse with them concerning their Religion. They know of no Devils. Their Funerals, and manner of burying Dogs. The Tartars have many Wives: The place and manner of their Lying in. Of their Marriages. A farther Discourse with them concerning their Religion. The Habit and dwelling Houses of the Tartars. Their employment consists chiefly in Hunting. A pleasant way of catching Wild Beasts. These Tartars live under the Protection of the Czar.

HAVING thus got out of *Europe*, entred *Asia*, and come to the *Asiatick* River *Suzawaia*, we found it far less agreeable than the beautiful *Kama*; which is an extraordinary fine River, blessed with all sorts of Fish, and from *Solikamskoi* to this Place adorned with populous Banks, which incessantly present to our view, very fine large Villages and Towns, several very Expensive Salt-works, Fertile Corn Grounds, fruitful Lands, large Fields beautified with all sorts of Flowers, Woods, &c. all very well worth seeing and extraordinary pleasant. But tho' the Banks of the *Zawaja*, which falls Westward into the *Kama*, are not less beautiful charming and fruitful, yet we found our passing this River very tedious: For by reason of the high Water we made but a very small Progress in several Days, being obliged to be towed along with a Line; however, at last, after twelve Days, and a tiresome tugging against the Stream, we came too, and touched at a pleasant Shoar on the 25th of *May*, amongst the first *Siberian Tartars*, called *Wogulski*. I must acknowledge that the Lands indifferently well peopled on this River, deserve really to be reckoned amongst the most charming in the World. And when in the Mornings or Evenings I stepped on Shoar to divert my self, and went forwards towards the Hills, I every where found the most beautiful Flowers and Plants, which emitted a most agreeable fragrant scent, and all sorts of great and small Wild Beasts running about in great quantities. But the *Wogulskian Tartars* to which this River led us, are stupid Heathens, which made me

me desirous to pry more narrowly into their Religion, manner of living, and other Circumstances : And for this end I went on Shoar and lodged a Night amongst them.

They are naturally strong, and have large Heads. Their whole Religious Worship consists in making an Offering according to their Custom once each Year : When they go in crouds into the Woods, and kill one of each Species of Beasts, of all which they prefer the Horse and Tyger as best ; they flea off the Skins, hang up the Carcass on a Tree, and fall prostrate to the Earth, and in their way, Pray to it ; after which they eat the Flesh together, and return home ; which done they are free from the trouble of Praying for a Year. What need of Praying any oftner than once a Year, say they ? They are not able to give any the least account of the Original or import of their Faith, but only say that their Forefathers did so, and they follow their Example.

I asked them concerning their knowledge of God ; Whether they did not believe that there was a God and Lord in Heaven above, that had created, and did at present preserve and govern all things, and also gave Rain and fair Weather ? To which they replied ; We may very well believe that, for we see, that the Sun and Moon, those two bright Lights which we worship, and the Stars also, are in Heaven, and that there is one which rules them. They would not in the least hear of the Devil, as not knowing him, since he never appeared, or revealed himself to them. They acknowledge a Resurrection of the Dead, but are ignorant what sort of reward to expect, whether Corporal or not. When any of them die, they bury the Carcass under Ground without any Grave-stone, and be it Man or Woman, all his or her best Apparel and Ornaments, besides some Money, according to the Ability of the Deceased, are buried with the Corps ; to the end, that, pursuant to their Opinion, he may have some Cloaths on, and something to spend at the time of the Resurrection. They cry over the Dead Corps in a dismal manner, and the Husband is obliged to continue a Widower a whole Year after the death of his Wife. If a Dog dies, that in Hunting or any other way has been serviceable to them, they erect in honour of him, a small wooden Hutt, on four heaps or props of Earth : In which they lay the dead Dog, and suffer him to continue there as long as the Hutt lasts. They take as many Wives as they can keep, and when any of these is Pregnant, and near her Delivery, she is obliged to retire into a Hutt in a Wood, erected for that purpose, where she is delivered, and the Husband and she are not permitted to come near each other for the space of two Months after.

When a Man desires to Marry, he is obliged to buy the Bride of her Father. They have very few Marriage Ceremonies besides inviting and treating the nearest Relations: after which the Bridegroom goes to Bed to the Bride without any Ceremony. They have no Priests, nor do they Marry any nearer than the fourth degree of Consanguinity. Amongst other Discourse I admonished them, that it was time to acknowledge Christ the Saviour of the whole World, and turn to him; which would secure their not only Temporal, but Eternal welfare. To this they answered; as for what concerns Temporals, we daily see vast numbers of Poor wretched *Russians*, that can hardly get a piece of dry Bread, and yet nevertheless some of them believe in Christ: and as for the Eternal things they would accommodate themselves; then they farther declared that they would live and die in the Opinion of their Forefathers, whether right or wrong. The Habits of Men and Women as well as theirs and their Childrens shape are expressed by the annexed Cut, which shews that they are indeed neither extravagant nor ridiculous.

Their Dwellings are quadrangular wooden Rooms, like those of the *Russian* Peasants; only instead of Ovens they use Hearths, on which they burn Wood, and dress their Victuals. The Smoak-hole which is in the Roof, is covered with Ice, as soon as the Wood is burnt to a Coal, which keeps the warmth in the Room, and the light strikes through the bright and clear Ice. They have no Chairs, but instead of them a broad Bench round the Room, about an Ell high, and two Ells broad, on which they sit like the *Persians*, with their Leggs across under them, and sleep on them at Night. They live upon what their Bow and Arrows furnishes them with. Their chiefest Game is that of *Elks*, whole Herds of which are found here; these they cut in pieces, and hang in the Air round their Houses to dry; if it happen to rain upon them, and they begin to stink abominably, they dry them again, and eat them as a Delicacy. They eat neither Cocks, Hens, nor Hogs. They have a pleasant way of catching Wild Beasts, for they place a sort of great Bows in the Woods, fastning a string to 'em, to which they fix some Corn, or other Bait, leaving only a place for the Game to enter, so that the *Elk*, or any other Beast that comes in there, cannot pass by without touching this Snare; and when the Bow lets fly, the Arrows enter the fore part of the Body, and he presently falls down. They also dig great Pits in the Woods, which they cover with Reeds and Grass, so that if any Beast comes thither he is sure to fall in and is taken. These *Tartars* live in their Villages all along the River *Auzawaia* to the Castle of *Utka*, and are under the Protection of his
Czarish



Czarish Majesty, to whom they pay Tribute, and live in Security and Peace. The extent of Land which they inhabit reaches about 800 German Miles in the North part of *Siberia*, nay, which is yet farther, to the North *Samojedes*.

C H A P. III.

Arrival at and Description of the Castle of Utka. Departure thence. Coming to Neujiangskoi; and then to Tumeen. A Wood in which are found very fine Grey Furrs. Tumeen very much affraid of the Kalmakian Tartars, and their Provision against them. Setting forward from this City on the River Tobols. Arrival at, and Description of the City of Tobolesk. How richly stocked with Fish the River Irtis is. Irruptions of the Tartars into the Czars Dominions. How the City of Tobolesk, and all Siberia became subject to his Czarish Majesty, by means of the Robber Timofeiewitz, of whom a further Account; his Ruine and Death. Religious Worship of the Tartars described.

AFTER leaving these Heathens we happily arrived at the Castle of *Utka*, on the first of *June*. This Place is a Frontier Fortification against the *Baskirian* and *Uffimischan* Tartars. When I was there, an *Uffimischan* Tartarian Gentleman, an Inhabitant in his Czarish Majesties Dominions, came thither in search of his Wife, to whom he had been long married, and who had eloped without any provocation. But when he could not find her amongst the Peasants, he easily comforted himself, saying, that he was the Seventh Husband which she had left whilst alive; by which it would seem that the Lady was frequently obliged with new Lovers.

On the 20th of the same Month, setting forwards from *Utka* in Wagons drawn by Horses, we passed the Castle of *Ajada*, and crossed the River *Neuia*, which runs round it. After which we proceeded along by the River *Reesch*, to the Castle of *Arsamas*, and from thence to the Castle of *Neujiangskoi*, situate on the above-mentioned River *Neuia*. This Journey by Land to *Neujiangskoi*, proved one of the pleasantest in the World, by reason that in that Passage I met with most charming Fields, Woods, Brooks and standing Waters, as also extraordinary fertile and well tilled Grounds, perfectly well inhabited

C

every

every where by *Russians*, and furnished with all manner of necessaries to humane Life, at a very cheap rate. At *Neuianskoi* I again took Water, and we drove with the Tide on the 21st of the same Month betwixt two populous shores, adorned with well built Villages and Castles, inhabited all over by *Russian Christians*, down to the River *Tura*, which terminates Westward in the River *Tobol*.

On the 25th of the same Month we reached the City of *Tumeen*, which considering its Situation is strong and Populous, mostly inhabited by *Russians*; and the remainder being about one fourth part, is Peopled with *Mahometan Tartars*, who drive a considerable Trade to the *Kalmick* Countries, *Bugaria*, &c. Great numbers of these live dispersed all round in the Country, depending on Agriculture and Fishing. This and the Neighbouring places, do not afford any quantity of any other Skins than those of Red Foxes, Wolves and Bears; but a few Miles distant is a Wood called *Heetkoy-Wollok*, which abounds with the very finest Grey-Squirrels which keep their colour both Summer and Winter, and don't change as others do; they are as large as the common Squirrels, besides which the Leather prepared from them is very strong, and they are not to be found any where in the whole *Muscovite* Empire besides this Place. It is forbidden on penalty of a great Fine, to sell them to Merchants; for they are ordered to be preserved for the use of the Czar in his Court. These Beasts are endowed with the strange quality of killing and eating all other Species of Grey Squirrels, that come into their Wood.

Whilst I was in this City, its Inhabitants and all the Circumjacent Neighbours, were in great fear of the *Kalmakian* and *Kosack-Orda Tartars*, who had join'd and made an irruption into *Siberia*, laid several Villages waste, cut the Inhabitants in pieces, and also threatned this City, from which they were not above 15 Miles distant. But the Governour had very expeditiously raised a considerable Force out of *Tobolska* and other Cities, and sent them against these roving *Tartars*, whom they soon beat back with great loss.

For which reason I was not willing to stay any longer here, but as soon as I had obtained fresh Rowers, and Soldiers for Convoy, I left that place on the 26th of the same Month; and went on farther down the River *Tobol*. Whose Shoars on each side are low and moist Ground, which in the Spring is under Water, so that it is scarce if at all inhabited; tho' for several Miles farther in-Land on each side it is peopled, partly by *Mahometan Tartars* and partly by *Russians*; and the River produces all sorts of excellent Fish.

City of Tobolsk.



On the first of *July* I arrived safe at *Tobolesk*: Which City, besides its own strength, is re-inforced with a large Stone Cloyster, with high Watch-Towers, which may pass for a Fortification. This place is situate on a high Hill of a vast circuit about, the bottom of which along by the River *Rhitisch*, is inhabited by the *Mahometan Tartars* and *Buchars*, which drive a great Trade up the *Rhitisch* or *Irtis*, into the *Kalmakian* Territories, and carry their Goods to *China*. And if it were safe to travel the *Kalmakian* Country, the most expeditious way to *China* would be to pass the *Jamuschowa Osera*, or *Jamuschian Lake*.

Tobolesk or *Tobelska*, which is here represented, as it offereth its self to view, is the chief City of *Siberia*, whose Jurisdiction extends Southward beyond *Baraba*, from *Werchaturia* to the River *Oby*; Eastward to *Samojedia*, Northwards to *Ostiaski*, and Westwards to *Ussa* and the River *Zuzawaja*. This Province is every where very well peopled, as well by *Russians* who depend on Husbandry, as by all sorts of Nations, particularly *Tartars* and Heathens, which pay Tribute to his *Czarish* Majesty. Corn is so very cheap there, that 100 *German* Pounds of *Rye* Flouer may be bought for 16 *Cops*; and as for Flesh, the price of an *Ox* is commonly from two *Rixdollars*, to two and a half, about eleven *Shillings English* Money; and that of an indifferent large *Hog* is from 30 to 35 *Styvers*. Besides, the River *Irtis* produces such a prodigious quantity of Fish, that a *Sturgeon* weighing 40 Pounds, is to be bought for five or six *Cops* or *Styvers*; and these Fish are so far from Lean, that when they are boiled their Fat appears of the thickness of a Finger. Here is great plenty of all sorts of Wild Beasts, as *Elcks*, *Stags*, *Deer*, *Hares*, &c. and of *Wild-fowl*, viz. *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, *Swans*, *Wild-Geese*, *Ducks*, and *Storks*; all which are cheaper than Beef. This City is secured by a strong Garison of well armed Soldiers, which upon order from the *Czars*, can bring 9000 Men into the Field; besides which here are several Thousands of *Tartars*, which serve their *Czarish* Majesties all on Horseback on occasion.

Strolling IncurSIONS in the *West*, upon their *Czarish* Majesties Frontiers, are very frequently made by the *Kalmucks*, the *Kosack Orda*, and the Subjects of the *Testicham* or Governour of the *Bucharian Tartars*: Besides which the *Uffimer* and *Bakirian Tartars* commit several Insolencies; but these Birds of prey are immediately opposed and repulsed by the *Toboleskians*. This City is also the place of Residence of the Metropolitan or chief Ecclesiastick, who is sent from *Muscow* hither, and exercises Spiritual Jurisdiction over all *Siberia* and *Dauria*.

About a Hundred Years ago, this City and the whole Province of *Siberia*, became subject to the Czar, by the following accident. *Jeremak Timefeiewitz*, a certain Robber in the Reign of Czar *Ilan Wasilewitz*, having plundered these and all the circumjacent Countries, had greatly injured the Subjects of his Czarish Majesty; when he was pursued, he and his Companions fled up the River *Kama*, and from thence into the River *Iuzawaja*, which falls into the *Kama*, where lye the Lands of *Stroginoff*, famous for his vast Estate and Works, which take up the greatest part of the Shoar, and stretch to the length of 70 German Miles. It was this Rich Man's Grandfather that he applied himself to for protection, and begged his Interest in obtaining his Czarish Majesties pardon, offering at the same time by way of attonement of his Felonious Crime, to reduce the whole Province of *Siberia* to be subject to the Czar: Pursuant to which he also obtained from the mentioned *Stroginoff* assistance of Barks, Arms, and necessary Workmen; and thus provided, and accompanied with his fellow Robbers in light Barks, he passed up the River *Serebrenkoy*, which runs by the North East part of the *Werchaturian* Hills, and falls into the *Iuzawaja*; thence he conveyed his Equipage by Land, to the River *Tagin*, on which he sailed into the *Tura*, took the Fort of *Tumeen* situate thereon, razed it to the Ground, and advanced up the River *Tobol* to *Tobolska*, where then resided a *Tartarian* Prince, aged about twelve Years, whose Name was *Altanai Kutzjumowitz* (whose Grandson at present lives at *Muscow*, and is honoured with the Title of the *Siberian Czarewitz*.) This City he likewise attacqued and took with small loss, after which he carried the Prince Prisoner to *Muscow*, and put the conquered City into a better posture of defence.

After this Success he proceeded down the River *Jetisch*; but was set upon in the Night by a party of *Tartars*, not far from *Tobolsk*, who cut off a great many of his Men, and he himself endeavouring to step from one Bark into another, leaped short, and by reason of his heavy Armour, irrecoverably sunk to the bottom; his Body was carried away by the force of the Stream and never found. In the mean while *Stroginoff* had obtained the Czars Pardon for *Jeremak*, and several Hundred *Muscovite* Officers and Soldiers came and garrisoned and fortified the Places which he had taken; and from this juncture the Czar's Sovereignty over *Siberia* is to be dated.

The *Tartars* that live round *Tobolska*, for several Miles, are all *Mahometans*. I being somewhat curious to see their Religious Worship, the *Waiwode* went with me, and by virtue of his Authority, gave me an opportunity which they will not allow another Person. Their
Metschets

Metschets, called by other Authors Mosques, or Churches, had large Windows round them, all which were set open : The Floor was covered with Tapistry, besides which there was no other Ornament. All Persons at their entrance leave their Shoes or Slippers at the Door, and set themselves down in rows, with their Leggs under them: The chief Priest sat there, in a white Calico Habit, and a white Turkish Turbant on his Head. Then I observed one behind the People cry with a hoarse loud Voice, and after he had said something to them, they all fell on their Knees; then the Priest uttered some words, and afterwards cried out, *Alla, Alla Mahomet*, which the whole Assembly roared out after him, three times successively, prostrating themselves to the Ground: This done, the Priest looked into both his Hands as tho' he designed to read something there, and repeated *Alla, Alla Mahomet*: Then he looked first over his Right Shoulder, then over his Left, which all the People did after him, and so the short Devotion was ended.

The *Mufti* or *Chief Priest* is an *Arabian*, whom they so highly reverence, that for his sake they very much esteem any Person that can either Read or Write the *Arabick* Language. This Priest invited us to his House, which was near the *Metschet*, and treated us with a Dish of Tea. There are also in this *Calmackian* Country great numbers of *Tartars*, that are used for Slaves; as also some long since imprisoned *Calmackian* Princes.

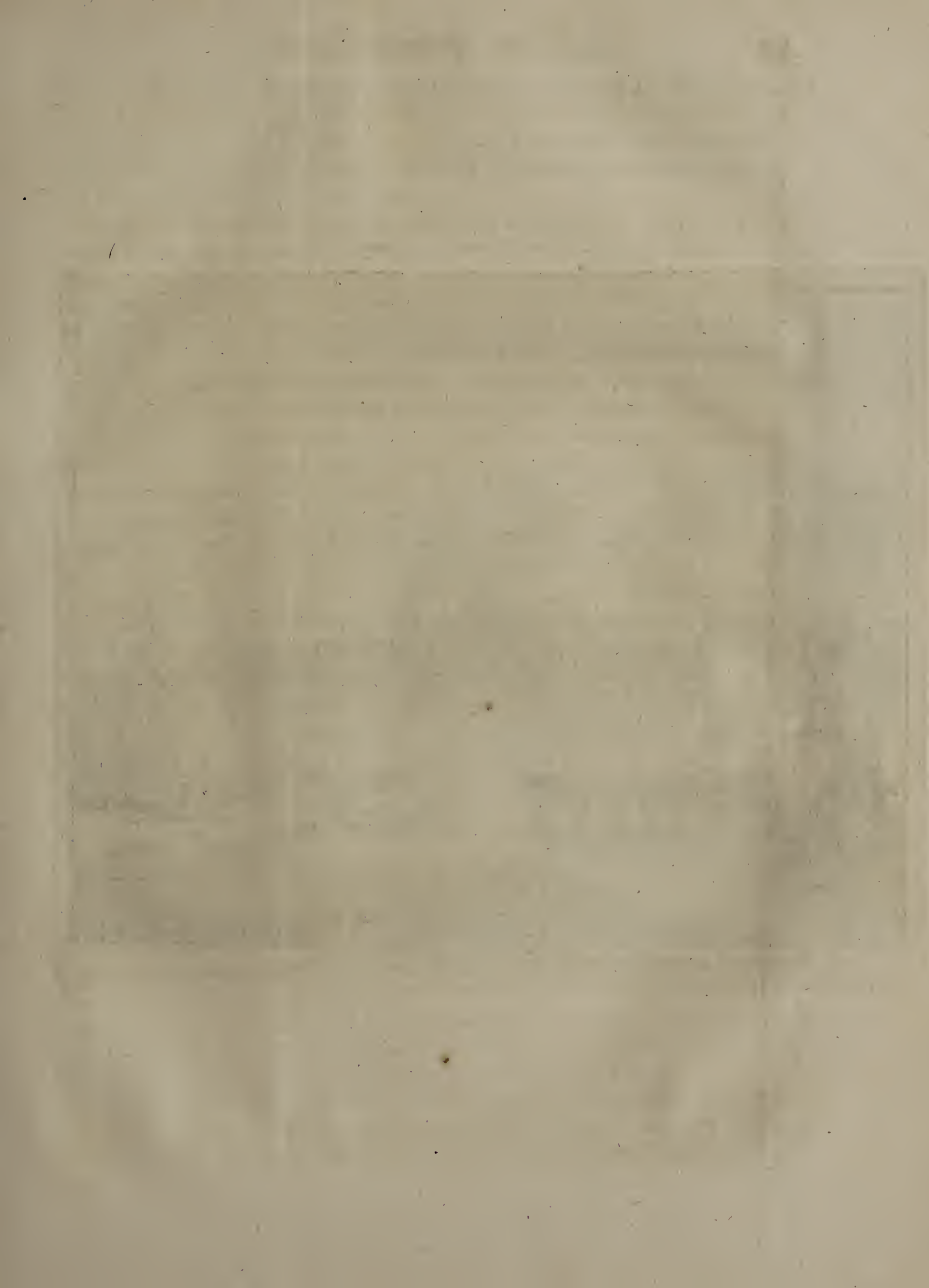
C H A P. IV.

Departure from Tobolsk. Description of the River Irtis. A strange accident of a great Bear. What sort of Inhabitants on the Banks of the Irtis. Dog-Sleeds, how used. A farther Description of the Dogs. Departure from the Samarofschian Jemschicks. Arrival at the City of Surgut, round about which place are very fine Furs. Subtlety of a certain black Fox, which twice escaped the Dogs, but was caught the third time. A Description of the Beavers, and their wonderful tho' improbable employment. Slaves amongst the Beavers. Beaver-Hunting.

AFTER I had provided my self with Barks, Soldiers for Convoy, and other necessaries, I set forwards in the name of God, on the 22d of July from the City of *Tobolsk*, falling down the River *Irtis*; passing by many *Tartarian*, and *Ostackian* Villages, and the Towns *Demionskoy*, *Jamin*, &c. all on the South side, where *Pennonka* a small River falls into the *Irtis*: On the 28th of the same Month we arrived safe at *Samaroskoy-Jam*, where I took in fresh Rowers, and ordered the Masts to be erected in all our largest Vessels, in order to sail up the River *Oby*, if the Wind proved favourable; for the *Irtis* discharges it self into the *Oby*, in various Streams, not far from this Town of *Samaroskoy-Jam*.

The River *Irtis* consists of a white light Water; it rises from the Hills in the *Kalmackian* Country; its course is from the South to North-East; and it passeth down through the two Lakes of *Kabako* and *Saisan*. Its whole South-East Shoar from beginning to end, is all high Hills, on which grow some Cedars dispersed here and there: The North-West Shoar is low Pasture Ground, and on this side are a prodigious number of great Black-Bears, Wolves, and Red and Grey-Foxes. Not far from *Samaroskoy-Jam*, is a Rivulet, called *Kasunka*, which runs into the *Oby*, and upon its Banks affords the best Grey-Squirrels in all *Siberia*, (except only the above-mentioned Wood of *Heetkoy-Wollok*) which are called from the River, *Kasunka*.

Here I am obliged to relate what the Inhabitants told me as a certain truth; That last Year, in Harvest time, early in the Morning, an extraordinary large Bear, broke into one of the Cow-Houses in this Town, siezed a Cow, held her fast by the Breast or Shoulder with his





Russians travelling with Dog sleds in Siberia

his two fore Feet, and carried her off alive, going on his hinder Feet only. Upon the lowing of the Cow, the Owner and several Neighbours came out and saw it, and all run at the Bear with Fire-Arms and Clubs, notwithstanding which he would not part with his Prey, till they fired and killed the Cow.

Most of the Inhabitants here are *Russian Femskicks*, who are in the Annual Pay of his Czarish Majesty, for which they supply the *Waywodes*, that are ordered this way, and all other Persons who travel on the Czar's affairs in *Siberia*, with free Carriages and Men to Work; and are obliged to carry them by Water in Summer, and over the Ice in Winter, as far as *Surgut*, situate on the *Oby*, at a very reasonable price. These People keep great numbers of Dogs, which they make use of to travel with in Winter, for it is utterly impossible to pass this Country with Horse-Sleads, by reason that sometimes the Snow on the *Oby* is above a large fathom deep.

These Dogs are yoked two to each Narta or Slead, which is for that purpose made very light and thin; and can carry from 2 to 300 hundred *German* weight. The Slead nor the Dogs are not hurt by the Snow, but both run very swiftly over, or leaving a trace only of the depth of a Fingers breadth. Some of these Dogs know before hand, whether there is like to be any work for them, as we are vainly told; and if they are likely to be employed, they herd together in crouds, and howl in a dismal manner, whence their Masters draw their presages. If when they are on the way, they are inclined to Hunt, the Master takes his Gun on his Shoulder, and puts on his long sliding Shoes, with which he goes over the Ice, takes his Dogs with him, and steps a little way into a Wood, turns up all manner of Wild Game, perhaps a fine Black Fox; and the Skins of the Game are the Masters, and the Flesh he gives his Dogs. Thus they make a sufficient and very profitable use of these draught Dogs; which are middle sized, sharp Nosed, with long erected Ears, and carry their Tails crooked; some of which are like Wolves or Foxes, in so much that as they lye asleep in the Woods, they are sometimes by mistake Shot for one of those two Species: To countenance which, it is also certain, that these Dogs mix their strain by a promiscuous Copulation with that of Wolves and Foxes; whence it is that whenever a Coursing match happens amongst the Inhabitants of the Villages, they find a great number of both Species near the Villages, as hath been frequently observed.

Having all things prepared by the *Samarofschian Femskicks* in order to advancing on my Journey, I departed thence on the 29th of *July*, and with my two large *Dofchenicks* or Tide Ships, I drove down the

the most convenient Arm of the *Irtis*, to the most celebrated River *Oby*, which I reached early the next Day. I found her Eastern shoars abounding with Hills; but the West was intirely flat Land, as far as was visible to us. The *Oby* was half a Mile over at this place.

On the 6th of *August* we reached the City of *Surgut*, situate on the Eastern Shoar of the *Oby*: The inland Country for some distance Eastwards of *Surgut*, as also farther up the *Oby* about or near the City of *Narun*, produces *Sables*, some of which are pale, and others as black as Pitch, and the finest and largest *Ermines* in all *Siberia* and *Russia*, and above all black *Fox-Skins*, which are the very finest and richest any where to be found: Among the best of these Fox-Skins, which are reserved for his Czarish Majesty, there are some valued from 2, to 300 *Rubels* a Skin, which are so very black, that the blackest *Daurian Sable* is not comparable to them. These *Foxes* are caught by *Dogs*; of which the Inhabitants relate the following very remarkable accident.

Last Year, near a Village adjacent to *Surgut*, by clear Day Light, an extraordinary fine *Fox* discovered himself, upon sight of which a Boor let loose his Dogs, in order to catch him: The *Fox* was within sight of the Peasant, and the Dogs were got up to him; but when this subtle Animal saw that it was impossible to escape the Hounds by flight, he fawning run to meet them, tumbled on his back before them and licked their Mouths, run backwards and forwards and play'd with them; The unexperienced Dogs softned by his fawning treatment, did the sly *Fox* no manner of hurt, but suffered that arch Rogue to escape into the Wood; so that the poor Peasant having no fire arms at hand, to his great grief, notwithstanding all his Vigilance did for that time irrecoverably lose sight of this rich Booty.

But two Days afterwards the subtle Wag returned to the same place; which the Peasant was no sooner aware of but he took another, and his best Dog with him, which was white haired; and full freight with fresh hopes of this rich Game, he runs this Dog at the Fox, which had very near succeeded; but the black Dogs flew towards him, and while he was fawning on them, the white Hound better acquainted with *Vulpecular* subtlety, was so cunning as to fawn at first, but being come within reach, he took a good leap at him, and had certainly effectually seized him, if he had not, by leaving a piece of his Side behind him, sprung nimbly from him, and escaped into a thick Wood, where 'twas in vain to look for him.

Notwithstanding which the Boor was at last too hard for this sly Fox, for he coloured his white Dog all over black, that the Fox who was become shy of him, might not know him; which done he went the third time on this Course with his dyed Dog, and was so fortunate that his Hound smelt him out; upon which the Fox seeing the disguis'd Dog fawn'd on him without the least fear, taking him for one of the first black Hounds, with whom he designed to play again; and in this posture they approached each other, when the Dog watching his opportunity, grasped the careless Fox betwixt his Teeth, and so at last caught this sly Beast with his fine Skin, which proved very well worth the Peasants trouble, he selling it for 100 Rubels.

Here are great numbers of those which are called *Cross-Foxes*, whose Skins are of a mixt Black and Grey, but very few perfect Black, Red Foxes and *Hyæna's*, as also *Beavers* are very plentiful in this Country; but the *Hyæna's* are very mischievous and live on Prey.

They, like the *Linx's*, place themselves in the Trees, lye very still and close, till a Hart, an Elk, a Doe or Hare runs under the Tree; upon which they leap upon him, eat a hole in his Body, and continue gnawing, till the Beast by force of pain falls down, and consequently comes to their share. One of the *Waiwods* kept a *Hyæna* alive for his diversion, which he put into the Water, and let two Water Dogs loose at him; but he immediately leaped upon the head of one of them, and held him so long under Water till he drowned him; after which he swam to the other, whom he had treated in the same manner, if he had not been interrupted by the throwing of Wood at him, till the Dog swam out.

But concerning the *Beavers* which herd here in great numbers, some very odd particulars are related as certain truths, tho' they seem ridiculous: Wherefore I take it to be worth my pains, to touch a little on their Properties, of which the following are all seriously averred to me. The greatest part of their food being Fish, they harbour on the Shoars of those Rivers which abound most with Fish, and which are not much troubled with Passengers or much frequented by Men. In the Spring they not only herd together, but assemble themselves in numerous couples, into a Neighbourhood or Society, and pick out some, and seize others as Prisoners, whom they carry to their holes, and oblige to serve them as Slaves. They fell Trees with their Teeth, carry them to their dwellings, and there hack out their Wood to the measure of a certain length, which they artificially join together like Joyners work, and Chests, and there they lay up separately all their Summers store of Provisions. And about the season of this preparation,

the time of the Female Beavers bringing forth approaches; upon which the Inhabitants told me improbable and incredible things of their practices. They say that against that juncture, the whole Neighbourhood go together, and frequently gnaw a Tree of above an Ell Circumference, for the length of above two Fathom, even to the inner Pith, till it falls down, that they are expert enough to bring it to their holes by Water, and that they can rear it upright before the entrance of their holes, so artificially that the Tree stands perpendicular in the Water above an Ell deep, and yet touches no Ground; and that so firm and immovable in its Line or Center, that tho' the Wind blow never so hard, the Tree remains firm in its place. All which seems unnatural; and yet all the *Siberians* that I ever discours'd unanimously affirmed it; and added several other things concerning these Beasts, which seem rather the effects of humane Reason, than irrational Brutes, all which I shall not trouble my self to describe at large.

At the same time some ascribe this erection of the Tree before the Beaver-holes, to the Conjuraton of the *Ostiacks*, and other *Heathens*, who live in all parts thereabouts. Whether 'tis so or not, God knows: But it is certain, that these Beasts have Slaves amongst them, which in all parts here are known to the Peasants, by reason they are Lean; and their Furr worn off by labour.

The *Russians* as well as the *Ostiacks*, which go out a Beaver-Hunting, do always carefully avoid the destruction of a whole Nest or Kennel; for if they Kill or Shoot all the rest, they leave a couple Male and Female remaining, in order to furnish them with fresh Game in the same place the next Year.

C H A P. V.

The Author continues his Journey, and arrives at Narum. Ostiacks and their Religion described. Name of the Ostiackian Idols; an accident by means of a piece of Clock-work. Their Marriages, Burials, and Poverty. The great abundance of Fish in the Oby. Common habit of the Ostiacks, and their clothing in severe Winters. They sometimes are stifled in the Snow. Their hunting, and manner of catching Beavers. They have petty Princes amongst them, one of which the Ambassador visited; his Hutt and Wives described. A Princely present; Furniture, and manner of smoking Tobacco, &c. Other Customs of these People, their Shipping, and Winter dwellings, Jealousie of their Wives, and manner of discovering Innocence, and detecting Guilt. The Shoars of the Oby untilld Land.

HAVING passed several Miles up the Oby, part of which we sailed, and towed the rest with a Line, on the 13th of August we passed by the Mouth of the *Wagga*, which riseth originally out of the *Truganian Mountains*: This is a large River, its Water is brown, and its course is extended North-North-West into the Oby, on this side of *Narum*, at which City we arrived on the 24th of the same Month. It is situate on the side of the River in a fine Country, and is provided with a Fortrefs or Castle, and an indifferent strong Garrison of *Cozacks*. All the Country around this City abounds with Crosse and Red Foxes, Beavers, Ermines, Sables, &c.

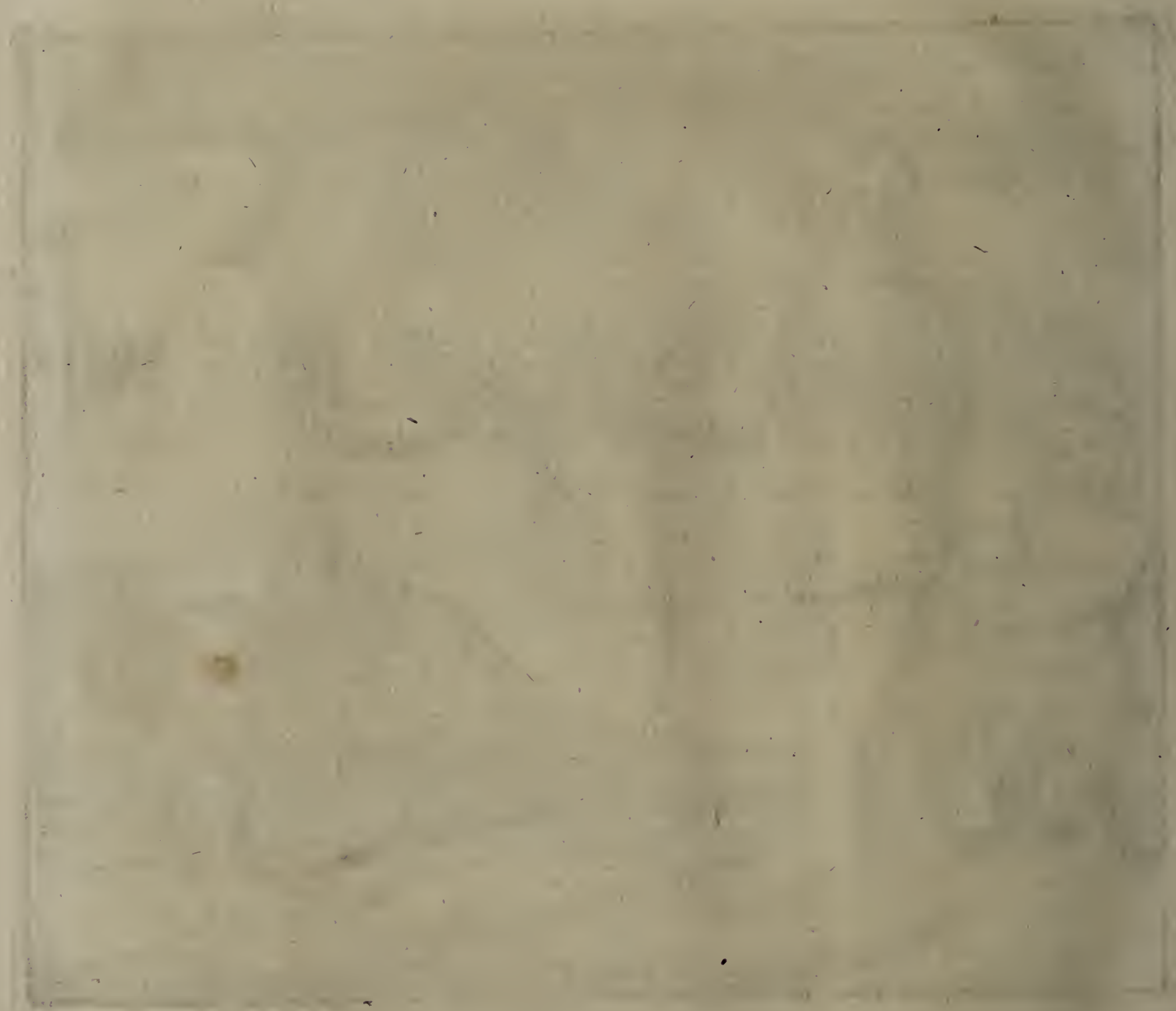
The Banks of the Oby to this place are inhabited by a People called *Ostiacks*; which worship Terrestrial Gods, but acknowledge that according to Nature, there must be a Lord in Heaven, that governs all; nevertheless they don't pay any Worship at all to him, but have their own Gods made of Wood and Earth, in several humane shapes. Some of the richest amongst them dress these Deities in filken Cloaths, made after the fashion of those of the *Russian Women*. All of them have these Idols placed in their Hutts, which are made of Barks of Trees, sewed together with Harts Guts. On one side of the God hangs a bunch of humane and horse Hair, and next that a wooden Vessel, with Milk Pap, with which they daily supply their Gods, and thrust it into their Mouths with a Spoon made for that purpose; but by reason the Idols cannot swallow this their Milk diet,

it runs out again at both sides of their Mouth, down their whole Bodies, in such a filthy manner as is sufficient to disgust one from eating of that Diet. When this nice God is to be worshipped or prayed to, his Adorers stand bolt upright and toss their Head up and down, without bending their Back in the least; besides which they chirrup or whistle through the Lips as we do when we call a Dog.

They call their Gods Saitan, and might indeed very well say Satan. Once several *Ostiacks* came on board the Ship in which I was, to sell us Fish, and one of my Servants had a *Nuremberg-Bear in Clockwork*, which when wound up drummed and turned his head backward and forwards, continually moving his Eyes, till the Work was down. Our People set the Bear at play a little: And as soon as ever the *Ostiacks* saw it, all of them performed to it their customary Religious Worship, and danced excessively to the honour of the Bear, nodding their Heads, and whistling at a great rate. They represented our Bear for a right Saitan, crying out, What are our Saitans which we make? If we had such a Saitan, we would hang him all over with Sables and Black Fox Skins. They also asked whether this Clock-work was to be sold; but I ordered it out of their sight, to avoid administering any occasion to Idolatry.

As for what farther concerns these Heathens, they have as many Wives as they can maintain, and marry their near Relations without any scruple: If a Relation dies, they cry incessantly for several Days, covering their Heads, and sitting on their Knees in their Hutts, and will not suffer themselves to be seen; but they carry the Corps on Poles to the ground to be buried. They are a poor People, and live very miserable in sorry Hutts. They might indeed live well, since all parts near the *Oby* abound with great quantities of rich *Furrs*; besides that there's extraordinary good fishing in that River, in which are very fine *Sturgeons*, *Jacks*, &c. insomuch that Twenty great *Sturgeons* may be bought of them for three Penny-worth of *Tobacco*; but they are so horrid lazy, that they don't desire to get any more than will barely suffice them annually for the Winter: For when they travel they eat mostly Fish, especially when they are on the Water fishing, for then they live on nothing else. They are all of a middle Stature, most of them Yellowish or Red haired; and their Faces and Noses disagreeably broad; they are weak and unable to labour hard, not at all enclined to Wars, and utterly incapable of Military Exercises. Bows and Arrows are their Weapons, with which they shoot wild Beasts, tho' not much addicted to this neither. Their Cloaths consist





consist of *Sturgeon* and other Fish Skins, and they wear neither Linnen nor Woollen; their Shoes and Stockens are fastned together, and they wear a short Coat with a Cape, which in case of Rain they pull over their Heads. Their Shoes are also made of Fish-skins, and are sowed fast to their Stockens, but not closely, so that their Feet must necessarily be always wet. When they are upon the Water, notwithstanding the thinness of their cloathing they will bear extraordinary great cold; for if it be but a common Winter they are no better clad than above-mentioned; but if the Winter prove hard, those who are thus clad are necessitated to put another Coat of the same sort of Fish-skins over that; and they express this severe Weather amongst one another, by saying, Do you like the Winter that forces one to wear two Coats of Skins? They sometimes go a hunting in the Winter with a single Coat only, and their Breasts bare, depending upon warming themselves quickly with sliding and running over the Ice in their Schaits or sliding Shoes; but if, as it several times happens, they are overtaken by an extraordinary severe Frost, and it seems utterly improbable to escape it or save their lives, (so incredibly hard does it sometimes freeze on the *Oby*) they with utmost hast throw off their Fish-skin Coat, and fling themselves into the deep Snow and willingly freeze to Death; the reason why they pull off their Coat is only that they may die the sooner, and with less pain.

The Womens Cloaths are almost like the Mens; the Mens greatest diversion is Bear-hunting, to which sport they gather together in crouds, armed with no other weapon than a sharp Iron like a large Knife, fixed to a Stick, about a fathom long. As soon as they have put up a Bear, they run at him with these short Spears, and having killed him they cut off his Head, stick it upon a Tree, run round it, and pay the profoundest respect to it: After which they run to the dead Body with repeated cries, asking the Bear as follows, *Who killed you?* the *Russians* they answer themselves. *Who cut off your Head?* *A Russian Ax.* *Who cut up your Belly?* *A Knife which a Russian made.* And more such like Follies are they guilty of. In a word the *Russians* bear all the blame, and they are intirely innocent of the Murther of the Bear.

They have a sort of petty Princes amongst them, one of which is called *Kneska*, or Prince *Kürza Muganak*, whose authority extends over some hundreds of Hutts, and he lays on and collects the Tribute which they are obliged to pay to the *Waiwodes* of his Czarish Majesty. This Potentate came with all his *Princely* Family and Servants on board me, paid his compliment, and brought me a parcel of fresh

Fish.

Fish as a Present; which I requited by presenting him with some *Brandy* and *Tobacco*, with which he went on Shoar very well contented; but returned immediately and invited me to his *Princely Palace*. I being very curious to see this great Lord in his Sumptuous place of Residence, went thither, tho' I had no great appetite to his Entertainment. Coming on Shoar, the Introductory Ceremonies were not very particular. He acted the Master of the Ceremonies himself, and without much ado brought me to his Magnificent Apartment, which like the other Hutts of the *Ostiacks*, was composed of only Barks of Trees very slightly sewed together. I found here four of his Wives, two Old and two Young: one of the Young ones had a Red Cloath Coat on; and was set off with all sorts of Glass Corals about her Neck and her Middle, and in the Curls of her Hair, which hung down on both sides of her Head in two Rows; she had also in her Ears great Thread-wrought Rings, with long strings of the same Coral hanging at them. Each of these Princesses presented me with a Barrel made of Birch-Bark sewed together, and full of dry Fish; but the youngest gave me a Barrel of Sturgeon Fat, which was as yellow as Gold. After I had received these Presents, I caused them to be treated with *Brandy* and *Tobacco*, which is a great Delicacy amongst them. In this whole Princely building, I saw no other Furniture than some Cradles and Chests made of Barks of Trees sewed together, in which the Bed-Cloaths lay, being of planed Wood Shavings, and yet almost as soft as Feathers. These Cradles stand at one end of the Hutt, to avoid the Fire, which is kindled in the middle, and the Children lye naked in them. I also saw a Copper Kettle there, and some other Kettles composed of Barks of Trees sewed together, in which they boil their Victuals on Coals, for in the Flame they cannot do it.

To smoke *Tobacco* (to which all both Men and Women are very much addicted) instead of Pipes they use a Stone Kettle, in which they stick a Pipe made for that purpose, and at two or three drawings after they have taken some Water in their Mouths, can suck out a whole Pipe; and they swallow the Smoak, after which they fall down and lye insensible, like dead Men with distorted Eyes, both Hands and Feet trembling for about half an Hour. They foam at Mouth, so that they fall into a sort of Epilepsie: and we could not observe where the Smoak vented it self, and in this manner several of them are lost. For as they are upon the Water travelling, or sitting by the Fire, some of these violent Smokers fall into the Water and are drowned, or into the Fire and are burned; but some after they have sucked in the Smoak

Smoak let it out at their Throats again, and these are in a better condition than the other; tho' some weaker Constitutions are sometimes suffocated even thus with the Smoak which they let into their Bodies.

It is further observable that they are very angry, if any of their Relations, tho' long dead, are named or mentioned. They are utterly unacquainted with all things before their own Life time, and do not pretend to give any relation of them; nor can they either Write or Read: And tho' they are very fond of Bread, they never trouble themselves with the Tillage of Land, or Culture of Gardens.

They have neither Temples nor Priests. Their Shipping or Boats on the outside are Barks of Trees sewed together, and the inside Ribbs of very thin Wood; they are two or three Fathom long, and but an Ell broad. And yet they can secure themselves in them in great Storms, till they get on Shoar. In Winter time these *Ostiacks* live intirely under Ground, there being no other entrance to their Caves, but a hole left open on the surface of the Earth to let out the Smoak: If as is frequent a great Snow falls, it often happens that according to their custom they lye asleep naked round the Fire, part of their Body which lies a little distant from the Fire, is two or three fingers thick covered with Snow; when they perceive themselves cold they turn about to the Fire, and bestow the best place on the cold part of their Body a little while, and so take no more notice of it, being a very hardy People.

When an *Ostiack* is jealous of one of his Wives with another Man, he cuts some Hair off the under part of a Bears Skin, which he carries to the Man whom he suspects: If he be Innocent he then accepts it, but if he be guilty, they believe he dare not venture to touch it, but acknowledges the truth; and then amicably makes up the business with the Husband, and the Wife is Sold. But if any should presume to be so rash, as to take the Hair, tho' he was guilty, they tell us they are assured, that the Bears Skin from whence that Hair was cut off, will again become a living Bear, which after the expiration of three Days, will appear in the Wood, and tear the perjured wretch to pieces who was not affraid fraudulently to receive his Hair in order to deny the truth. On this occasion they invoke Bows, Arrows, Axes, and Knives, and firmly believe that if the guilty take any of these he shall certainly be killed by those individual Instruments which he accepts, within the space of a few Days: which is not only averred by themselves, but also unanimously backed by the *Russians*, who live all round those parts. But enough of these *Ostiacks*. The Shoar of the River *Oby* on which they live, is all untilld Land from the Sea to the River

Tom, by reason of the extream cold ; so that no Corn, Fruit, or Honey is here produced ; there being only a few Nuts which grow on the Cedar Trees.

CHAP. VI.

Leaving the River Oby. The Decease of a certain Painter. Arrival at the Village Makofskoi, and on the River Keta, the passage of which proves very difficult. Scarcity of Provision in their Travels, and miserable condition of the Ostiacks. Departure from Makofskoi, and Description of the River Keta. How the Mammut's Teeth and Legs are found on the Shoar. A very large Foot. Several Opinions concerning these Animals, which some believe to live under the Earth. The Cause of their Death. The Opinions of the Antient Russians concerning them is not very probable. Very heavy Mammut's Teeth. Travelling forwards by Land. Arrival at Jenizeskoi, Description of that City. Preparation for Whale Fishery. A farther Description of Jenizeskoi.

HAVING passed some Weeks on the River Oby, amongst the Barbarous Ostiacks, we went by the City of *Keetskoy*, situate on the River *Keta*, which falls North-West into the *Oby*. On the 28th following I passed by the Cloyster of *St. George*, and the 3d of October I went by the Village of *Worozeikin*. And on the same Day died *John George Weltfel*, a Painter, one of my Retinue, who was born at *Sleswick*, after he had kept his Bed 14 Days on account of a swelling, just above his Heart, which was aggravated by a Feaver.

On the 7th of October I safely arrived at the Village *Makofskoi*, and there caused *Weltfel's* Corps to be buried on a Hill, near the River, in the middle of the Village. I must own that this Voyage upon the River *Keta*, was the most irksome and melancholy of all the whole way before ; we were obliged to labour for five Weeks against the Stream, without seeing so much as any Man, besides now and then an Ostiack that appeared, and immediately hid himself in the Woods. This sort of Ostiacks speak a different Language from those on the *Oby* ; but their Idolatry is the same.

In this tedious uneasie passage, I was obliged to a great deal of Care and Anxiety ; for our Provisions, and especially the Meal, grew very low, by reason I had not recruited otherwise than with
Fish

Fish since my departure from *Tobolska*, and had been too charitable to the *Ostiacks* on board our Ship, who when requisite were obliged to tow us along with a Line; by which continual fatigue they were become so weak, that we were obliged to keep a perpetual Watch over them, to prevent the desertion of all of them.

Notwithstanding all this care, no Day passed in which some of them did not run away. And at last the coldness of the Season, and their perpetual Labour, rendred them perfectly unserviceable. And if I had not before hand written to the Governour of *Jenizeskoy* for Men to assist me, which he accordingly dispatched away to meet me with the first opportunity, I and my whole Retinue had probably been lost; for not being advanced within thirty Miles of the Village when the assistance came, we had certainly been frozen up in the River, and had perished by Famine, and the deep Snows which fall there: For this River is utterly unnavigable in Winter, and therefore not used to any Travellers at that Season.

I was scarce got from *Makofskoi*, before the River froze up. The course of this River is through an even Country, abounding with Woods and small Shrubs: The Water in some places runs in such a crooked Channel, that where we dined at Noon, we were obliged to sup at Night, or not far from thence at least. Hereabouts are great quantities of Woodcocks, Pheasants, Partridges and other Wild-Fowl; and it was a very diverting sight to see great Flocks of Woodcocks and Pheasants come to the brink of the River to drink, which gave us an opportunity of shooting as many as we pleased in our passage, and when our Provisions grew scarce afforded us no small assistance. Here grows also Strawberries, black and red Currants and Black-berries: but the River doth not yield great quantities of Fish.

Amongst the Hills which are situate North-East of, and not far from hence, the *Mammuts Tongues and Legs* are found; as they are also particularly on the Shoars of the Rivers *Jenize*, *Trugan*, *Mongamsea*, *Lena*, and near *Jakutskoi*, to as far as the *Frozen Sea*. In the Spring when the Ice of this River breaks, it is driven in such vast quantities, and with such force by the high swollen Waters, that it frequently carries very high Banks before it, and breaks off the tops of Hills, which falling down, discover these Animals whole, or their Teeth only, almost frozen to the Earth, which thaw by degrees. I had a Person with me to *China*, who annually went out in search of these Bones; he told me as a certain truth, that he and his Companions found a Head of one of these Animals, which was discovered by the fall of such a frozen piece of Earth. As soon as he opened it he found the greatest

part of the Flesh rotten, but it was not without difficulty that they broke out his Teeth, which were placed before his Mouth as those of the Elephants are; they also took some Bones out of his head, and afterwards came to his Fore-foot, which they cut off, and carried part of it to the City of *Trugan*, the Circumference of it being as large as that of the waist of an ordinary Man. The Bones of the Head appeared somewhat red, as tho' they were tinged with Blood.

Concerning this Animal there are very different reports. The Heathens of *Jakuti*, *Tungusi*, and *Ostiacki*, say that they continually, or at least by reason of the very hard Frosts, mostly live under ground, where they go backwards and forwards; to confirm which they tell us, That they have often seen the Earth heaved up when one of these Beasts was on the March, and after he was past the place sink in, and thereby make a deep Pit. They further believe, that if this Animal comes so near to the surface of the frozen Earth as to smell or discern the Air, he immediately dies, which they say is the reason that several of them are found dead, on the high Banks of the River, where they unawares came out of the Ground. This is the Opinion of the Infidels concerning these Beasts, which are never seen.

But the old *Siberian Russians* affirm that the *Mammoth* is very like the *Elephant*; with this only difference, that the Teeth of the former are firmer, and not so straight as those of the latter. They also are of Opinion, that there were Elephants in this Country before the Deluge, when this Climate was warmer, and that their drowned bodies floating on the surface of the Water of that Flood, were at last wash'd and forced into Subterranean Cavities: But that after this *Noachian* Deluge, the Air which was before warm was changed to cold, and that these Bones have lain frozen in the Earth ever since, and so are preserved from putrefaction till they thaw, and come to light; which is no very unreasonable conjecture. Tho' it is not absolutely necessary that this Climate should have been warmer before the Flood, since the Carcasses of the drowned *Elephants* were very likely to float from other places several hundred Miles distant, to this Country, in the great Deluge which covered the surface of the whole Earth. Some of these Teeth, which doubtless have lain the whole Summer on the Shoar, are intirely black and broken, and can never be restored to their former condition: but those which are found in good case, are as good as *Ivory*, and are accordingly transported to all parts of *Muscovy*, where they are used to make *Combs*, and all other such like things instead of *Ivory*.

The above-mentioned Person also told me, that he once found two Teeth in one Head that weighed above 12 *Russian Pounds*, which amount to 400 *German Pounds*; So that these Animals must of necessity be very large, tho' a great many lesser Teeth are found. By all that I could gather from the Heathens, there's no Person ever saw one of these Beasts alive, or can give any account of it's shape; so that the most that is said on this subject arises from bare conjecture only.

But to return to my Travels, in which I durst not venture to proceed any farther by Water, but was obliged to go by Land from the above-mentioned Village of *Makofskoy*. After I had advanced sixteen Miles by Land, on the 12th of *October* I safely arrived at the City of *Jenizeskoy*, where I rested for some time, being obliged to wait till the ways were sufficiently frozen to be passable with Sleads. Tho' in the interim, I prepared to proceed on my Journey as soon as I should be informed that the Rivers *Tunguska* and *Jenizea* were intirely frozen up. This delay furnished me with an opportunity of throughly observing the City of *Jenizeskoy*.

Which is so called from the River, and in order to make the circumjacent Country the more distinctly known. The River which runneth by and below the City, is called *Jeniza*, ariseth out of the *Calmackian Mountains*, and takes its course Northwards, almost in a direct line, to the *Tartarian* or *Frozen Sea*; very different from the *Oby*, which discharges her Water out of her Bosom, which is afterwards conveyed to the Sea by indirect Branches. Below the City the River is a full third part of a Mile over; its Water is white and light, but doth not much abound with Fish. Somewhat above seven Years past the Citizens of *Jenizeskoy* fitted out a Ship, and sent her on the Whale Fishery: but the Enterprize did not succeed, and they never yet heard where their Ship was lost. Wherefore they imagine that it was swallowed up in a violent Inundation of Ice. But from the City of *Fugania*, situate lower down this River, several Persons go out yearly on the Whale Fishery; but they carefully watch their opportunity, when the Wind blows from the Land, and the Ice drives towards the Sea, at which season they pursue their fishing very successfully, and without danger. The City of *Jenizeskoy* is considerably large and Populous, and the Fortress indifferent strong. Several Villages and Cloysters extend themselves for the space of some Miles round the City: And the Land is very proper for Agriculture. Corn, Flesh, horned Beasts, and Fowl are very plentiful here. Subject to the Jurisdiction of this City are several *Tunguzian Heathens*, who mostly

live on the *Jenizea*, *Tunguskay* and the in-Land Neighbouring Countrey. These pay a Tribute of Furrs to the Czar for every Bow, taking that to be a Man and Woman reckoned together. No large Fruit Trees grow here, by reason of the extream cold, and the only Fruits here are black and red Currants, Strawberries, Gooseberries and such like.

C H A P. VII.

Departure from Jenizeskoy, and arrival at the Island Ribnoy. Coming to Illinskoy. Of Schammanskoy, or the Negromantick fall, and why called so. The Difficulty and Danger of Ships passing up this Waterfall. How the Ships are steered down this fall by the Pilots, notwithstanding which care, several are split on the Rocks. Of the Tunguzers and their famous Schaman or Negromancer; his Person, Conjuring Habit, &c. described: The preparation to and manner of performing his Magical Ceremonies. A Description of the Nisovian Tunguzers, and their Summer Habit. How they adorn their Skins. Their Winter Cloathing. Stratagem which they use to take the Does. Of their Death, Burial, Diabolical Priests and Idols. A Description of their Hutts and Shipping. Their Summer and Winter Occupation.

AFTER a long refreshing stay at this Place, I set forwards in a Slead, and on the 20th of *January* reached the Island *Ribnoy*, which name signifies *Fish-Island*. This Isle is situate in the midst of the River *Tanguska*, which is richly stored with Fish: here are Sturgeon, Jacks, and Roach of an extraordinary largeness. The Island is chiefly inhabited by *Russians*. On the 25th of the same Month we came to the City of *Ilinskoy*, situate on the River *Ilni*, which runneth from the South South-West to the North North-West, and falls into the *Tunguska*. Thus far the River *Tunguskoy* is a little inhabited by *Tunguzians* as well as *Russians*.

Some Days Journey from hence is the great Rocky Waterfall, called *Schammanskoy*, or the Negromantick fall, because a famous *Schaman* or *Tunguschian* Conjuror lives there. This Waterfall is a descent of half a Mile long. Its Shoar is covered with high Rocks, so that the whole ground of this Water is pure Stone. The Print annexed presents the Reader with a Sketch of this Waterfall, which indeed affords



The Schamagschian water-fall.
3 Wurst Lang

a hideous Prospect, and makes such a dismal loud noise, that its rapid course over both visible and invisible Rocks, may in still Weather be heard at the distance of above three *German-Miles*. The *Dofchanicks* or Ships which are obliged to come up it against the Stream, require five, six, or seven Days, tho' empty, to tow them up this dangerous Water, by casting of Anchors and the help of several Men; nay farther in some shallow places where the Water is very low, and the Rocks lye high, they are obliged to tow a whole Day before they can get forwards so much as a Ships length, and the Ship frequently stands an end on the Stem.

The Ships which pass up and down, are always unladen, and their lading carried by Land till they get past this dangerous place, when it is again loaded on board. I have my self seen the Ships which sailed down this Torrent, perform it in twelve Minuits; so prodigious rapid is this descent: and there are very few either *Russians* or *Tunguzians* that know how to bring down the Ships, which must be provided with a Rudder fore and aft, and Rowers on both sides; The Pilots very dexterously give their orders to the Rowers by a Handkerchief; for no voice can be heard by reason of the hideous noise of the Water. The Ships are also close shut every where, that the raging Waves which frequently fly over them, may not find entrance into, and consequently sink them. Several Ships are cast away here every Year, especially when unexperienced Pilots undertake the bringing them down; they being very often shattered to pieces against the hidden Rocks. And the Men are always inevitably lost, and immediately stifled by the rapid Stream, or dashed to pieces against the Rocks, wherefore their Bodies are very rarely found, and the Shoars are full of Crosses, erected in remembrance of those drowned and buried there. In the Winter Season, the Water of this River is so high that it stands almost level with the Flood, and it hath been so overflowed from the Icy-Sea, that several have passed over it with Ice-Sleads: But in the Summer the Water is very low as we have already hinted.

Some Miles upwards from hence live several *Tunguzians*, amongst which is also their famed *Schaman* or *Diabolical Artist*. The reports which passed concerning this Cheat made me very desirous to see him. Wherefore in order to gratifie my curiosity I went to those Parts, to visit him and his Habitation. I found him a tall old Man, that had twelve Wives, and was not ashamed of the Art he pretended to: he shewed me his *Conjuring Habit*, and the other Tools which he used. First I saw his Coat, made of join-ed iron-work, consisting
of

of all manner of representations of Birds, Fishes, Ravens, Owls, &c. besides several Beasts and Birds Claws, and Bills, Saws, Hammers, Knives, Sabirs, and the Images of several Beasts, &c. so that all the parts of this Diabolical Robe being fixed together by Joints, might at pleasure be taken to pieces. He had also Iron Stockings for his Feet and Legs, suitable to his Robe, and two great Bears Claws over his Hands. His Head was likewise adorned, with such like Images, and fixed to his Forehead were two Iron Bucks-Horns. When he designs to Conjure he takes a Drum made after their fashion in his Left Hand, and a flat Staff covered with the Skins of Mountain-Mice in his Right Hand; thus equipped he jumps cross legged, which motion shakes all these Iron Plates, and makes a great clangor; besides which, he at the same time beats his Drum, and with Eyes distorted upwards, a strong bearish voice makes a dismal noise. These were the Prologues: but his Conjurations were performed in the following manner.

If the *Tunguzians* have any thing stole from them, or desire to be informed of any thing, in the first place, he must be paid before hand: after which he plays the tricks already related, jumps and roars till a Black-bird comes and sits on the top of his Hutt, which is open above to let out the Smoak: As soon as he gets sight of the Bird, he falls into a swoon, and the Bird vanishes immediately: After he hath remained bereft of his Senses for about a quarter of an Hour, he comes to himself, and tells the Querist who hath robb'd him, or answers his Question of what sort soever; and they tell us, that all that he saith proves true. His Robe was so heavy, that I could scarce lift it with one Hand. This Conjuror had a great quantity of Cattle, which crouds of People that flock to him from very distant Places had presented him, they always giving him his full demands.

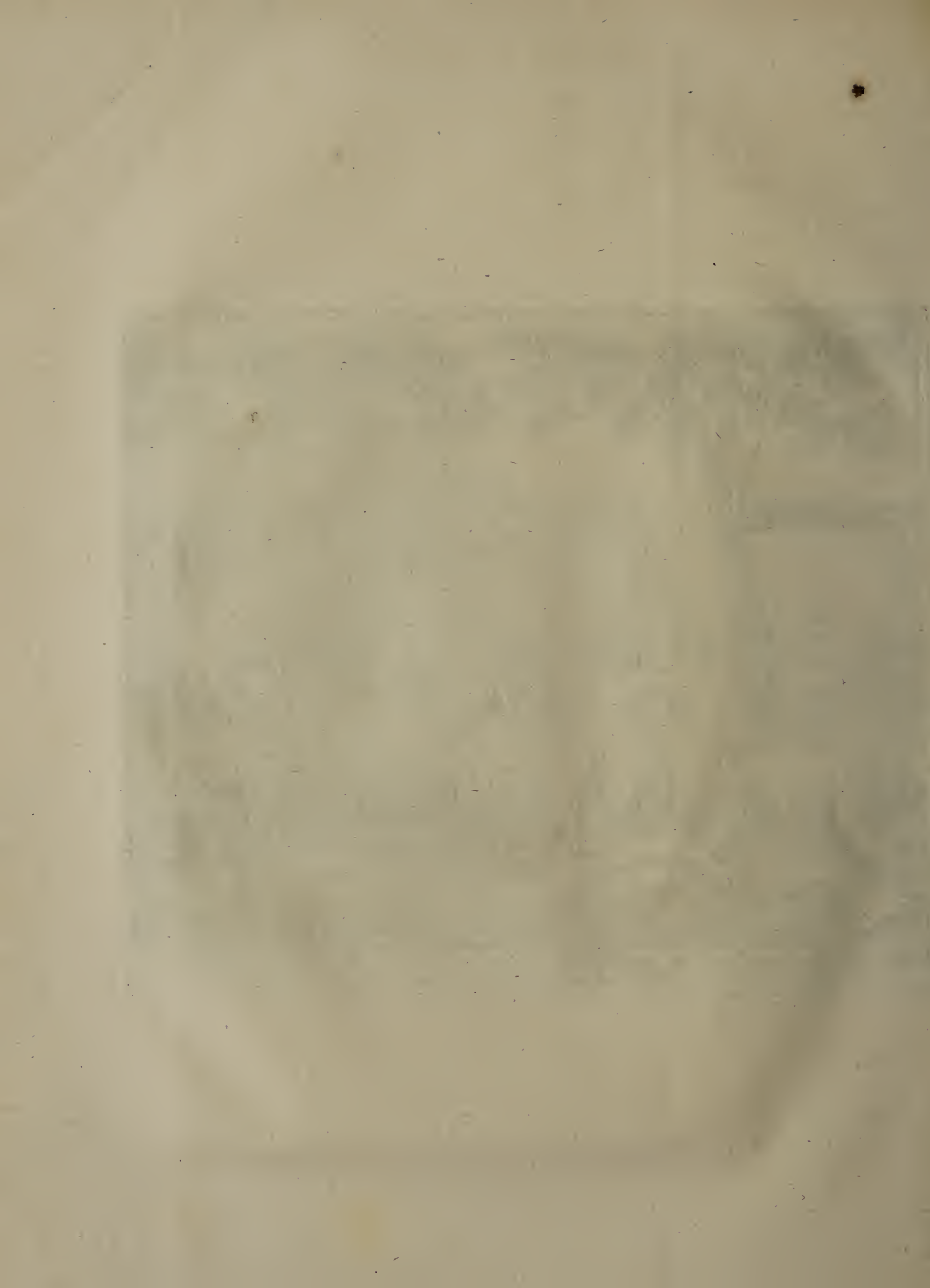
These Heathens are called *Nisovian Tungusians*: They are tall and strong Men, and have long black Hair, which being bound up in the shape of a Horses Tail, hangs upon their Backs: They are broad faced, but their Noses are not so flat, nor their Eyes so small as the *Calmackians*. Both Men and Women go naked in the Summer, except only a Leather Girdle of three Hands breadth, that they deeply cut in the shape of Ribbands, which they wear about their waist, and covers their Privities. But the Women adorn their Hair with Coral and Iron Figures. Both Men and Women carry a Pot on their Left Arms, continually furnished with old smoaking Wood; which preserves them from the biting of the *Moschitoes*, or *Gnatts*, with which the Country along the River *Tungusky* and the Woods are so abundantly pestered, that if not only the Face, but the Hands
and







A. The Idol in his Tent. B. Dead corps laid to rot. C. Dogs and Cats &c. hung up being their food.



and Legs are uncovered, their biting becomes insupportable : which the Natives do not feel so much as Strangers, by reason their Skin being all over bitten by them they are thereby hardned. These People are admirers of Beauty, according to their notion of it. To improve which, they adorn their Forehead, Cheeks and Chins in the following manner: They with a Needle run Threads greased with black Greace through the Skin, in representation of several Figures, and leave the said Threads therein for several Days, after which they draw out, and leave their traces behind them, and very few of them are without this Embellishment. The Print annexed clearly describes these People.

Their Winter Habit is a Coat made of Doe-Skins, which is bordered at the extremities with Dog-Skins, besides which they have also a Breast-piece hung with tails of Horse-hair. They are wholly unacquainted with either Linnen or Woollen Cloaths; but to supply their necessities they make Netts and sowing Thread of Fish-skins. Instead of Caps on their Heads, they wear a Roebucks Skin, with the Horns sticking up on the Crown of their Heads, especially when they go a Buck-hunting, by which means they easily deceive their Game, which they creep close to in the Grass, and the unwary Animals mistaking them for their own Species, void of fear never remove their Station, whilst they having their Bow and Arrow ready, and being gotten so near, are sure to shoot him down. When they are inclined to divert themselves together, they form themselves into a Ring; and one of them stands in the middle, having a long Staff in his Hand; with which in turning round he strikes at the Legs of one of the company, who so nimbly lifts them up, and so dexterously avoids the blow, that it is very seldom that any of them are hit; but if any one is touched, he is duck'd till he is all over wet.

They lay their Dead upon the Trees, and after they are rotten their Bones are buried in the Earth.

They have no other Priests but their Conjurers. They have in their Hutts carved wooden Idols, about half an Ell long, with the representation of humane Faces, which they feed as the *Ostiacks* do, with their best sort of Food, which runs out of their Mouths over their Bodies. Their Hutts are hung round with Horses Mains, Tails, and other baubles; and are made of Birch-Bark: Before which they hang their Bows and Quivers, and very few of them are found without several dead young Dogs hanging near them. Their Boats or Canoa's are made of Birch-bark sewed together, which notwithstanding will carry seven or eight Persons; they are long, slender and without
any

any Benches; they sit in them upon their Knees, and make use of a sort of Oars broad at both ends; which they hold in the middle, and row or paddle, first with the one, then with the other end; and when they row all together the Boat goes at a great rate: With these slight Canoa's they can bear up against violent storms without any danger. They generally subsist themselves in Summer by Fishing, and in Winter by hunting all sort of furred Game, Bucks, Does, &c.

C H A P. VIII.

Arrival at Buratzkoy, and afterwards at Bulanskoy. Description of the Burattians, their Cattle and Dwellings. Their hunting Excursions, and how they encompass their Game. Mischiefs of their Hunting. Great quantity of Game. To what end Oxes and Camels are sold by the Burattians. Shape and Habit of these People. Their Wives and Daughters. Their Religion and Funerals. How they leap about with their Priests. The place and manner of solemn Swearing. Arrival at, and Description of Jekutskoy. Great plenty of Corn and Provisions. A burning Cave. Taischa, or a Mongolian Baron. His Sister a Mongolian Nun; her Opinion, and the Employment of her Hands. A Lama or Priest described, his turning his Beads. Departure from Jekutskoy, and coming to the Lake of Baikol, which is described. How it is passed in Winter. Great mischiefs happen on it by Stormy Winds. Qualities of the Water. Of the Sea Dogs and Fish, the egress of this Lake. How the Shoar is inhabited. Superstitious Notion concerning this Sea; slighted by the Ambassador. Arrival at the Castle of Kabania, and reflection on the Pagan Superstition.

HAVING left these People, without the Occurrence of any remarkable event, I arrived on the 1st of February at the Fort *Buratz*: which place, and all along to the Lake *Baikol*, is watered by the River *Angara*, and inhabited by the *Burattians* a Pagan People.

On the 11th of the same Month we reached the Fortress of *Bulaganski*, in this Country; situate betwixt the Hills and the Vallies, in a Champion Ground, on which live several *Burattians*, who are very richly stocked with Cows, and such a hairy sort of Bulls, as is expressed in the Print. They all live in low dwellings made of Wood joined together, and covered with Earth; on the tops of which a hole is left to let out the Smoak. Their Fires are made in

in





in the midst of these Apartments. They are utterly ignorant of all sort of Agriculture or Fruit Gardens: Their Houses, as in Villages, stand next each other, and are commonly situated near the River: but they do not change their Habitations like the *Tunguzian* and other Heathens. Close by their Doors several Poles are stuck into the Ground, on some of which are stuck Bucks, on others Sheep, and some fasten Horse-Hides on them. In Spring and Autumn they go out by Hundreds in a Gang on Horseback a hunting of Stags, Wild Sheep, and Roe-Bucks, which they call *Ablavo*. When they have found a place where there is any Game, they range themselves in a circular order, so that they can easily come near one another, by which means in such a Ring they will hunt together and encompass some Hundreds of Beasts; and having once got them within the reach of their Bows, every one lets fly at them, so that very few escape, each Hunter being so well provided as to make Thirty Shots successively. The whole sport is expressed in the Print here annexed.

After the Hunting is over, each Sports-man easily finds his own Arrows by their peculiar mark: but a misfortune which attends this way of Hunting, is that in such a confused mixture, they unawares frequently shoot one another off their Horses, and several Horses are wounded. They flea their Game, cut the Flesh from the Bones, and dry it in the Sun; on which Provision they live as long as it lasts, and when it is done, go out a hunting again. Here are vast quantities of the above-mentioned Wild-Beasts, and I have for the distance of a quarter of a Mile been able to see nothing else but Wild Sheep, which like Snow, covered all the Hills; but in the Country for five or six Miles round hereabouts, very few furred Beasts are found, except only a few Bears and Wolves, which sometimes appear.

Those who want Oxen or Camels of an extraordinary largeness for their travelling to *China*, are obliged to buy them of these People, who will not deal for Money, but receive in exchange of the buyers, pale Sables, Pewter and Copper-Basins, red *Hamburg* Cloaths, Otters-Skins, Persian Shaggy Silk of all Colours, and Gold and Silver Bullion: in which Commodities the price of an Ox that weighs from 800 to 1000 *German* pound weight, is not above four or five Rubels, and a Camel is not valued at more than ten or twelve Rubels, one Rubel being two Rixdollars. Both the Men and Women of this Country are robust, large, and according as beauty goes here, have handsome Faces, being a little like the *Chinese Tartars*. In the Winter both Sexes wear long Coats made of Sheeps Skins, with a broad
F Girdle.

Girdle tipped with Iron. They have a sort of Caps that they call *Malachaves*, which they can draw over their Ears in cold Weather. In Summer several of them wear Coats of slight Red-Cloth. Comparatively speaking, their Faces and all over their Bodies look like young Devils, by reason that they know nothing of any such thing as washing at any other time than when they are Born; nor do they ever cut the Nails of either Hands or Feet.

The Virgins whole head of Hair sticking fast together in Plaits, stands on end, and makes them look just as Envy is represented by the Painters. The Women have only two Plaits which hang down on each side of their Head, adorned with all sorts of Tin-Figures. When any of them die they are buried with their adorned Cloaths, Bows and Arrows. Their Religion consists in the worshipping of dead Bucks and Sheep, which are spitted upon the Poles before their Doors, at several times in the Year, as long as they are not putrified. Their Adoration of them is performed by bowing the Head, whilst they sit on their Knees with clasped Hands, without either Prayers or speaking so much as one Word. This is the only Divine Service that they are acquainted with, nor will they ever hear of any other: They have indeed several Priests, which when they think fit, they kill first, and afterwards bury them together with Cloaths and Money, alledging, that it is necessary to send them before to pray for them, and that lest they should be driven to necessity, they ought to have Money to spend and Cloaths to wear.

If they are obliged to the taking of any Oath amongst themselves, they go to the Lake *Baikal*, near which is a Hill that they esteem Sacred, to which they can ride in two Days. Upon this high Mountain they take their Oath, and firmly believe the false Swearer shall never come down alive. To this Hill they frequently offer up all sorts of slaughtered Cattle, and have paid a veneration to it for many Years.

Hereabouts *Musk-Cats* are also found, which are shaped as our Print expresses them. This Animal is almost like a Young Buck, without Horns, with the difference that its Hair is a little black, and the Head inclines more towards that of a Wolf. The Musk is contained in a certain swelling at the Navel, like a little Purse, which is composed of a thin Skin, covered with very fine Hair. The *Chinese* call this Animal *Tebiam*, which is *Musk-Hart*, by reason of its likeness to a Stag; but besides the dissimilitude of the Head, it hath also two Tusks like those of a Wild-Boar, which stick out of its Mouth.



The mans beard plucked out above and left under the Chin Their caps are fox skins: Coats are blew calico pleated in the middle and edged with fures; and their boots skins with the rough side outward. The womans locks adorned with Corals rings and money. The Girls hair is clotted





Philip Martinus, in his *Chinese Atlas*, reports, that this Animal is chiefly found near the City of *Leao* in the Province of *Xanxi*; as also in that of *Xenxi*, and more especially in that of *Hanchungfu*: And that there are also some in the Province of *Suchuen*, the second division of *Paoningfu*, about the City of *Kiating*, near the sixth fortified City *Tienciven*; in several parts of the Province *Junnan*, and several other places Westward. He farther gives us the following Description, which may contribute to the satisfaction of the curious Reader: The Musk-Cat, saith he, is almost like a Young Hart or Doe, only that he is somewhat browner, and so slow and unactive, that the Hunters greatest difficulty is to put him up, for that once done he is immediately shot, for he suffereth himself tamely to be killed without either defending himself or stirring. The Musk of which there are various sorts of different value, is prepared from this Beast in the following manner.

After he is taken all his Blood is drawn off and reserved; and from under his Navel is taken off a Bladder, that is filled with Blood, or some other odoriferous Liquor there concentered; after which the Animal is flea'd and cut to pieces.

When the *Chinese* design to make the best sort, they take the hinder part of the Animal, beginning from the Kidneys, which they stamp and bruise to a Jelly, which they dry, and therewith fill the small Bags which they make of the Skin of the Beast.

But if they desire a slighter sort of Musk, which should yet be very good, and not at all sophisticated, they then beat all the parts of the Animal together without any distinction to a Jelly, with a little of his Blood in a Mortar, with which as before they fill up the Bags made of the Hide.

Besides these two, there is yet another sort of Musk, which is also highly valued, tho' not so good as the precedent. This is prepared from the fore-part of the Animal to the Kidneys, which they particularly lay by the rest of his Body in order to make the common Musk, so that none of this Creature is thrown away, but all parts of it are good; whence 'tis said to be better dead than alive. Thus far *Martinus*: But whether these *Barbarians* make the same use of the Musk-Cat as the *Chinese*, is not certainly known.

After travelling some Days amongst this Nation, I arrived at *Jekutskoi*, a City situate on the River *Angara*, whose course is from the North to the South, but its Original source is the *Baikal-Meer*, about eight Miles distant from this place. This City not long since was rebuilt and provided with very strong Fortifications. The Suburbs

are very large: All sorts of Grain, Salt, Flesh, and Fish are very cheap here, a hundred pound (*German weight*) of Rye not yielding above seven Kopties or Styvers; for round about this City, and to *Wergolensko*, some Miles distant from thence, the Land is very fruitful, and Corn grows in very great abundance; besides great numbers of *Russians* have settled here, and taken up some hundreds of Villages, all which with great Industry and Success promote *Agriculture*.

Opposite to the City on the East-side is a *Burning-Cave*, which for several Years burnt very violently, but now seems extinct, very little or no Smoak issuing out of it at present. It is a large cleft in the Earth, whence the flame formerly ascended vehemently, which now seems to cease; but if a long Pole be put into it, it feels very warm.

Over against this City, where the River *Jekut*, (whence the City takes its name) falls into the *Angara* and so runs to the *Meer*, is a very fine *Cloyster*. Earthquakes are here frequent in Autumn, which yet don't prove very prejudicial. Here resided a *Taiffcha* or *Mongolian Baron*, who had put himself under the protection of their *Czarish Majesties*, and embraced the *Greek Christian Religion*.

He had a Sister, which according to the *Mongolian* custom lived in the devoted spiritual state, and was almost enclined to receive the *Christian Faith*. When she was discoursed on that subject, she replied, I am satisfied that the *Christians God* must necessarily be a strong God, since he hath beaten our God out of Heaven: But he will return thither, tho' he shall the second time be beaten down. When she enters the Chamber, she salutes no Person, as the *Mongolians* are yet accustomed to do, but her order doth not admit of it. She had a Rosary or String of Beads in her Hand, which she continually passed round through her Fingers. I found a *Lama* or *Priest* with her, who had also such a string of Beads in his Hand, according to the *Mongolian* and *Colmakkian* fashion, which he very swiftly and incessantly turned over through his Fingers, continually moving his Lips, as tho' he were at his private Devotions; and with this perpetual telling of his Beads, his Thumb was worn through the Flesh and Nail up to the Knuckle; which rubbing off by slow degrees, did not at all pain him.

After a short stay to rest my self in *Jekutskoi*, on the first of *March* I set forward by Land in Sleads, to the *Lake* or *Meer* of *Baikol*, which I reached on the 10th of the same Month, and found it frozen up very hard.



I passed over this Lake and safely arrived at *Kabania*. This *Meer* is about six *German* Miles broad, and forty long: The Ice in it was full two *Holland* Ells thick, and is very dangerous when the Passengers are overtaken by a great Snow, or high Wind; and the Horses which draw the Sleads must be very sharp shod, by reason the Ice is all over very slippery, and even on Land here is no Snow found to lye, but it is immediately driven away by the Wind. Here are several broken places or Wind-holes, which are not frozen up, which prove very dangerous to Travellers when they are surpris'd with Tempestuous Winds; for the Horses if not sharp shod, by the violence of the Winds are driven on so violently that they cannot tread sure, but sliding and falling on the glib Ice, are hurried on by the Wind, till they and the Slead too are swallowed up in one of these open places: by which several Men and Horses are lost here: Besides, to augment the danger the Ice of this Lake is sometimes torn open several Fathoms by stormy Winds, which makes a noise as loud and terrible as Thunder claps, but after the expiration of a few hours the Ice joins again as close as before.

The Camels and Oxen which Travellers take with them for their Journey to *China*, are also obliged to go this way from *Jekutskoi*, in order to which the Camels have an high Shoe or Boot tied about their Legs, which is very sharp at bottom: The Oxen also are provided with sharp Irons struck through their Hoofs, without which it would be impossible for them to go forwards. The Water of this Lake tastes very fresh, is clear, and of a deep Green, like that of the Ocean. Where the Ice was open we often observed a great many Sea-Dogs, who were all blackish, and not variegated, like those in the White Sea. Here are also great multitudes of Fish, as large *Sturgeons* and *Jacks*, of which I have seen some that weighed two hundred *German* Pounds. The only Egress, or River that issues from this Lake is the *Angara*, whose descent is to the North North-West: But amongst the Rivers which fall into it, is the *Silinga*, the only principal River whose source is in *Mongalia*; the remainder are several Rivulets, which fall from the Hills: there are also some Islands in this Water. Its Shoar and Circumjacent Land is inhabited by *Burattians*, *Mongalians*, and *Outkotians*. In all parts hereabouts there are very fine black Sables, and *Caberdines* are also frequently caught here.

It is observable, that when I entred upon this Sea, and left the Cloyster of *St. Nicholas*, situate at the entrance of the *Angara*, on the Sea-shoar; It was very zealously warned and entreated by several Persons, that when I came upon this dangerous Water, I should not
call

call it a still *Water* or *Lake*, but a *Sea*; they alledging that formerly several considerable Persons, who had been on this *Sea*, and ventured to call it an *Oser* or *Standing Water*, were immediately overtaken by violent Stormy Winds, and were in great danger of their Lives: But I could not help laughing that the Waters should resent Affronts, and stand up for their Honour. However I went forward in the Name of God, and being got to the middle, I called for a large Glas of Sherry, and drank a Health to all the sincere honest good Christians, and my Friends in *Europe*, adding, *which I take you Osera, or still Water to Witness*; and the Wine proved very refreshing, and I observed that the farther forwards I went, the Wind which before was somewhat rougher than ordinary began to decrease; so that I landed with Sun-shine and clear Weather, at the Castle of *Kabania*, the first *Daurian* Fortification beyond the *Meer*, without having the least satisfaction taken of me. I heartily laughed at the folly of those, who gave credit to such ridiculous Superstitions, and did not trust in God, who created and governs all things; to whom the Sea and all the Winds are obedient, either to serve them, or destroy them for their Sins, or perhaps to chastise and terrifie them to the Divine Righteousness; since otherwise the Sea is deaf and stupid, and utterly incapable of resenting or revenging.

C H A P. IX.

Departure from the Castle of Kabanja, and Arrival at the Town of Ilunskoy, mostly inhabited by Russians. Coming to the Castle of Tanzienskoi, and the City of Udinskoy; Which with the circumjacent Land described. A great Earthquake there. Great abundance of a certain Fish once every Year in the River Uda, and how they are caught. Departure from Udinskoy, and arrival at the Fortrefs of Jarauna. Description of the People of this Country. Their manner of burial, and catching of Sables. Passing over the Apple-Mountains, and why so called. Arrival at the City of Telimba. Description of a Tungurian Prince and his Son with extraordinary long Hair. Coming to Plotbischa. The Rivers Ingolda and Schalka very shallow. The Incursions of the Mongalians, and Russian Cozacks. Arrival at Nerzinskoy. Description of that City, and the Inhabitants of that Province. The product of their Lands and Gardens. Two sorts of Heathens described, as also the chief of the Conni Tungusi and his Force. On what Employments these People subsist. Their Religion, Wives, Daughters, Arms and Habit. How the sort of Tea which they drink is prepared. Brandy drawn off from Mares-Milk, and how it is done. Their Hunting in the Spring, Bread, and Fishery. The Tunguzians odd way of solemn swearing, on occasion of which an accident is related.

Leaving the Castle of *Kabanja* the following Day, on the 12th of *March* we arrived at *Ilinskoy* or *Bolsoy Saimka*, a very large Town, most of whose Inhabitants are *Russians*, which in the Winter go a Sable-hunting, not tilling any more Ground than necessity requires, wherefore the Land is every where covered with great barren Hills.

Departing thence on the 14th of the same Month we reached the Castle of *Tanzienskoy*, which was provided with a strong Garrison of *Cosacks*, to cover this Country from the Incursions of the *Mongalians*, which border on it. Without any delay I went forwards with the first Slead that went off, and on the 19th Instant came to *Udinskoy*; which City or Fortrefs is situate on a high Hill, but most of its Inhabitants live below the Fortrefs, at the foot of the Hill, on the River *Uda*, which falls into the *Silinga*, about a quarter of a Mile West-

Westward below the City, which bordering on the *Mongolians*, is enforced with a strong Garrison of *Russian Cozacks*.

The City of *Udinskoy* is accounted the entrance of the Province of *Daur*, and in Summer time the *Mongolians* frequently come hither, and carry off the Horses of the Inhabitants which are grazing in sight of the City; and besides a little Pasture, this Land which is every where Mountainous, is very improper for Tillage; tho' it plentifully abounds with Cabbage, Turneps, Carrots, and such like vegetables which belong to the Culinary Garden: But here is not a Tree to be seen.

After having rested here some Days, one Night at Nine of the Clock happened a violent Earthquake, which terribly shook the Houses of this City, thrice within the space of an Hour, but went off without any damage.

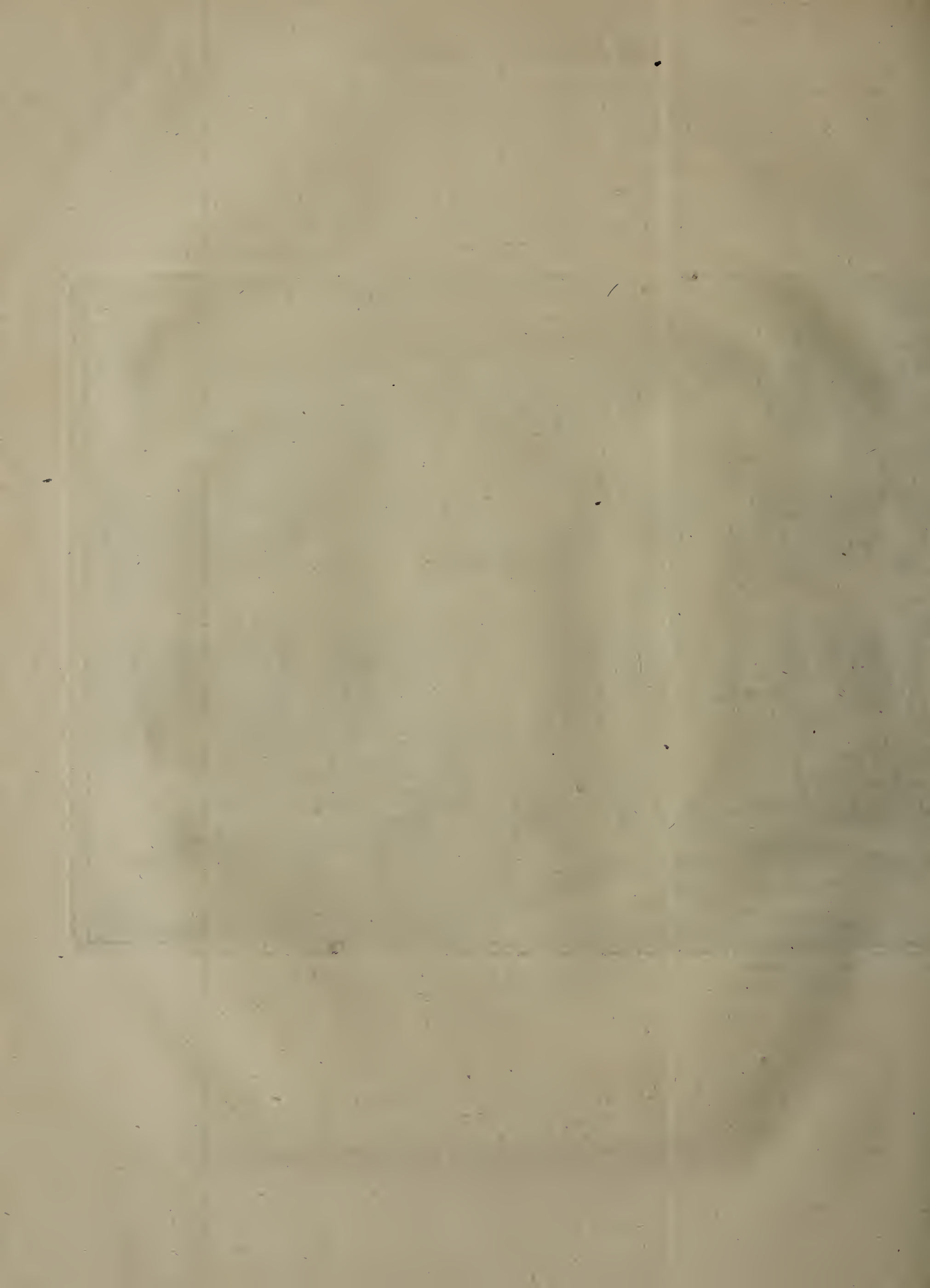
The River *Uda* yields very little Fish, besides a few *Jacks* and *Roach*. But annually in *June*, from the Lake *Baikal*, great shoals of a certain Fish swim hither against the Tide: The Inhabitants call them *Omuli*; they are as big as Herring, and proceed no higher up this River than the end of this City, by a fallen Mountain, where they stay some Days, and then return back: During which time they swim so incredibly thick and close, that the Commandant told me, he threw several Lime-stones into the Water, which did not sink but continued lying on the Shoals of Fish. When the Inhabitants are desirous to catch them, they use no other Net, than a Bag, a Shirt, or a pair of Linnen Stockings; with which they go to the Shoar and draw greater quantities than they want of these Fish on Land. I was obliged to a tedious Melancholy stay here, before my Camels and Horses were ready, and was indeed very glad that at last I got from hence on the 6th of *April*.

On the 26th of the same Month we travelled by Land to the River *Ona*, which flows from the North North-West, and falls into the *Uda*.

On the 27th I reached the River *Kurba*, which also proceeds from the North North-West, and falls into the *Uda*. We travelled hither upwards on the River *Uda*, at about half Flood, but were frequently obliged to go off from it, and sometimes to such a distance that we lost sight of it.

On the 29th of the same, I had the good fortune to put an end to my Travels in this Barbarous uninhabited Road, and to reach the Fortrefs of *Jarauna*. I was not a little glad that I once more came within sight of Towns, for from *Udinskoy* to this Place, is wholly uninhabited.





uninhabited, and we were obliged to travel over high and dismal Rocks. The Castle of *Jarauna* is Garrisoned with *Cozacks*, and also inhabited by several *Russians*, who depend upon Sable-hunting. The Heathens which possess this Country are called *Konni Tunguzi*, being a sort of *Tunguzians*, which live along by the River *Argara*; tho' their Language is intirely different from all others. If any one of them die he is buried with his Cloaths and Bowes under ground; upon his Grave Stones are laid, and a Pole erected, to which is fastened his best Horse, being first shot to Death for that purpose. They live intirely on Sable-hunting, and the Furrs of these Animals are extraordinary black in this place: Here are also very fine *Linxes*, and a sort of *Squirrels*, which were formerly mostly taken off by the *Chinese*. On the North-side of this Castle are three large *Lakes* near one another, each of which is full two Miles in Circumference, and richly stored with Fish, plentifully abounding with *Jacks*, *Carps*, *Pearch*, and such like. From hence there are two Roads which lead to *Zitinskoy* or *Platbisha*. I ordered part of my Retinue to go one of these Roads; but the *Caravan* and *Convoy*, went directly Southwards along the Lake *Schackze-Oser*, which plentifully abounds with Fish; and the other proceeded forwards over the *Jablusnoy* or *Apple-Mountains*, on which tho' they bear that name there grows no Apples, but only a sort of red Fruit on the Trees, which taste very like them. But I my self, accompanied with a Retinue of Forty Men, took the other way, which proved very *Morassy*, and lay betwixt high Rocks which continue all the way from *Jarauna* to the City of *Telimba*. In this last Fortification live several *Russians*, who in Winter go out a *Sable-hunting*; and indeed this Country yields such rich black Sables, that better are not to be found in the whole Province of *Siberia*.

Lodging here one Night a *Tunguzian Knezets*, or *Prince*, whose name was *Liliulka*, came to visit me; he had prodigious long Hair, which for that reason he bound up in a Leathern band, and wound three times about his Shoulders. I was very curious to satisfy myself whether his Hair was really so long as I was told, to which purpose I caused him to be intoxicated with Brandy, by which civility I obtained the favour of having his Hair loosened, and I found it to be all his natural Hair only, for I examined it very narrowly, and measuring it with an Ell, to my great surprise, was convinced that it was four *Dutch* Ells long. He had a Son of six Years of Age, whose Hair growing in imitation of his Fathers, hung down over his Back the length of an Ell wanting an eighth part. This sort of *Tunguzian Heathens* live on the Hills in great Multitudes. Part of them grow

Rich by catching the most fine and beautiful Sables, for which they receive great Sums of Money.

We were obliged to travel two Days from hence over high Rocky Hills, running North-West and South-East : far Northward there rises a Spring, from whence the River *Konela*, afterwards called the *Wittim*, proceeds, which runs forwards North-East, and falls into the River *Lena*, which dissembogues it self into the North-Frozen-Sea : And about half a Mile beyond the high Hills, the River *Zita* arises, which falls into the River *Ingoda* or *Amur*, and pursues its course on to the *Amurischian* or *Eastern Sea*, into which it flows.

Arriving safely on the 15th of *May* at *Platbifcha*, which place the *Caravan* also reached the next Day, having run through several dangers, by reason that the withered dry Grass was burned off the Fields every where, the Fire of which was very prejudicial to the *Caravan* and burned off the Horse Tails ; besides which the Beasts wanted Forage, and were frequently obliged to go a Mile out of the way in search of some Grass which was not yet burned on the side of the Hills, in order to relieve the necessities of the poor Cattle.

We were obliged to stay several Days in the Village *Platbifcha*, situate on the River *Zita*, partly to refresh our Beasts, and partly to make Floats, to drive down the River *Ingoda* and *Schilka*, to *Nerzinskoy* ; this being a very shallow Water, on which no other sort of Shipping can be made use of. And even these Floats can scarce pass over the Rocky places without danger, two of ours being broken to pieces in our Passage, so that we had trouble enough to save our Goods.

All things being ready, I caused the Camels, Horses and Oxen to go first over the Mountains for *Nerzinskoy* ; but with my Retinue I went from thence on the 18th of the same Month, and on the 19th reached the River *Onon*, which runs Northward, and arises in the South out of the *Mongolian Pool*, and after it is united with the *Ingoda*, takes the name of *Schilka*. The Water of this River is very white, and its Shoar is inhabited by great numbers of *Mongolians*, who make frequent Incurfions over the *Schilka* to *Nerzinskoy* ; tho' not always with success, for sometimes they are not only driven from their Prey, but caught themselves and punished as Robbers : And the *Russian Cozacks* themselves by way of reprisal make several Sallies up the *Onon*, destroying whatever comes in their way.

But through Divine Mercy we arrived without being once assaulted, on the 20th Instant, at *Nerzinskoy*, which lies on the River *Nerza*, that runs from North North-East, and about a quarter of a Mile from

THE CITY OF NERZINSKOL IN DAURIA



1 The wooden Castle inhabited by the Governor. 2 The Church. all
The Inhabitants soldiers which trade to China, and have great immunities.



from the City falls Southward into the *Schilka*. This City is indifferent strong, provided with several Brass Guns, and a great Garrison of *Daurian Cozacks* both Horse and Foot. It is situate between high Mountains, notwithstanding which it has Champion Ground enough for the Inhabitants to Graze their Camels, Horses and Cows; and some parts of the Hills afford spots of Ground a Mile or two over, that are very proper for Tillage, in order to Plant and Sow enough to supply their necessities.

From four or five Miles upwards to ten Miles below on the River *Schilka*, live several *Russian* Gentlemen and *Cozacks*, who depend on Tillage, Grazing of Beasts, and Fishing: Amongst these Hills and round the City, are likewise several very fine Garden-Trees and Plants, as also *Rhaponticum* or *Bastard Rhubarb*, of an extraordinary thickness and length, and very fine white and yellow *Lillies*. Here are vast quantities of Red and Snow white *Pæonies*, which emit an extraordinary fragrant scent, and several other Flowers, with which I was unacquainted. Here are Rosemary, Thyme, Marjoram, Lavender, and several other odoriferous Plants unknown to me, which grow spontaneously in great abundance: The Fruits here are only red and black Currants, &c.

Here are two sorts of Heathens which have for a long series of Years lived in subjection to the Czar; the *Konni-Tunguzians* and *Oleni Tunguzians*: The former of which are continually obliged to be ready on Horse-back, at the Command of the *Waywod* of *Nerzinskoy*, or whenever any Incursions are made on the Frontiers by the *Roving Tartars*. And the *Oleni Tunguzians* are obliged on all occasions to be ready on Foot, and appear armed on any exigence in the City. The chief of the *Konni-Tunguzians* is the *Knees Paul Petrovitz Gantimur*, whose *Tunguzian* name is *Catana Gantimar*, born in the Country of *Nieubeu*; he is an old Man, that was formerly a *Taischa* or *Baron* there, subordinate to the Emperor of *China*; but falling into disgrace, and being displaced, he, accompanied with his *Horde* or *Clan*, retired to *Dauria*, put himself under the protection of their Czarish Majesties, and embraced the *Græcian* Religion. This *Knees Paul Catana* can on occasion in one Day raise three thousand Horsemen, well equipped and provided with good Bows, all which are valiant and fearless Soldiers, of whom it is frequently observed, that Fifty of them attack four hundred *Mongolians*, and very manfully beat them. All of these Heathens which live near the City subsist themselves by grazing, but those on the River *Schilka* and *Amur* depend on Sable-hunting, which Beasts are there very black.

They all live in *Hutts*, called in their Language *Jurten*, the inside of which is composed of wooden Poles jointed together; that whenever they are willing to remove their Dwellings, as they frequently do, they may conveniently pack and carry them altogether. This wooden work when set up is thatched all over with Hair and Rubbish, except only the Smoak-hole left open at the top. They place their Fire in the midst of their Hutts, and sit round it upon Turves. Their Religion is the same with that of the *Daorn* or *Daurians*, from whence they pretend to be descended: So that indeed throughout all great *Tartary*, to the beginning of the *Mongolian Tartars*, there is a very great similitude in Religion, as I shall hereafter evince. Both Men and Women in this Country are very strong, and broad faced, and both Sexes, not excusing the young Girls, ride on Horseback, and are equally armed with Bow and Arrows in the use of which they are very expert. The Female dress is the same with the Male; of both which our Print drawn from the Life is an accurate representation. Their common Drink is Water; but the better sort drink *Kara't Za*, or black *Tea*, which is a particular Species of that Plant, the infusion of which, instead of greenish, tinctures the Water blackish. They boil it in Mares-Milk and Water, to which they also add a little Lard or Butter. They also draw off a sort of Brandy from Mares-Milk, which they call *Kunnen*, or *Arak*, and is distilled in the following manner. The New-Milk is first boiled, then put into a Fat, to which is added some Stale-Milk, and this mixture is stirred every Hour: After which this soured Milk is put into a Pot, and closely covered with another Pot which shuts close upon it, into which a Reed is stuck, and the Pot firmly luted, and set over the Fire to Distill as in *Europe*: But the Spirit must be twice drawn off; then it is fit to drink, being as clear, and strong, as Malt Spirits, and very soon intoxicates. It is really very surprizing that none of the Cows in *Siberia* and *Dauria*, as long as their Calves suck them, will ever permit themselves to be milked, nor will they after the Calf is removed from them give any more Milk: which is the reason why Mares-Milk is so much used by these People, which is really richer and more agreeable than Cows-Milk.

In Spring and Autumn these Heathens go a Hunting, like the *Burrattians*, in order to provide themselves against Summer and Winter with sufficient store of Flesh, which they also as well as that Nation dry in the Sun. Instead of Bread they gather the Pods of yellow Lillies, which they call *Sarana*, and having dried and beaten them to Meal, they dress them several ways to eat. They are very expert

at shooting Fish in the Water with a sort of Arrows, which are round, solid, and about three Fingers thick at the head; at the end of which under the Iron point is a ball of Bone bored through, which occasions a loud whistling noise in its flight. These Arrows are so heavy that they do not shoot them farther at most than fifteen or twenty Fathom, and chiefly at large Fishes, as Jacks and Trouts, which harbour in clear Water on the Rocky ground near the Shoars: And when these Arrows hit, they make a surprizing large Orifice, which looks as if it were a cut given by a Hatchet.

These Heathens have a very odd Custom of taking Solemn or Testimony Oaths: An instance of which appears in the following Story of two noble *Tunguzian Hostages* at *Nerzinskoy*. To Illustrate which Relation, the Reader ought to be informed that it is customary on these frontier places (by reason a great many several sorts of People put themselves under his Czarish Majesties protection, which live dispersed in *Siberia* and various parts,) to keep some Children of the Principal Men, and if they are very great, themselves in the *Amandivor-atskoy* or Hostage-Court for some time, all the while richly providing them with Eatables and Necessaries; who is done by way of Security that they shall not desert, and that when they have staid some time others shall come in their places. It happening that two of these *Tunguzian Hostages* falling out, one accused the other before the *Waywode*, of having conjured his deceased Brother to Death. The *Waywode* asked the Accuser if he would, according to the *Tunguzian* Custom, put the Accused to his Oath? To this he answered in the Affirmative; after which the Accused took a live Dog, laid him on the Ground, and with a Knife stuck him into the Body, just under his left Foot, and immediately clapped his Mouth to the Wound, and sucked out the Dog's Blood as long as he could come at it; after which he lift him up, laid him on his Shoulders and clapped his Mouth again to the Wound in order to suck out the remaining Blood, as the Print expresses it. An excellent drink indeed. And this is the greatest Oath and most solmen Confirmation of the Truth amongst them; so that on credit of this the Accused was set free, and the Accuser punished for his false Accusation. Thus far concerning the Customs of these Heathens.

C H A P. X.

Stay and Departure from Nerzinskoy. Arrival at Argunskoy, his Czarish Majesties last Fortrefs towards China. The way from Nerzinskoy to Argunskoy described. Several ruines of old Castles of Rock Stone in the Tunguzian Valleys. A Description of Tunguzian Sepulchres. Departure from Argunskoy. Of the River Serebrenkoy, or the Silver River: Why so called. Of some fallen Mines. Passage over the River Argun, and through the Tartarian WilderNESS, to the River Kalabu, which is fordable. Of the River Terbu. Troublesome passage of the River Gan. New invented Barks. A strange way of swimming over the Camels. Arrival at the River Mergeen. Passage over the River Sadun. Coming to the Jalischian Mountains, where the Ambassador was received by a Chinese Captain, accompanied with ten others. Description of the River Jalo and its Original. Travels over high Rocks and Mountains, where very little Wood grows. Vast plenty of all sorts of Wild Game on the Mountains, but scarcity of Fish in the Rivers. Several Woods. Arrival at the first Chinese Guard. Proceeding on his Journey, to the Targazinschers, which are described. Their Summer and Winter Habits, Hutts, Employments, and Cattle. They are very dexterous Archers and Bow-makers. Excellent Pasture Grounds, &c. along the River Jalo. Vast abundance of Wild-Game; and fine Fowls. Departure from this pleasant River, and passage through prodigious Mountains, to a very barren Field; and afterwards to the borders of China.

I Was obliged to stay some Weeks at Nerzinskoy, and furnish my self with Camels, Horses, Oxen, Provision and all other Necessaries for the prosecution of my Travels. All which being carefully performed, I set forwards from thence in God's Name, on the 18th of July, passed the following Day by the River Borschofka over the Schilka, and after ten Days travelling, on the 3d of August safely arrived at the Castle of Argunskoy; which is the last Fort and utmost Frontier of the Czars Dominions, towards the East Country. This Fortrefs is washed by the River Argun, which flows from South-West to North-East, and falls into the River Amur, and divides his Czarish Majesties Territories from those of the Emperor of China: and on the other or Eastern side of the River the great uninhabited Tartarian WilderNESS

Wilderness hath its beginning. I was obliged to stay here some Days, to get a good number of Carts with two Wheels, for the farther pursuit of my Journey ; and this was the first time that this way from *Argun* through *Tartary* was ever travelled with Waggon.

The way from *Nerzinskoy* hither was mostly over high, stony, and Mountainous Land, tho' in some scattered places intersected by fine large Valleys, and little Rivulets, which intervals are richly overgrown with all sorts of fine Herbs, Flowers, Grass, lofty Cedars, and Woods of Birch-tree: This Country is also very Populous, by reason the *Tunguzians* (which, tho' Heathens, are all subject to his Czarish Majesty) live in great multitudes throughout all parts of this Country where there are Rivers, and pay a voluntary Tribute to that Potent Emperor.

In several scattered places in the Valleys, I observed hundreds of old, and partly fallen Castles, built with Rock-stones, which, as the *Tunguzians* told me, were built by several Warriours long since, when the *Mongolian* and *Western Tartars* made joint incursions into this Kingdom of *Nieucheu*. Which Monarchy according to their computation, comprehended the whole Land upwards from *Nerzinskoy* or *Nieucheu*, (at present called *Nieucheu* by the *Chinese*) and from the River *Amur* down to the *Albanian Mountains* and *Leaoting*. And it is not long since that Waggon Wheels bound with Iron, and large Millstones were found in this Country, from whence I conjecture that the *Nieucheuers*, which border on the said Province of *Leaoting*, formerly followed their Trade, and manual Employments in this *Russian Dauria*, since they make use of these Waggon-wheels bound with Iron, which are nowhere else to be found amongst the *Mongolians*, &c.

I also saw several *Tunguzian Tombs*, covered with many Stones, by which great Stakes were placed, and several dead and putrified Horses upon them. Besides which I observed that the River *Argun* separates two very different sorts of Lands. On our way to this River the Hills abound with Woods, but on the other side of it, nature varies, and very few or scarce any Woods are to be seen, but only inconsiderable numbers of lonely scattered dry Trees.

About eight Miles from *Argunskoy*, from which I departed the 5th of *August*, the River *Zerebrenkoy*, or the Silver River, called in the *Mongolian* Dialect *Mongagol*, falls into the River *Argun*. This *Silver* River is so called by reason that formerly about two Miles up that Water, there were Silver Mines, out of which the *Nieucheuers* and *Mongolians* dug great quantities of that Mettal, and great numbers of Pitts in which the Mettal was melted are at present to be seen ;
but

but these Mines by the course of time, and lying unwrought for many Years, are now fallen in, and covered with the Hills which have tumbled upon them. Notwithstanding all which I brought a proof of their Mettal into *Muscovy*, and doubt not but to restore them, if his Czarish Majesty would only immediately order a beginning to be made, it being very well worth the pains, and they very conveniently situated in a place where there is no want of Wood.

In the Year 1693, on the 8th of *August*, we were obliged to cross the River *Argun*, and pass two whole Days on our way with the Merchants which were with us; and on the 9th at Night we again travelled South Eastward, upwards in the great *Tartarian Wilderness*, all the way betwixt Hills and Vales, and next Day reached the River *Calabu*, which being but a small one, we easily forded it with our Horse, Camels and Waggons. This River arises out of the Hills and falls Westward into the *Argun*. It was observable that it was so cold this Night that the Ice froze the thickness of a Crown-piece.

On the 12th of this Month we reached the River *Terbu*, which is also but small and shallow, and likewise falls Westwards into the *Argun*. On the next Day we came to the River *Gan*, which occasioned us a very troublesome passage, it being so deep by reason of the swollen Waters, that no Camel could reach the bottom, so that we were forced to search for Trees (in this desolate uninhabited Wilderness, where no other hope was left,) which having felled we bound in couples, to carry over our Goods and travelling Provisions: And for our own passage we also made a sort of Boats of small Twigs, which we covered with Ox-hides sewed together, which proved tolerable Barks, and would carry about a thousand Pound weight. The Horses, Oxen and Camels were swom over, which indeed the last did very easily; for as soon as they loose footing on the Ground, they turn themselves on one side, without stirring their Feet, like a floating Leathern Bag; no more care being necessary than to bind five or six of them fast together by the Bridles and Tails, and let some body swim a Horse before them, which is fastened to the Bridle of the first, and consequently tows him along, without which precaution they would drive several Miles down the Stream, before they got over; since notwithstanding this they drove considerably downwards before they got over. This tedious uneasy passage cost us some Days time, the River being broad and the tide rapid and strong. This River comes out of the East and falls Westward into the *Argun*.

Breaking up from thence on the 19th of the same Month, on the 21st we reached the River *Merdeen*, which admitted us without the

the least uneasiness or interruption to ford it, being but small and shallow. It also comes from the East, and falls Westwards into the *Argun*; and thus we travelled to this Place off and on, betwixt East and South. On the 23d we came to another River called *Kailar*, the Water of which being low we passed it without any trouble. This River falls also from South South-East, Westward into the *Argun*. On the 25th we as easily passed the River *Zadun*, which riseth in the South-East, and falls North-West into the *Kailar*.

On the 1st of *September* I came to the *Jalischian Mountains*, lodged there, and found my Post-Messenger, who was a *Russian Gentleman*, that I had dispatched to *Xixigar*, was returned and arrived here before me, and had already waited some Days for me. He was accompanied with a *Chinese* Captain and ten Men, which were sent to meet me. When I ordered him to be brought to me, he complimented me from his Lords which had expressly sent him to meet me: and in their name, presented me with some refreshing Necessaries, as Fifteen Sheep, some Tea, Loaf-Sugar, and Twenty Horses for my use, which I thankfully accepted, and in return made the Captain several Presents.

These Hills are called the *Jalischian Mountains*, from the River *Jalo*'s rising amongst them; its source being united to several Rivulets which fall from the Hills; and the head of this River being not above two Fathom broad. As we climbed up these high Mountains on the North side we found them not one third part so steep as at our descent on the South. Besides which, we observed a very remarkable alteration of the whole Country on the South-side of the Hills.

From the River *Kailar* to these Mountains, we travelled through steep Rocks and high Hills, with which the Valleys, which we passed through were beset on both sides: There are also a few small Thickets scattered up and down, besides which the whole way is void of all Trees or Wood: which sometimes gave us the trouble of carrying the Wood which we wanted for our Kitchen, from one lodging place to another.

These Valleys are wholly covered with fine Grass, as the Mountains abound with all sorts of Herbs and Flowers; besides which this Country plentifully abounds with large Harts, Roebucks and Wild-Sheep, which frequently appear in great Herds of many hundreds together. Here are also large Flocks of Wild-Geese, Ducks, Wild-Turkies, and Partridges: but none of the Rivers which I passed from the *Argun* to this place abound with Fish, no other being to be found than Roach and Jacks. The Air is temperate, or rather cool. But

on the 2d of *September* quitting the Hills, and travelling along the side of the River *Jalo*, we were entertained with very fine Oak and Lime-Trees, as well as a great many Hasel-Nut Bushes, which did not grow above an Ell above ground, and yet bore vast quantities. We proceeded two Days in such an agreeable Road, and on the 4th Instant, to our mighty satisfaction reached the first *Chinese Guard*, which was placed upon a high Mountain, that afforded them a very large view, and commanded the whole circumjacent Plain. As soon as this Watch espy any Persons, they summon them, and conduct them to their main Guard, under their Commanders on the *Mergeen*, as they also did by us.

Without any farther interruption we proceeded on our Journey, and on the 5th Instant got sight of the first *Targazinian Hutts*, and the next Day passed the last of them. The *Targazinians* are a separate independent *Herd* or *Clan*, which are obliged to pay Tribute to the Emperor of *China*: They are governed by their own Chief, but obey those who are most Potent in *Tartary*. They are an Infidel Heathen Nation, which worship the Devil: They are of a middle Stature and broad faced like the *Mongalians*. Their Summer dress is composed of *Blew China Callicoe*, and *Tanned Leather*; but it being cold betwixt the Mountains here in the Winter, they wear Coats made of Sheep-Skins. Their Language is very little different from the *Tunguzians*; and they live in *Hutts*, made of thin *Bamboes* or *Reeds*. They depend chiefly on the Tillage of Land for the production of Barley, Oats and Millet; the remainder of which that they do not consume themselves, they transport and sell to the *Xixigarian Villages*. Their Cattle are chiefly Horses, Camels, Bulls, Cows and Sheep; the last of which are very fine and large, the Tail being a large Span thick, and two Spans long, all of which is only Fat, and they are so very heavy that they cannot go fast, much less run. These People ride very much upon Oxen as our Print represents; and are very expert Archers, and make great quantities of Bows, which are esteemed the very best in all *Tartary*, and are therefore sold very dear. We passed by these People on our Journey on the charming Banks of the River *Jalo*, with utmost Pleasure, but now turned our Eyes from thence downwards towards the South. I cannot help owning, that the side of this River is perfectly like a Paradise, as consisting of beautiful Pasture Grounds, Silver Streams, and the pleasantest Woods in the World; and the delicious entertainment of the Eye is not a little improved by the prospect of the rising Ground and beautiful towring Hills, which offer themselves to our view at about a Mile
and



and half distance on each side, and are a perfect Warren or Park of Wild Game: Great numbers of Wild Swine, Harts, and vast Herds of Tygers, and Panthers harbouring under these shady Mountains: Here are multitudes of Wild-Ducks; a small sort of Geese called *Turpani*, adorned with all sorts of variegated Feathers, checquered together like those in *India*; and a particular sort of extraordinary beautiful Partridges, whose Feathers are of several colours, their Tails about an Ell long, which prove very delicate, being in taste as well as size and shape like Pheasants; they harbour in plain Fields, in the long Grass, and in low Nut-bushes; and being sprung, in their flight clap their Wings as loudly as a Stork.

On the above-mentioned Day being obliged to leave this charming River, I turned off on the left, from it to the South-East, and spent the 8th, 9th and 10th Days in travelling betwixt Mountains and Rocks on each side, where we were afflicted with the want of Wood and Water, being obliged to content our selves with what the Pits yielded of the latter, which was of a deep brown colour and almost stunk. But on the 11th we got out of the Hills, and came to a Plain, but so verry barren a Field, that nothing at all grew upon it; the best was that we had but one Days Journey to *Xixigar*, to pass in this desert Field, so that we held our Night Encampment this Evening not above half a Mile from that place.

C H A P. XI.

Arrival on the borders of China, where the Ambassador is received by a Mandaryn. A Description of the Country and Climate, and the Entertainment with which the Mandaryn treated the Author; which he returned by another. A second Entertainment on each side. Preparation for the Journey to Peking. Description of Xixigar, and the Inhabitants of that Frontier Province. Of the City of Narunkoton and the Daurians: Their Agriculture, Wickedness, and Necromantick Ceremonies, accompanied with a hideous howling. Manner of burying and dieting their Dead. Their dwellings exactly described. Idolatrous regard to the Entrails of a Beast and other Appurtenances. Bench in their Houses under which is a Chimney. A couple of Iron Kettles and their use. The Stature and Dress of these Xixigarian Tartars. The licentious liberty of the Mandaryns Secretaries to carry off and debauch the Women; variously resented by their Husbands. Departure from Xixigar, and arrival at the River Jalo and Naunda, which is farther described. Coming to the Mongolian Streams. How the Nocturnal Encampment was managed here. Three unserviceable Lakes. High Mountainous Land Westwards.

HAVING under the guidance of Heaven reached the Borders of China, I immediately dispatched away a Messenger Post to the Adaganda or Mandaryn who had been sent from Pegu to receive me, and on the 12th early in the Morning, I set forwards, having ranged my Retinue in good order; and instantly was informed by the return of my Messenger, that the Mandaryn accompanied with Eighty Men, would ride from the Town of Xixigar to meet me, and accordingly was already advanced on his way.

We mutually approached each other by slow advances, and met about a quarter of a Mile short of the mentioned Town, where I was very civilly welcomed by the Mandaryn; and after the mutual Compliments were passed, we rode forwards together in very good order, (making a very good appearance) till we reached the Town, where a very good House was provided for me, and those of my Retinue were well lodged suitable to their Characters, as well as the Cozacks which I had with me in the best Houses in the Town.

This

This Province is situate in a very variable, but not unwholsome Climate. Generally about Noon a high Wind riseth, which continues about two Hours; but otherwise the Sky is very seldom overclouded, so that the Sun continues to shine very hot almost always, by means of which and the daily Wind the Earth is so dried, and driven upwards, that the subtile white dust is scarce supportable. I was very particular in my Observation of the alteration of the Air, when I came from betwixt the Hills. About five Miles from *Xixigar*, I perceived the Air to be cloudy as far as the Mountains extended, but no farther; and particularly where the Hills ended, the Air was clearly and visibly separated by a windy Arch, from the West to the East, towards the *Albanian Mountains*.

As for what happened to my self, the *Mandaryn*, who was an agreeable well bred Man, very civilly envited me to take a Meal with him on the 14th Instant, accepting which I was very well received, with particular expressions of kindness, and splendidly treated: The Entertainment was composed of *good Soops, Olitory Herbs, Roast and Baked Meats*; all which were followed with a Banquet of Sweet-Meats and *Chinese Fruit*. His Men and Soldiers were all disposed in the best order, each as perfectly and respectfully knowing and taking his Station as is possible in *Europe*. What alone was very uneasie to me, was that I was obliged to sit with him on the Tapistry, with my Legs across and under me.

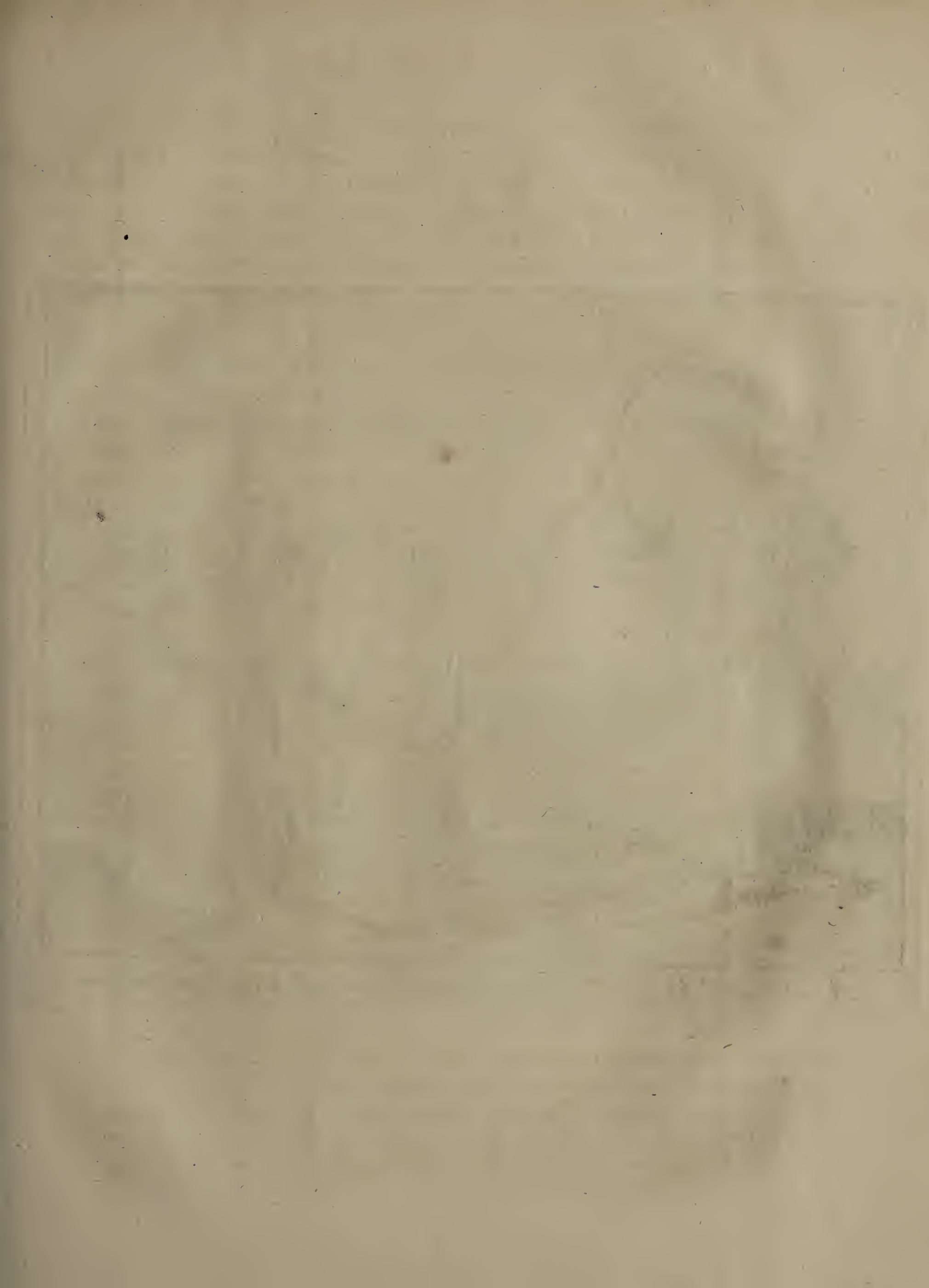
On the 15th I treated the *Mandaryn* in Return, having caused him to be invited the Day before. I entertained him in the *European* manner, and put a Glas of good Sack briskly about; causing the Trumpets and other Musick to play, all which wonderfully pleased this Gentleman, so that he and his Company returned home pretty mellow.

On the 25th the same *Mandaryn* again entertained me, and the following Day dined with me. During which interval of time I caused all necessary preparations to be made for me and my Retinue, in order to our proceeding on our Journey to *Peking*. I informed the *Mandaryn* that I was ready, who immediately answered very civilly, that pursuant to the Order of his *Amologda Chan* or King, as many Coach-men or Waggoners as were necessary were ready to wait on me, if I pleased to accept of his Company, and set forwards on the 28th Instant. Before I invite the Reader to accompany me in this Journey, I think my self obliged in few words to describe the Inhabitants of this Province of *Xixigar*. About a quarter of a Mile from this Frontier Town, runs the River *Naun*, on which is situate the

the City of *Naunkoton*, lately built, and encompassed with Earthen Walls, well lined, and covered on the outside with Massy Timber. The Inhabitants of this City, and the six large Southern Villages subordinate to it, are call'd *Daori* or *Old Dauri*; and at present this Country is called *Dori*, by the *Tartars* which inhabit all along the River *Nauna* and *Fallo* to *Albazin*. These People have very rich manured Lands and all sorts of Garden Fruits, and several Tobacco Plantations; but their Religion is downright Impious and Diabolical; for according to their own report they are all *Schammans*, or *Conjurers*, which invoke the Devil. Several Neighbours of both Sexes, frequently assemble together about Midnight; one of them lies with his Body extended on the Earth, and the by-standers with united and exalted Voices make a dismal howl: others beat on a sort of Drums; which ceasing for a small interval, the howl is renewed, and sometimes lasts for two Hours, until he that lies on the Earth, seems returned to his Senses, and after a tedious howling, rises up and relates where he hath been, and what he hath seen and heard; after which whatever any of the Company are desirous to be informed of concerning future events, or other particulars, is proposed to him; and while I staid there, no Night passed without this hideous howling of these *Diabolical Ministers*.

They keep their Dead three Days in their Houses, then bury the Corps in a high-raised Grave in the Gardens or Fields; after which it is daily visited by Relations of the deceased, a hole being left open at the head, to which place they bring the Dead all sorts of Victuals and Drink, conveying these edibles by a Spoon made for that purpose to the very Mouth of the deceased; but leave the Drink standing in small Tin Cups around the Grave: this practice lasts for several Weeks, which ended they bury the stinking Carcasses deeper in the Earth.

They live in Houses of Clay or Earth, covered with Reeds or small Bamboes, somewhat like the Peasants thatched Houses in *Europe*. The Walls on the inside are partly white, being plaistered with Lime. The middle of the House is furnished with an erected Pillar, about which are wound the Entrails of Beasts, by which are hung a little Bow and Arrows, Pikes and other Arms; to all this they sometimes by bowing and prostrations, pay an Idolatrous sort of Worship. Their Houses are not partitioned into Chambers, nor have they any Garrets; but almost one half of the House close to the Walls is taken up all round, with one Bench, of an Ell high, and about two Ells broad, covered with red Mats; under these Benches passes a Chimney, through which





A Naunfchian or Xixigarschian Tartar with his wife and daughter.

which the Fire is kindled by the Door of the House, and the Smoak goes out at the other side of it. And this Chimney in Winter serves instead of a Stove, tho' the habitation is not much warmed by it; but the indwellers which sit on this Bench in the Day time and lie on it at Night, are indeed somewhat the better for it. There are always in these Dwellings two fixed Iron Kettles, in one of which is warm Water to make Tea, and the other is reserved for boiling of Victuals. The House is all round provided with square Windows, which are placked with Paper instead of Glass, and in warm Weather are set open with a Stick, to make way for the cool breezes to pass through the Apartment.

These Men are generally well shaped, but more especially the Women. The Men, Women and young Girls, wear the same Habit as the *Mansiourian Tartars* in China, as is expressed by the annexed Print. The Secretaries of the *Mandaryns*, which are in Service of the Cham, and are sent hither or to any other place in *Tartary*; whenever they are inclined to Venereal Pleasures, seize for their own use as many Wives as well as young Virgins as they like, at pleasure; and I have frequently seen them carry off the most beautiful Creatures on Waggon as to the slaughter. Some Men being obliged to send their Wives after these Men, boast of it as a very particular favour, that they have the honour to have such a Lord for their Brother-in-Law; but others, tho' perhaps not very well satisfied with this Custom, for fear of falling into disgrace and being punished, are obliged to bear it patiently.

Leaving this Frontier People on the 28th Instant, and setting forwards with the *Mandaryn* from *Xixigar*, by the Evening we reached a Village where we passed that Night. On the 29th we passed through several Villages, and arrived on the other side of the *Jalo*, where it falls into the *Naunda*. We forded the *Jalo* without any difficulty, it being but shallow, but the *Naunda* is very broad, provided with high Sand and Earth Banks on each side: The Stream is not very rapid, by reason it is deep; its Water looks brown; it abounds with Sturgeon, Jacks and several sorts of small Fish, and several Mother of Pearl Shells are found on its Shoars.

On the 30th we turned off from the River *Naunda*, and left it on the Left: its course is farther extended downwards, East South-East between large Mountains, but we travelled over Mountains of Sand and Earth till the Evening, when we first reached the *Mongolian* Rivers. These *Mongolians* are subject to the Emperor of China. Here we were obliged to content our selves with the Water we took out of Wells or Pits, which did

not indeed look very well ; and about twenty *Hutts* were erected in the open Field and covered with felts, for me and my Retinue, in each of which Cottages an Iron Kettle was set on the Fire, and a *Mongolian* appointed for our Service.

Near this place we found three *Oofeces* or *small Lakes* of standing Water, which were utterly useless, by reason the Water was brackish, and as white as Milk. Here the Land began to appear high and Mountainous towards the West, whilst East and Southward the Low-downs presented themselves to our view ; and we were forced to make shift with Well or Pit-water, which was very bad, there being no Rivers near.

C H A P. XII.

Arrival at an old desolate City ; and after that at another called Taimingzingh, which is described. Towers and Stones with Images carved in them. Other Chinese Imagery on the Walls. Strength of the City, its Gates, and farther condition. Towers in the Mountains, and Plants. Arrival at the Idol City ; why so called. Description of the Turret standing in the middle of it. A Chinese Village, chiefly inhabited by Lamaa's. The Holy Mountain farther described for the sake of Travellers. Arrival at the River Schara-murin ; at the Idol Temple ; and farther advance to Karacaton, about which place is great store of Wild Game. Annual Tyger-hunting appointed by the King of China there. Very fine and edible Fowl in this Province. Coming to and Description of a high Rock which is cut through. Idol Temple at the side of a steep Rock.

AFTER four Days travelling without the sight of so much as one House, we came to an old ruined City, encompassed with a Quadrangular Mud-Wall, about a *German Mile* in its circumference. The Land appeared hitherto both East and West as before ; and after six Days more travelling over a Hilly Country utterly devoid of Houses, we reached another old desolate City, called *Taimingzingh*, fortified with a square Wall, and necessary Bulwarks : There are in it two Towers or Turrets, one very high and the other less : The largest was an *Octagon*, whose Front was built with Brick, and about ten Fathom from the Ground there was on each of the eight sides Stones placed, in which were carved several Histories. Upon some of them are expressed

pressed some great Personages, or Kings as big as the Life, sitting with their Feet under them, and Attendants on each side of them; Others shew us several Figures seeming to represent Queens folding their Hands together, with their Servants on each side: The Queens having Crowns on their Heads, and the other being adorned with Rays or Lustres, as Saints are commonly painted, and also folding their Hands; all which hints that this Tower must needs be built by Christians.

Other parts of it represented Warriours with Pikes, after the *Chinese* manner, and the King bare-headed in the middle with a *Scepter* in his Hand, and all the By-standers appearing with hideous Diabolical Visages; and the proportion of all these Images was so exactly observed, that they looked like *European* Master-pieces.

This Turret was perfectly close on all sides, without any ascent without, or entrance into it. Several large heaps of Bricks lay in the City, besides a great many Stone Statues, as big as the Life, of Men, and Idols, Grave-Stones, great Stone Lions, and Tortoises of an uncommon largeness; by all which this seemed to have been a place where a *Chao* or *King* had formerly resided.

One part of the City was divided from the other by an Earthen Wall; the Bulwarks were extraordinary large and high, and this great City had but four Ports or Entrances, into which ran multitudes of Hares, as far as the Grass grew, there being scarce any Men in the Town.

The *Chinese* relate that many hundred Years past *Utaichan*, a *Tartarian King*, governed here, but was conquered and driven out of his Country by a *Chinese King*. The City as near as I could guess was above a *German Mile* in Circuit.

In several places amongst the Mountains we observed Brick-Turrets standing, which seemed to be antient Burying-places of the *Tartars*. In these Hills I observed an infinite variety of known and unknown Plants, they being for the space of several Miles as thick covered with Thyme and Marjoram as Grass.

After having travelled four Days farther we came to *Burgan Koton*, or *Idol City* as it is called, which is likewise utterly laid waste: It takes name from being a place where formerly only the Principal Heathen Priests lived. It had a *Mud-wall*, most of which is at present fallen down. In the middle of the City, is a high *Octangular Stone Turret*, built in the *Chinese* manner, and hung with several hundreds of small Iron Bells, which, whenever the Wind rises a little, chime very agreeable. There was an entrance into this Steeple, by which I sent some of our People up, to see what was to be found in it: They informed

I

me,

me, that in several dark holes, they saw many thousands of *Chinese* or *Heathen Idols*, of several shapes, and that they were very glad they were got back again. On one side of this *Turret* were several holes, out of which the Stones had fallen, by the decay of time; and these holes were filled with *Mangols* or *Writings*, in the *East Tartarian Language*, which were laid there by the Travellers that passed by that way, particularly by their *Lama's* or *Priests*; for others do not lay in such Figures, but Figures moulded in Clay.

Half a Mile from hence is a *Chinese Village*, mostly inhabited by *Lama's* (for where the Corps is thither the Eagles flock) they entertaining all *Tartars* travelling this way, and instructing them in the dark Errors of their antient Idols. We passed on over Sandy and Downy Land, on which was a low Hill, with some old Birch-Trees standing on it: This Hillock is according to their manner esteemed sacred by the *Mongolians* and the neighbouring *Tartars*. And those who travel by it, as a Religious Offering in honour of this Place, in order to obtain a good Journey, hang something which they have about their body here, either *Caps*, *Cloaths*, *Purses*, *Boots*, *Breeches* and *Old Cloaths*, *Shirts*, *Switches*, &c. upon the *Trees*, which from the top to the bottom are so full charged with this *Trumpery*, that they seem to be Shops; and it is thought very scandalous to remove any of them, for they must hang and rot.

At last we came to the River, which is called *Schara Murin* or *Yellow Horse*: which proceeds from the West, and falls Eastward into the River *Karga*: it is about 30 Fathom broad, and fordable with Camels and Horses. Advancing farther we came to the River *Logaa*, which rises in the South, and falls into the mentioned *Schara Murin*. The Land here on each side is Rocky, and in the Valleys are some fine Villages, and well manured Grounds. Prosecuting our Journey we came to a large Village, in which was an old fallen *Chinese Idol-Temple*, without any *Idols* in it; as also another in which a great Lord lived, who was married to one of the *King of China's Daughters*. After this we reached a small City called *Kara-Katon* or *Black City*: Which is quadrangular, and encompassed with Oaken Pallisadoes driven into the Ground; which serve rather to defend it from *Tygers* and *Leopards* than the Enemy: The Land all about being covered with high Rocks, on which grow thickets of Oaks, and great quantities of Grass, where multitudes of those Beasts harbour, as well as Wild Swine and Harts; for fear of which from hence to the great Wall is thought so dangerous, that no Persons venture to travel it by Night: And all the Horses, Asses, Camels, and Cows have an Iron Bell

Bell fastned about their Necks, which somewhat affrightens the Tygers. The Inhabitants told us also, that frequently Men that have only gone amongst the Hills in Day time, have been torn to pieces: Wherefore the *Mandaryn* cautioned me to give order that none of my Attendants should venture to turn out of the Road, or go amongst the Hills, that they might not be devoured by these Wild Beasts, who by Day harbour on the Mountains Tops, and by Night go in search of their Prey.

The King of *China* annually in *August* comes a *Tyger-hunting* to this place, accompanied with two or three thousand of the best Archers in *Tartary*, and a Party of Lancers. When the *Tygers* are to be put up, the King himself goes to the foot of the Hill along with the Men that attend him armed with Lances, Bows, and Arrows, who begirt the Hill, and beset it very well up to the top; and when they find the *Tygers* there, they seeing themselves beset, endeavour by strong leaping to break through the crowd, but are hunted with Drums and Bells till they come to the place where the Emperor himself is, who himself shoots down the Game with Bow and Arrow, without any hazard of his Person, for if there happen but the least danger, he is encompassed with so many Men, that they easily defend him from the Wild Beast with their Lances. The Emperor passes some Weeks in this sport; still by intervals, putting up also some edible Wild Game, as Swine, Harts, Roebucks, Hares, besides Wolves and Foxes. And this I have heard not only from the Inhabitants, but from the Jesuits, two or three of which were obliged to go this Progress with him.

Hereabouts we observed in the Fields and Trees, a sort of Birds, in size and shape very like a *Heron*, whose Feathers are very beautiful, their Neck and Breast being white, their Wings and Tail of a bright Scarlet, their Flesh firm and very good Meat; we also saw another Bird which was as big as a *Parrot*, his Bill crooked, his Tail a full Ell long, and chequered with all sorts of fine Colours, but he is so very wild that he will not suffer any to come near enough to him to take him: Here are likewise Partridges with long Tails and beautiful variegated Feathers.

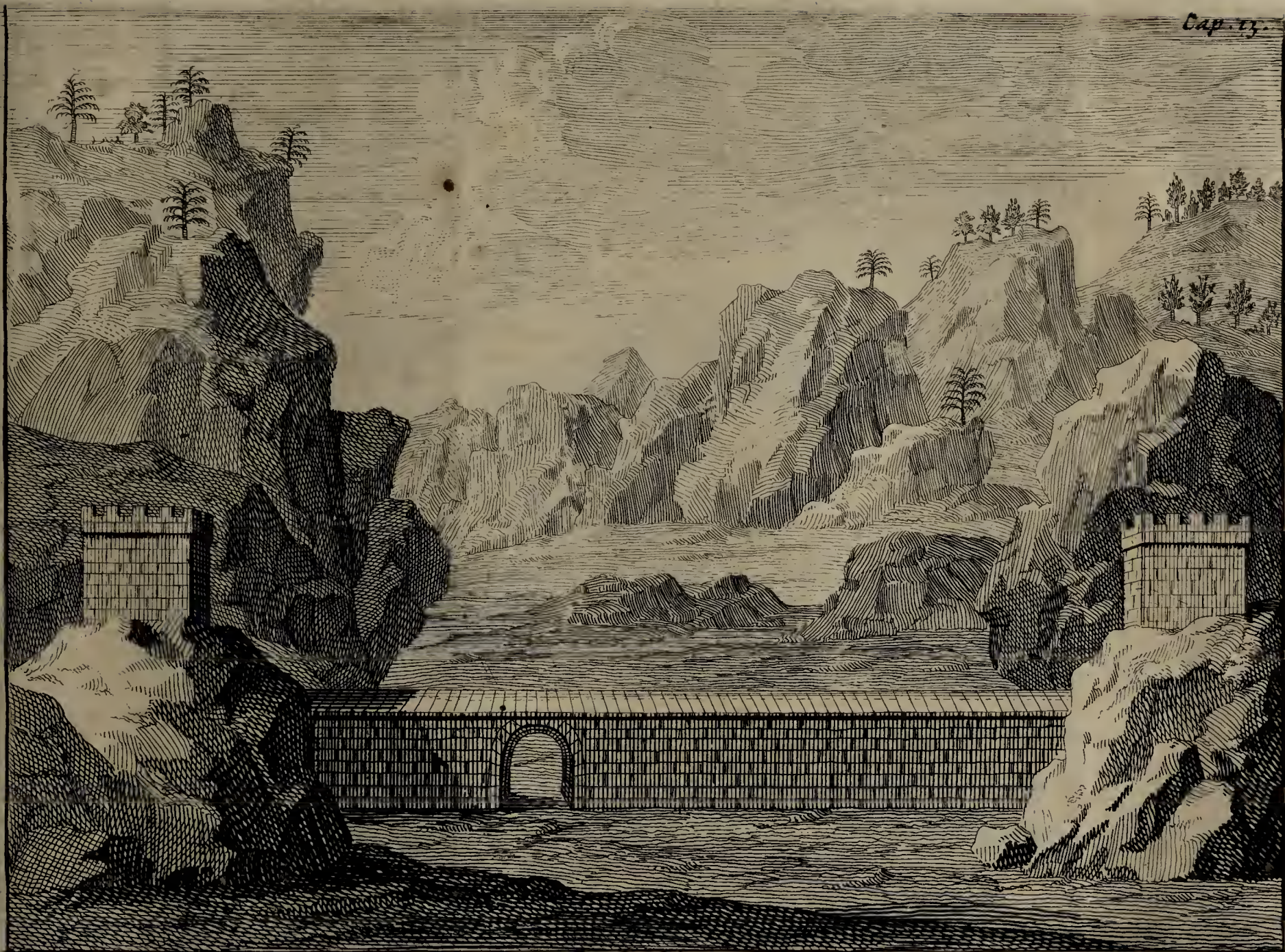
Not far from hence we came to a steep Rock, the ascent of which was very crooked and winding: And was for above two hundred Fathom hewn through by Men, and a way cut which was seven Fathom broad, probably for the convenience of Travellers, the other side of this Rock by reason of the deep *Morasse* being unpassable. We passed hereabouts continually by steep Rocks, furnished with Oaks

and *Lymes*, and in the Vales Chestnut and large Nut-Trees as well as Vines grew wild. From hence we went forwards and came to a very high Rock, sharp-pointed at the top, and by reason of its steepness impossible to be climbed: On one side of which about half way up is an Idol Temple, which is hewen out of the Rock; it hath four Windows, and instead of Idols, we saw four Stone Statues in a sitting posture: It is not a little to be wondered how it was possible for any Men to come there, and perform such a great piece of Work; the Rock on that side being so extraordinary steep, that a Mouse cannot get up it: This Temple according to the report of the Inhabitants hath been built several hundred Years.

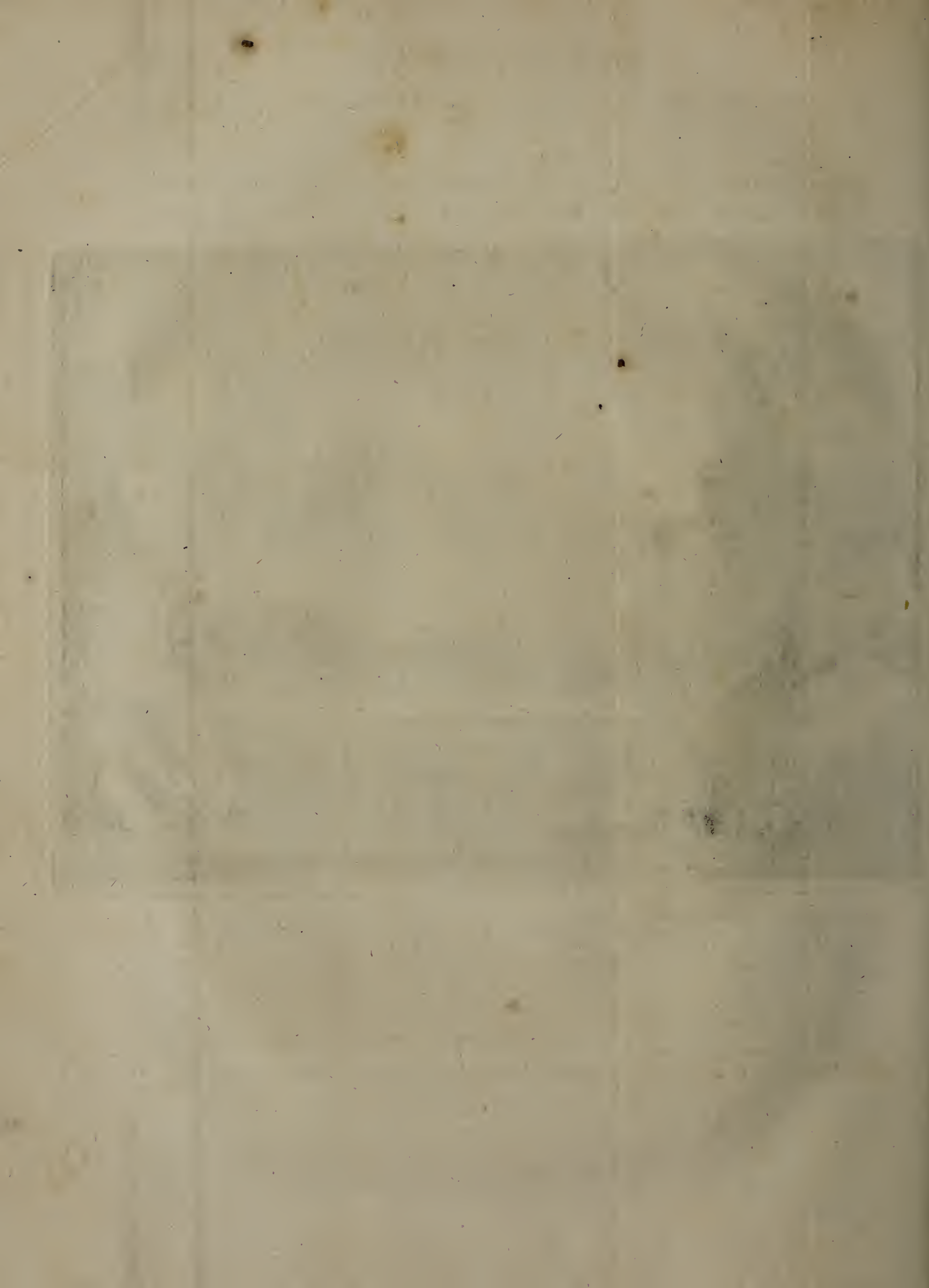
C H A P. XIII.

Arrival at the great Chinese Wall, which is exactly described. Our passage through it into the Valley. Coming to the City of Galchan, and Entertainment of the Ambassador there. Chinese Musick very disagreeable. Furniture of the Tables, and manner of eating of the Chinese. How their Meats are dished up. Herbs usual in the Chinese Soops. Manner of carving in the Ordinaries. The Chinese Drink. Preparation to the acting a Play. Beginning of the same. Which is a representation of a deceased King, in honour of whom the Play was composed. End of the Play, and the Ambassador's setting forwards on his Journey. Arrival at Xungunxa, and proceeding forwards. Of a famous Cloyster in the Province of Peking. Pilgrimage thither, how performed. Practice of an Idolatrous Priest. Arrival at a City inhabited only by the Kings Concubines.

ON the 27th of October we reached some Watch-Towers on the Pinacles of the Rocks, from whence we got sight of the *Zagan Crim*, that is the great Wall, which we came to on the same Day. This really seems to be one of the Wonders of the World. About 500 Fathom from this famous Wall is a Valley, each side of which was provided with a Battery of hewen Stone, from one of which to the other a Wall about three Fathom high is erected, with an open entrance as the Print expresses it. Passing through this fore Wall, we came to the entry of the great Wall, through a watch Tower, about eight Fathom high, arched over with hewen Stone, and provided with Massy Doors strengthened with Iron; the Wall runs from East to West,
across



The out wall of China





THE EMBASSADORS ENTRY THROUGH THE FAMOUS CHINESE WALL. WHICH IS 1200 MILES LONG.
 1 The Enibassador 2 His retinue 3 Convoy of Daorschian Cozacks 4 The Caravan of laden Horses and Camels. 5 The City XOGON KOTON 6. An Idol Temple. 7 the Chinese Guard and watch Tower. 8 Idol Temple on y wall. 9 second Chinese Guard

across the Valley up the extraordinary high Rocks, and about 500 Fathom distant from the other, hath on the Rocks on each side of it a Tower built on it, as our Print represents it. The Foot of this Wall was of large hewen Quarry-Stone, for about a Foot high, and the remaining upper part was composed of Brick and Lime, but as far as we can see, the whole was formerly built with the same Stone. Within this first Port we came into a Plain full 100 Fathom broad; after which we came to another Guard-Port, which had a Wall on each side, and like the first Wall, was carried quite across the Vale; and this as well as the first Port, was guarded by a Watch of Fifty Men. On the first or great Wall stands an Idol-Temple, with the Ensigns of the Idol and the Emperour flying on the top of it. The Wall is full six Fathom high, and four thick, so that six Horsemen may easily ride a breast on it, and was in as good repair as if it had not been erected about 20 or 30 Years since; no part of it being fallen, nor annoyed by the least Weed or Filth, as other old Walls are observed to be.

After this last Watch-Tower, we came into a Vale about 300 Fathom over, on which grew some large Willows, and on the West side at the foot of the Rock was a magnificent *Temple*: A Musquet-shot from whence we came to the City of *Galchan*, which is encompassed with a high Quadrangular Wall, but is not very populous: Here I was welcomed by the discharge of three Iron-Guns, and continued all Night in the Suburbs: The Streets were so beset with the concourse of People that it was difficult to pass them, they being drawn together by the sound of our Trumpets and Bagpipes, which seemed very strange to them, they never having heard any such Musick before. In the Evening the *Mandaryn* sent to Compliment me, and invited me to Sup with him, at the Royal Palace, where the Emperour resides when he passes this way. Coming thither, besides the *Mandaryn*, I found there the Governour and the greatest Officers of the City; and after we had drank some dishes of *Tea*, I was entertained with a noble Supper, all the action of a Play, and a Specimen of Musick, after their fashion, consisting of all sorts of Kettle Drums and Stringed Instruments, which made a hideous confused noise; so that I could have rather wished my self at a distance, than near it. They sate on Stools by couples, no more than two at each Table. These Tables were finely Japanned, and covered with exquisite Needle-work Silk Carpets. They use no Table-cloths, Napkins, Knives, Forks or Plates; but only two small round Sticks of Ivory, or black Ebony were laid upon the Table, which was its whole Furniture.

But

but indeed they are so wonderfully expert in the use of these Sticks that they can with them take up a Pins head. They hold them in the Right Hand betwixt the Thumb and the two Fore Fingers. All their Victuals whether Soops, Rice, stewed, or roasted Meats are brought to Table in China Cups, and not in Dishes: each sort of Roast is served up alone, cut into small pieces; but the Banquet of Sweet-Meats and Fruit, was dished up in little China Basins. Their Soops and Pottages are extraordinary grateful to the taste; as being enriched with very delicious Herbs and Spices, as Mace, Cinamon, &c. The Herb they boil in their Soops, grows on Rocks in the Sea, and being boiled, appears slimy; and when dried is green, as it also looks in the Soops. This Plant hath no Leaves, but grows with interwoven Branches, and is of a very agreeable taste, and esteemed very wholesome; some think it to be abortive *Satyrion* or *Birds-Nest*: They also dress stripped Shrimps, and Pigeons Eggs, with the Whites tinged red and yellow; they have besides fine Salleting, especially Endive cut in small long slips, being very agreeable both to taste and smell; this they lay uppermost in their former Dish. Their Soops are not to be mended by our *German* Cooks.

Instead of Saksellers, they have small Saucers of Pickle or Brine, into which the Meat is dipped. By reason they use no Spoons, each Person takes the Cup of Soop set before him, and sups it up, but that part which is too gross, he guides to his Mouth with the round Sticks, that nothing may run besides or foul their Cloaths; they using no Napkins, tho' indeed their Handkerchiefs hang by their sides, with which they only wipe their Mouths.

In the publick Eating-Houses or Ordinaries, the Carver stands at the Table with the Roast-Meat before him, which in presence of the Guests he cuts into small bits, puts them into little Cups and sets them on the Table. This Carver makes use of no Cloth to wipe his Hands, but cuts off what is best dressed round the Bone as long as he can, and tears off the remainder with his Hands, which are greased up to the Elbows so plentifully, that the sight of them alone is enough to give the Spectators a Meal.

Their drinks are Brandy, which they call *Arakka*; and a sort of Wine they drink warm called *Tarasu*, which is a decoction of immature Rice, and after it hath been kept a Year or two, in colour, taste and strength, is very like the best Rhenish Wine.

Whilst we were at Table, the principal of the Players upon his Knees presented the *Mandaryn* with a Book of red Paper, containing a list of Plays written in black Letters; which the *Mandaryn* perusing,

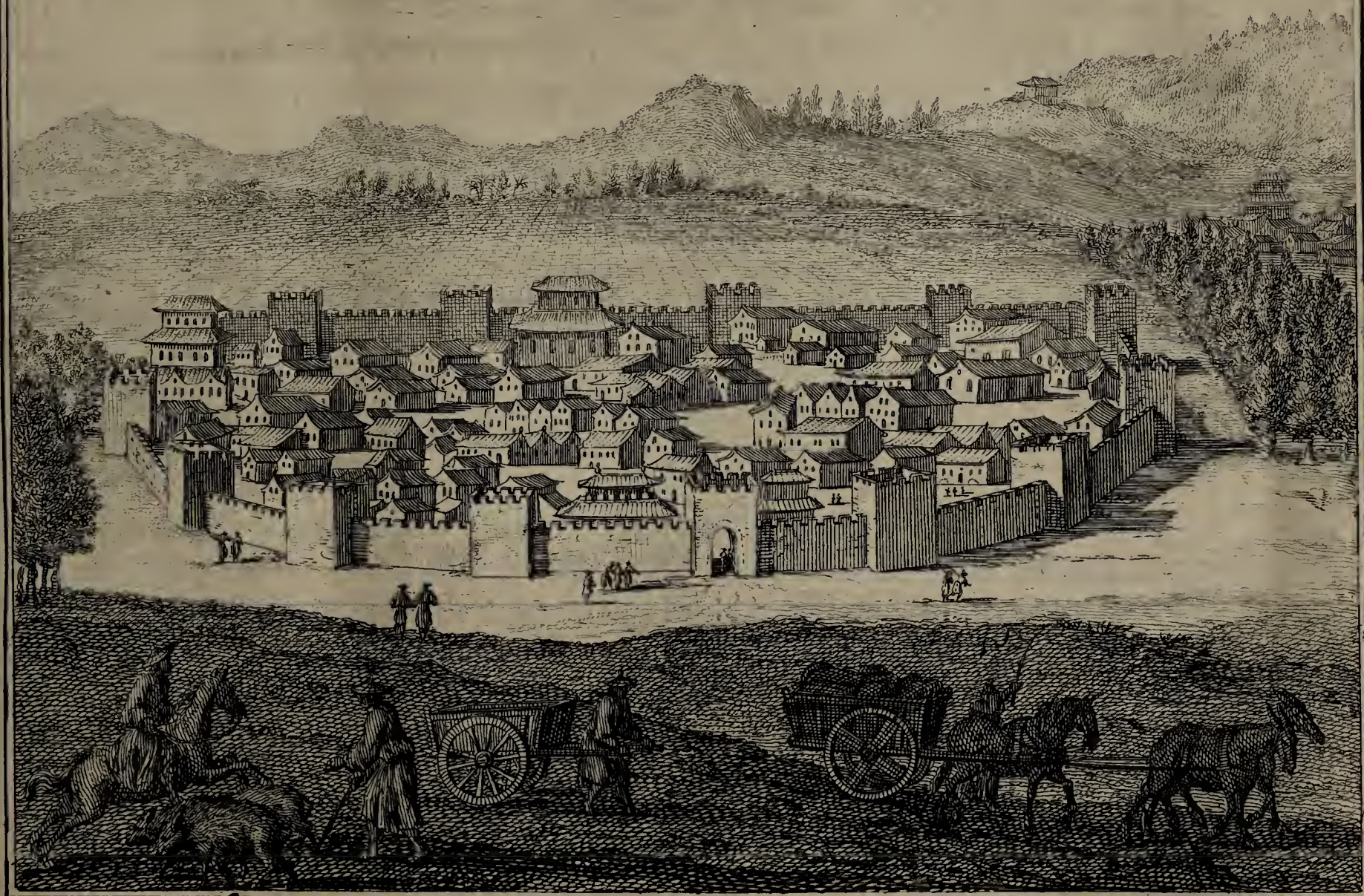
told



Galga in China.

Xantunung

Cap. 13.



told him which Play he chose, after which bowing his Head to the Earth, he arose and began.

First entred a very beautiful Lady, magnificently dressed in Cloth of Gold, adorned with Jewels, and a Crown on her Head, singing her Speech, with a charming Voice, and agreeable motion of the Body, playing with her Hands, in one of which she had a Fan. The Prologue thus performed, the Play followed, the Story of which turned upon a *Chinese* Emperor long since dead, who had behaved himself well towards his Country, and in honour of whose Memory the Play was written. Sometimes he appeared in Royal Robes, with a flat Ivory Scepter in his Hand, and sometimes his Officers shewed themselves with Ensigns, Arms, and Drums, &c. and by intervals a sort of Farce was acted by their Lacqueys, whose antick Dress, and painted Faces were as well as any I have seen in *Europe*; and as far as was interpreted to me, their Farce was very diverting, especially part of it, which represented a Person who had in his Marriage been cheated with a debauched Wife, and fancying her constant to him, had the mortification to see another make Love to her before his Face: They also according to their manner danced to the Lute; and after three several Plays were acted, and it grew towards Midnight, I took my leave, rid home, set forwards on my Journey the following Day, and over a floating wooden Bridge passed the River *Lungo*, which comes from the West and flows South-Eastward into the *Cö-resseschian Sea*.

Being arrived at the City of *Xantunnung*, near that of *Lania*, we were welcomed by the discharge of several Guns, and lodged in the Suburbs. The *Mandaryn* sent to compliment and invite me to Supper, pursuant to which, in company with the Governour and principal Officers of the City, I was splendidly entertained at the Emperors Country Palace, and again diverted with Farces. On the same Day we passed the *Xungo*, which also rises in the West and flows Eastward, near the City of *Lania*, and happily reached the City of *Xantunnung*, time enough to lodge there, where, as in the other Cities, I was entertained by the *Mandaryn* at the Imperial apartment with a Supper and Plays till Midnight. Next Day I went on, and passed a *Morasse* over which lay a very fine Stone-bridge, with numerous Arches, all of square Stone, and adorned with all sorts of Imagery, but especially Figures of Lyons. We passed through several considerable Towns, and large Villages, all of which were very Populous, and very conveniently provided with Horses and all manner of Necessaries for Travellers; here we observed more especially

ally great numbers of Inns, Cooks-Shops, and Tea-Houses. In the Evening we came to the City of *Xungunxa*, where the *Mandaryn* as before invited me to Supper; but being indisposed and very much tired with a tedious Days Journey, I civilly refused him, and staying at home refreshed my self with the charming Fruits of that Country, as Grapes, Limons, Oranges, Apples, Pears, Chestnuts, large and small Nuts, &c.

The following Day we travelled up a high Rock, passing by the Temple called *Jugangu*, whose front appeared very beautiful, being all of square Stone, and seemed to be a strong Fort or Castle. Next Day we passed on the Left Hand or East side over a high Mountain, by a beautiful Cloyster, and several Towns and Villages. This Temple is in the Province of *Peking*, and very famous, by reason the Image of a former *Chinese* King, or *false God* is kept there, which induces several Husbandmen, not only from the Neighbouring Villages, but even as far as the great Wall, to come hither in Pilgrimage in the Spring to implore a fruitful Summer, and after Harvest to thank their Deity for a good Crop; to perform which Office whole Villages and Families come hither with their Priests. The Women being dressed in their best Apparel ride on Asses in the middle of the Procession. The Priests carry painted and metallick Representations or Images of several Idols; and some of the Men carry a sort of long Trumpets, others Flutes, Drums and Kettle Drums, with which they make a horrid noise. They are all followed by a *Lama* or *Idolatrous Priest*, with a Basket fastened to his Body, in which he carries Triangular folded Papers, some gilded and others silvered over; these he scatters on the way about 100 Fathom from the Cloyster, in honour of this *Wonder-worker* or *Idol*. Another carries burning perfumed Tapers, which last till they come to their designed place, all which is accurately expressed in the Print. These Pilgrims stay several Days there, passing their time in all manner of Diversions as well as Devotions.

Prosecuting our Journey we passed by a City inhabited only by the Emperors Concubines, and their Retinue, where that Monarch stays several Days when he goes a hunting. The City is not large, but hath a great many fine Stone Palaces covered with red Tiles; is full of Idol Temples, and encompassed with a high Stone Wall. About three Canon shot West of this place, is a Spring of boiling hot Water, of which a hot Bath is made.



The Idol Temple jugangu.

TUNXO



Chinese Pilgrimage of a whole village to obtain a fertile year

C H A P. XIV.

Arrival at the City of Kixu; and afterwards at Tunxo, where the Ambassadour was received by the Governour. Description of this flourishing, Populous and trading City. The Jonks or Chinese Barks described. The Market of Purcelain or China ware at Tunxo. Coming near Peking, where are magnificent Country Seats, which are further described. Stone Watch-Towers. The Country described. Extraordinary good Roads. Our Entry into Peking. The Mandaryns welcoming the Ambassador. How long time the whole Journey took up. The Ambassador complimented and treated by the Viceroy. Ceremonies on that occasion. Preparation for a publick Audience of the Emperour. The Ambassadour goes to the Court, hath Audience of the King, and is invited to a Royal Entertainment. How the Emperor's Table was set out. The Ambassadour conducted close to the Imperial Throne; he and his Retinue are placed in order to Eat. How the Chinese sit at Table. The King sends a Dish from his own to the Ambassadors Table, and causes him to be asked what Languages he understood. Three Jesuits in the Court, who are particularly described. Their Conversation with the Ambassador. The Ambassador carried up to the Emperor's Throne. What the Emperor asked him concerning the State of the chiefest Cities of Europe. The Ambassadour and his Retinue treated with a certain Drink, with which the Royal Entertainment ended.

AFTER having passed many Towns and Villages, we came the next Day to Kixu. Here the Hills on both East and West sides of us began to disappear; tho' on the Mountains, on the South-East and Western sides we could yet see the great Wall. Going from hence we passed over a Stone-Bridge on the River Xangu, and reposed that Night at Xangole.

On the 2d of November we passed through several Towns and Villages, and over a Stone-Bridge over the River Tungo, which brought us to the City of Tunxo, which is fortified by a great Wall, and is situate close to the River Tungo, as represented in the Print annexed. About as far as the mentioned Bridge, the Governour of the City and Principal Officers with a great train of Horsemen, came to welcome me. The Mandaryns told me that this Governour, was a very great Nobleman, by Birth a Mongolian, or East Tartar: and a very affable,

well bred Man. He invited me and the *Mandaryns* to Dinner, and gave us a noble Entertainment.

The City of *Tunxo* is very large, Populous, and a place of great Trade, by reason of the Water carriage from thence to *Japan* and the Provinces of *Nanquing* and *Corea*. On this River, and haled on Shoar, lie a great many Jonks; besides several which belong to the Emperor, and are richly adorned with carved Work, Galleries, and Windows. In these Barges the Governours of Places are carried to their appointed Cities, discharged, and afterwards brought home again. Those *Jonks* which are haled on shoar are inhabited in Winter like Houses, tho' there is indeed but very little Winter here, nor doth the River ever freeze up, tho' sometimes Ice appears on the Shoar. These Jonks or Barks are indifferent large, and built strong. When they lie on the Wharfs the Joints, instead of Pitch and Tarr, are stopped and smeared over with a sort of Clay mixed with some other ingredients, which once dried keeps faster and firmer than any Pitch. The Masts are a sort of *Bamboes*, hollow within, but yet very strong; and some of them are as thick as an ordinary Man's Waste. The Sails are a certain sort of Rushes Woven together, that when furled, fold up as pliable as Flags, which is somewhat surprizing. The forepart of these Ships is very flat, being built arch-wise from top to bottom, and very conveniently fitted for the Sea. Insomuch that according to the report of the Inhabitants, with a good Wind in one of these, they can reach the *Kareeschian* Sea in three or four Days; and supposing the Wind favourable, can in four or five Days Sail from thence to the Kingdom of *Japan*.

Passing through this City, I rode through the *China Earthen-Ware* Market, where I saw vast quantities of the finest *Porcelain* in the World. I also observed abundance of *Pagods* or *Idol-Temples*, and *Gloysters*; and after I had lodged a Night in the Suburbs, and got every thing in good order, departed next Day, and proceeded forward till I entred *Peking*, this being the last lodging place in my way.

About ten in the Morning we approached within half a Mile of *Peking*, and went by several magnificent Country-Seats, belonging to the Inhabitants of *Peking* as well as *Mandaryns*; both sides of the way were adorned with these noble buildings; before which were digged wide Channels, which served to carry off the falling Water, with small Stone-Bridges over them opposite to the Houses. The Gardens were most of them fenced with Stone-Walls, and adorned with carved Gates, and very fine Garden-Houses; the largest Paths
were

were planted on each side with Cypresses and Cedars, which afforded a charming prospect and passage through them. The Gates of the finest Gardens were set open, I suppose purposely on my account. These pleasant Seats continued on each side the way to the Entrance of the City. It is also observable, that from the great Wall to *Peking* at the distance of about every half Mile are Watch Towers, in each of which are five or six Soldiers, who Night and Day display the Emperours Flags and Ensigns which are yellow: These *Turrets* like Beacons serve on occasion of any Enemy appearing from the East, to light Fires on, in order to alarm and convey notice of it to the Emperour, which is done so expeditiously from one to another, that in a very few Hours it reaches *Peking*.

The Land from the City of *Lania* hitherto is plain, and good arable ground, on which grows Rice, Barley, Millet, Wheat, Oats, Pease and Beans, but no Rye. The Roads here are very broad, strait, and very well kept; for if but one Stone be found on them, it is immediately thrown to the side by Persons expressly appointed for that purpose. In all the Villages we saw Pails filled with Water standing ready for the Camels and Asses to drink: And to my wonder, I observed that the great Roads were as noisie by reason of the multitudes of Travellers and Waggon, as if they were the crowded Streets of a Populous City.

After I had caused our *Caravan* with all the travelling Baggage to be dispatched into the City an Hour before, I rode on in due order with my Convoy, and those who were ordered to ride before me, making in all 90 Persons, besides several *Cozacks*. The croud at the Gates, and the concourse of People with which the Streets were lined, gave us some interruption at our Entry into the City. Notwithstanding there were several of the Emperours *Boschy* or Way-makers, appointed to make way for our passage, yet they had enough to do to make us bare passing room; The *Chinese* being very curious to see Novelties. Being come near to the Ambassador's Court, several *Mandaryns* came to meet and Compliment me on my arrival. Both sides of the Streets were lined with Soldiers as well as the Court. Riding through which, they brought me to my apartment, where not only my self, but all my Retinue were instantly stored with all manner of Provision and Refreshments. And we every Morning returned thanks to the great God who after a long and difficult Journey of one Year and eight Months, had at last conducted us safe and well to our desired place, without the loss of any more than one Man.

After a repose of three Days, I expected to be informed when it would please the Emperor to admit me to Audience: And, according to the Custom of this Country, that Day, the Emperour's orders came for me to appear above, and receive a welcoming Table or Meal. Upon which I prepared my self, and several Great *Mandaryns* were appointed to conduct me up into the Castle, where the *Viceroy*, *Sungut Doriamba*, *Uncle* to the *Emperour*, and four of the greatest Lords of the Empire received and welcomed me. Here the Floor was o'spread with Carpets, upon which having seated my self with them, the *Viceroy* in the name of the Emperor, acquainted me that the Emperour, his Lord and Master, presented me with this Table or Entertainment; and tho' he could not himself be present, yet desired I would accept this Meal, as a welcome after such a long Journey. After which the Table was covered with cold Meats, as Roast Geese, Chickens, Pork and Mutton, besides all sorts of Fruit, and Confections; the Table appointed for me alone was about an Ell square, upon which the Dishes that were all of Silver, and piled one upon another, amounted as I told them, to the number of Seventy.

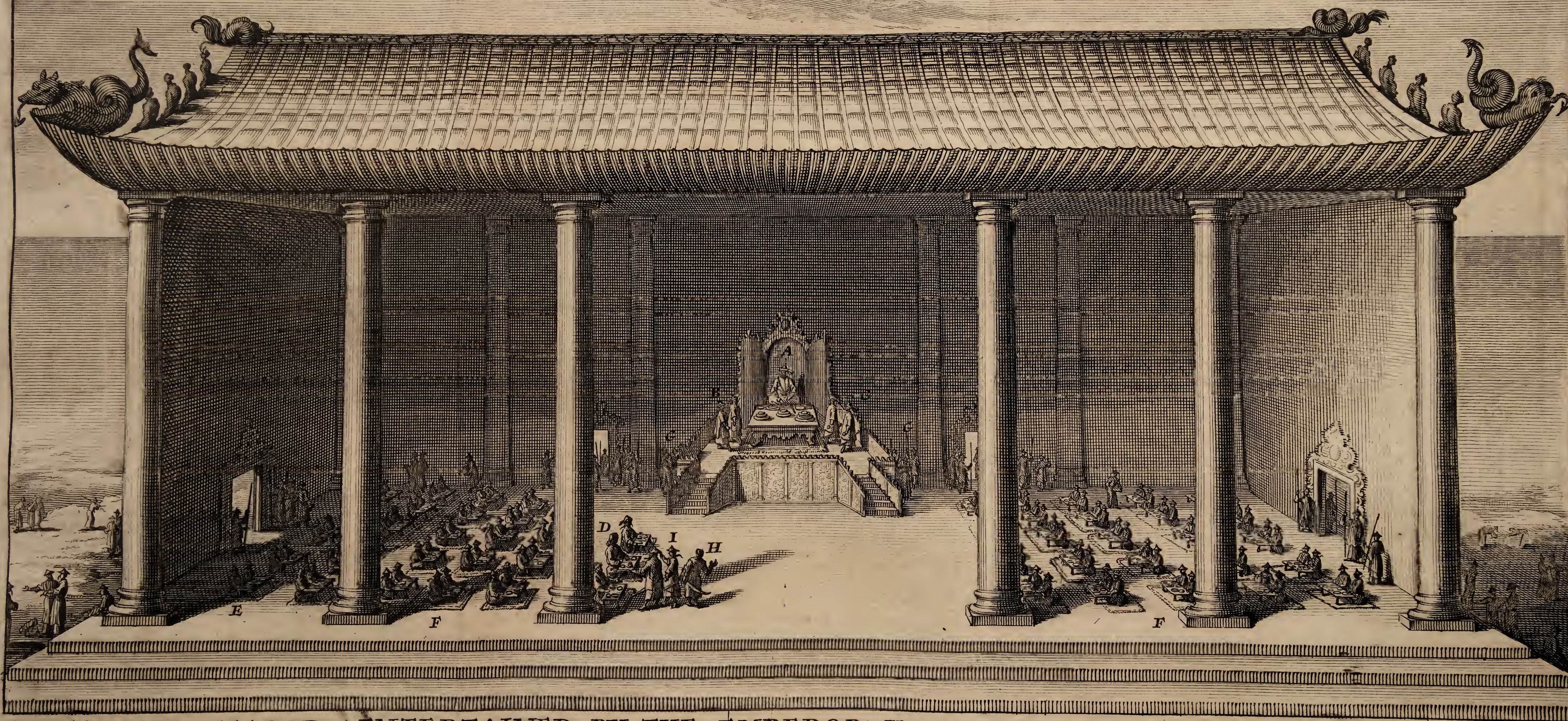
They were entertained with Tea, and I with *Tarasoen* and *Rhenish* Wines. The *Viceroy* and other Lords diverted themselves by smoaking Tobacco, and He made his Compliment to me in the following words; He desired, that I would accept of this Entertainment, as a testimony of the Emperour's Favour, and, expect his Orders in a few Days, to bring their *Czarish Majesties* Credentials, and receive my publick Audience; upon which rising up and thanking him for the Emperour's Favours, I returned to the Ambassadors Court.

On the 12th of *November* the *Viceroy* sent some *Mandaryns* to give me notice to appear with their *Czarish Majesties* Credentials next Morning in the Castle; upon which I accordingly prepared my self. At eight in the Morning three principal *Mandaryns* came to advise me that it was then a proper time to wait on the Emperour: Besides their common Habit, they were also dressed in Robes, which were Embroidered some with Dragons, others with Lyons, and a third sort with Tygers and Cranes on the Breast and Back work'd with Gold Thred: They brought with them 50 Horses for my Retinue. According to the *European Mode* I advanced with their *Czarish Majesties* Credentials, and was attended by my Retinue in good order towards the Court.

Coming to the outer Gate of the Castle, there is a Pillar, with some Characters Engraven on it, where I was told I must alight, according to their Custom; so that I went on foot through five outer
Courts



The Embassadors Introduction into the Audience hall



THE EMBASSADOR ENTERTAINED BY THE EMPEROR IN THE BEST AUDIENCE CHAMBER.

A. The Amologdochan or Emperor.

D. The Ambassador seated betwixt the Emperors Uncle and another Prince.

G. The Kings Life-guard

B. Ant. Thomas & John Gerbillon two Jesuits.

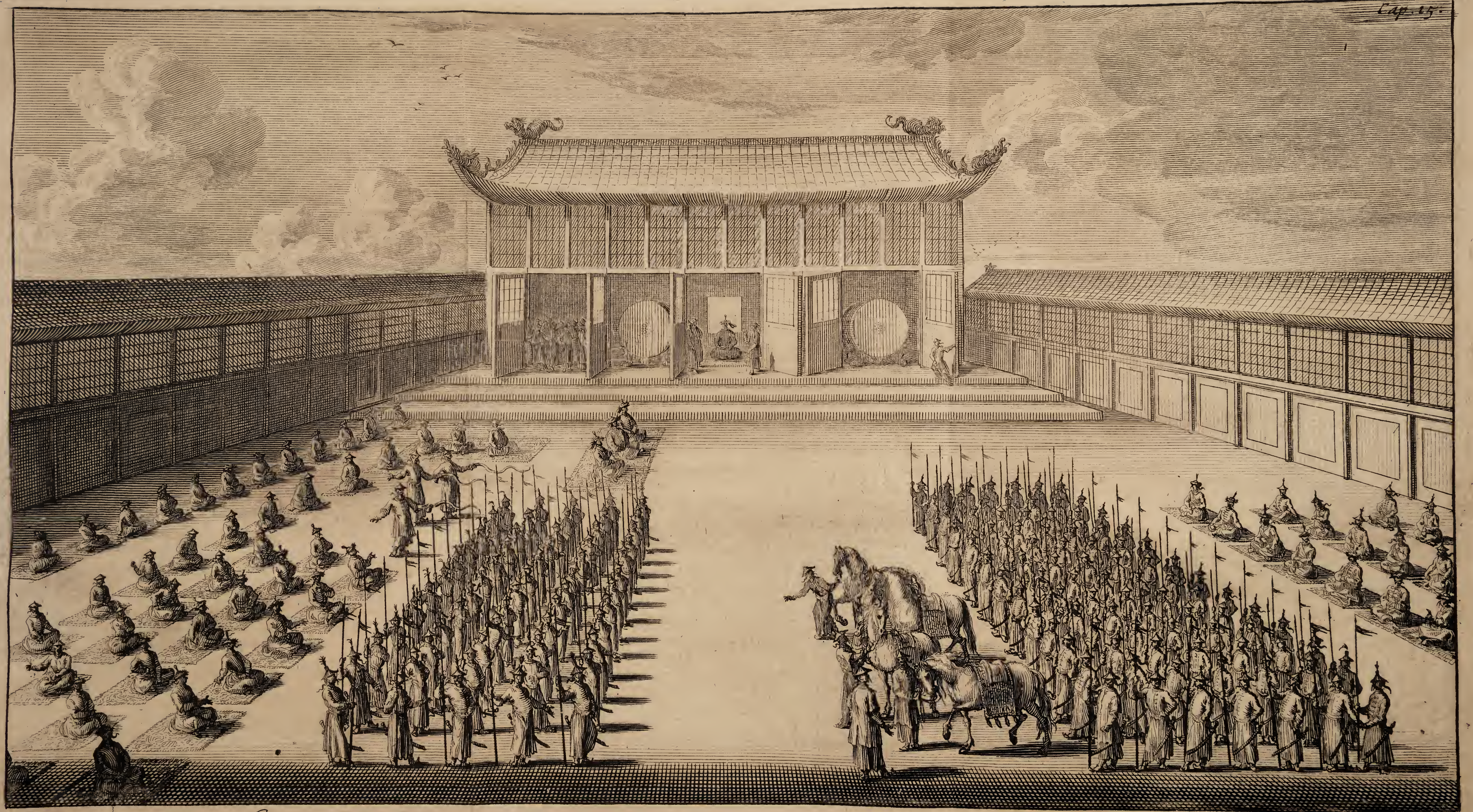
E. The Ambassadors principal retinue

H. The Moscovite Interpreter in the Tartarian language.

C. Docianba and Alligumba two Ministers.

F. The Emperors principal Mandaryns or Ministers.

I. The Chinese Interpreter in the Tartarian language.



The Embassadors Audience of leave of the Emperor.

Courts to the Castle it self. I found a great number of *Mandaryns* at the Court, all cloathed in their richest Embroidered Robes, such as they wear in the Emperour's presence, who waited for me.

After we had mutually exchanged Compliments, the Emperour appeared on his Throne; upon which I delivered his Czarish Majesties Credentials, and after the usual Ceremonies and a short Speech, was conducted back.

On the 16th of the same Month, I was informed that I was invited to Eat before the Emperour: wherefore in the Morning accompanied with the *Mandaryns* thereto appointed, and the chief Gentlemen of my Retinue, I rode to Court. And in the sixth Court, a great many Lords and *Mandaryns* were standing in rows in their best Robes; and shortly after an order came down for us to appear above in the Palace. As soon as I entred, the Emperour mounted his exalted Throne, having near him some Persons who play'd very finely on the Fife, and a Life-Guard of twelve Men with Gilt Halbards without any sharp point to them, but adorned with Leopards and Tygers-Tails. As soon as the King was seated, the Musick ceased, and the Halbadiers seated themselves cross legged on each side below the Throne. The Emperour's Table was furnished with cold Meats, Fruits and Sweet-Meats, served up in Silver Dishes, and the whole covered with yellow Damask. The Viceroy the Emperour's Uncle and two other of the principal Nobles stood on each side of his Majesty, and I was placed on the right hand of the Throne, about four Fathom distant from the Emperour; Who looking very earnestly at me, ordered the Viceroy (who received his Commands on his Knees) to bring me nearer. Upon which he took me by the Hand, and placed me about two Fathom distant from the Emperour: and my Retinue were placed about six behind me. The Emperour a second time sent the Viceroy to me with utmost respect, to ask after the Health of their Czarish Majesties; to which I returned the proper Answer. Then he caused his Table to be uncovered by taking off the Damask covering, and desired me to Eat, a Table being spread for me only: The other Lords and *Mandaryns*, about 200 in number, took their places according to their Quality, sitting two at each Table, in the *Persian* manner upon Carpets, with their Legs under them, which Custom I was obliged to comply with, as the annexed Print expresses.

The Emperour sent me from his Table, a Roast Goose, a Pig, a Loin of very good Mutton, and soon after several Dishes of Fruit, and a sort of Drink composed of boiled Tea, fried Meal and Butter, which

which looked not unlike Bean or Coffee Decoction : Having received all which, with due respect ; his Majesty ordered the Viceroy to ask me, what *European* Languages I understood ? To which I answered, I could speak the *Muscovite*, *German*, *Low Dutch*, and a little *Italian*. Upon which he immediately dispatched some Servants to the hinder part of the Palace, which done, there instantly appeared three *Jesuits*, who approached the Throne. And after kneeling, and performing their Reverence to the Emperor, he commanded them to arise. One of these was Father *John Francis Gerbillon* a *French-man* ; and the two others were *Portuguese*, one of them call'd *Father Anthony Thomas*. The Emperour ordered Father *Gerbillon* to me ; who coming towards me speaking *Italian*, asked me in the Emperour's name how long I had been travelling from *Mosco* to *Peking*, and which way I came, by Waggon, on Horseback, or by Water ? To which I returned satisfactory Answers : On which returning to his Majesty, he informed him : who immediately answered, *Gowa, Gowa*, which is very well. The King then ordered the Viceroy to acquaint me that it was his most Gracious Pleasure that I should approach nearer the Presence by coming up to the Throne ; upon which I arising, the Viceroy taking me by the Hand, after having led me up six steps, set me at the Table opposite to the Emperour. After I had paid my most humble respects to his Majesty, he talked with Father *Gerbillon*, who again asked me how long I had been on the way hither, in what manner I travelled, and in what Latitude *Mosco* was situate, and how far distant from *Poland*, *France*, *Italy*, *Portugal* or *Holland* ? To all which I observed my Answer proved very satisfactory. Upon which he gave the Viceroy a Gold Cup of *Tartarian* Liquor called *Kumis*, in order to hand it to me ; which with due respect I accepted, and having tasted, returned it. This *Kumis* according to the report of the Attendants is a sort of Brandy distilled from Mares Milk. After this the Emperour ordered my Retinue to advance within three Fathom of his Throne, and entertained them with the same Liquor ; which being done, I paid my Compliment in the *European* manner, and the Viceroy took me by the Hand, conducting me to my former place, where after sitting for a quarter of an Hour, I was desired to rise.

C H A P. XV.

The Emperour riseth, and enquires after a certain Jesuit; to which the Ambassador Answers, and returns to his Apartment. The Palace, Throne and great Hall described, where the Throne is placed; the Avenues, and Supports. A Description of the Emperour's Person, Robes and other Appurtenances. The Decorum and Silence observed during the Entertainment. Two Mandaryns ordered by the Emperour to conduct the Ambassador to the Play-House. How he and his followers were treated there, and a particular description of the various and diverting Farces with which he was entertained. Description of the Chinese Comedy. Agility of two Chinese young Women and two Boys. The Emperour goes a Tyger-hunting. The Ambassador invited to an Entertainment by the Viceroy. The Furniture and Ornaments of the Tables. Chairs of the Tartarian Fashion. Of their drinking of Tea. Of their several Courses. The acting of a Comedy. Of the Viceroy's Wife and Daughter. The conclusion of the Meal. The Ambassador entertained by the Treasurer of the Empire. The Magnificence of the Hall. The Ambassador conducted all about the City by that Lord, and to the Emperour's Dispensary. A Toy-Shop. A fine Garden-House. Gold coloured Fishes. Of their Markets, Shops, Fish-Market, and the Market of all sorts of Wild-Game. The Annual Feast of the Chinese, which lasts three Weeks, introduced with a great deal of Pomp. The Procession and carrying about of the Images of the Devil. Vast concourse of People to this Festival, especially of some Women. The Ambassador invited by the King to his Audience of leave before Day. How he was treated in the outer Court. Of Chinese Courtiers. The Emperour comes to the Ambassador. The Proclamation of the Emperour's Herald. Drums and Musick about the Emperour's Person. The Ambassador conducted to him, and treated with a Dish of Coffee, over which he takes his leave. How the Emperour's Life-Guard are Clothed and Armed. How the White-Horses and Elephants are Equipped. Castles on the Elephants backs. As also Elephants Loaded to the King's Waggon.

AFTER this the Emperour arose, and having saluted me, descended from his Throne, and went out of the Audience Hall, by a Door on the Left Hand, in order to go to his Royal Apartment.

partment. As he was leaving the Hall he sent the Viceroy to ask me whether I had heard any News out of *Europe* concerning Father *Grimaldi*, who had been dispatched thither on the Emperour's Affairs: To which I answered, that when I left *Mosco*, I was informed that he with a Retinue of 25 Persons arrived at *Smirna*, and resolved to prosecute his Travels through *Persia* and *India*. He replied, he is safe arrived at *Goa*, and is upon his departure thence in order to his return hither, and it is seven Years since he left *China*. Hereupon I took my leave and retired to my Apartment.

Designing to take another opportunity to give an account of what I could observe concerning the Court, I shall at present only describe the outside of the Palace, and the Throne on which the Emperour sate. The Palace is an oblong Quadrangular Brick building, which is twice as long as broad, and the Roof covered with yellow glazed Tiles, on which were fixed Lyons, Dragons and all sorts of Imagery: The height of this building to the Roof was about eight Fathom; the Ascent to the Hall was up several Steps, and the farther part or entrance of it was provided with small open places or Windows, which were not glazed but peaked with Paper. At the ends of this Hall were two Doors, the tops of which were adorned with a sort of carved work, somewhat like a Crown, which was extraordinary well gilt. This building hath neither any Room over it or arched Roof, but the height of the Room is to the very top of the Roof, which was composed of curious Pannels, beautifully coloured, Japanned and finely gilded. This Hall is about 30 Fathom long, and 10 broad. The Floor according to the *Tartarian* mode was covered with Carpets, adorned with Landskips and Figures.

The Throne is placed opposite to the Eastern Entrance, against the hind Wall, and is about three Fathom broad, and as many long; before it are two Ascents with six Steps each, adorned with Rails and cast representations of Leaves very well gilt: On the right and left sides were also Rails of cast Imagery, which some report to be Gold, and others Silver; which are also extraordinary well gilt. Exactly in the middle of this raised place is a Throne somewhat like an Altar, which opens with two Doors: And in it the Emperor's seat about an Ell high, covered with black Sables, on which he sate with his Legs across under him. This Monarch was then Aged about 50 Years, his Meen was very agreeable, he had large black Eyes, and his Nose was somewhat raised; he wore small black *Mustachio's*, but had very little or no Beard on the lower part of his Face; he was very much pitted with the Small Pox, and of a middling Stature. His Dress consisted

sisted of a common dark-colour'd Damask Waistcoat, a Coat of deep blew Sattin, adorn'd with Ermins, besides which he had a String of Coral hanging about his Neck, and down on his Breast. He had a warm Cap on turned up with Sable, to which was added a red Silk Knot, and some Peacocks Feathers hanging down backwards. His Hair, plaited into one Lock, hung behind him. He had no Gold nor Jewels about him. He had Boots on, which were made of black Velvet.

Whilst he was at Dinner, such an orderly and profound Silence was observ'd amongst the *Mandaryns*, that not only no Noise was heard, but they forbore so much as speaking to one another, all sitting very still with modest down-cast Eyes.

On the next Day the Emperor sent Two *Mandaryns*, with 50 Horses, for my Retinue, and a Message, importing, It was his Majesty's Pleasure, that if I desired to see the City, all that was worth my View should be shewed me. Pursuant to which, I caused my Horse to be saddled, and rode out with these *Mandaryns*, who, by the King's Command, brought me to a sort of Play-house, or Court of Diversion, which was a very lofty and large Building. In it was a great Stage adorn'd with carv'd Imagery, finely painted, which the Players had the Use of for an Annual Rent. In the middle of this Palace, was an open Place encompassed with Galleries, in which the *Mandaryns* desired us to sit down on Chairs; and having entertain'd me with Tea and *Tharasin* Wine, I, and all my Retinue, were treated with a Comedy, and the Diversion of seeing a great many different sorts of exquisite Juglers, who, by a dextrous slight of Hand, seem to produce, not only all sorts of Fruit, as Oranges, Limons, Grapes, &c. but live Birds, and Crabs, and perform all the Dexterities of that kind practised in *Europe*: Others so nicely play'd with round Glass-balls as big as a Man's Head, at the Point of a sharp Stick, tossing them several ways, without breaking or letting them fall, that it was really surprizing: After this, a *Bamboe Cane* about Seven Foot high, was held upright by Six Men, and a Boy about Ten Years old crept up to the top of it as nimbly as a Monkey, and laid himself on his Belly upon the Point or End of it, turning himself several times round, after which, rising up, he set one Foot on the *Bamboe*, holding fast to it with one Hand, and then loosing his hold, clapped his Hands together, and run very swiftly down; and shewed several other Feats of Agility which were very wonderful.

The Comedies also appeared very well, by reason they were acted by the Emperor's Players. They frequently appeared in Changes of

very rich Dresses, embroider'd in Gold and Silver ; and the Plot turned on the Story of a Triumphant Heroe, in which was brought in their Idols, and a late Emperor, whose Face was painted of a Blood-Colour ; which was interlac'd with a Farce, or diverting Entertainment, of Two young Women richly dress'd, who stood each on a Man's Shoulder, and nicely play'd with their Fans, bowing to one another, and keeping time to the Musick as exactly as if they had danced on the Ground. Two little Boys play'd as *Hosticki*, in very fantastical Habits, and recited their Parts very well. After the End of the whole, I thanked the *Mandaryns*, and return'd Home. On the same Day the King went out a Tyger-hunting, without the great Wall, pursuant to his Annual Custom, and returned the same Day to *Peking*.

On the same Day I was invited to a Repast by the Vice-Roy, or *Sungut Doriamba*, with which Invitation I complied, and after some Discourse passing betwixt us, he led me by the Hand out of his Bed-Chamber, into his best Hall, or Parlour, where several Tables and Stools stood ready : The Tables were adorn'd with rich Tapestry Carpets of Silk and Gold, which were full wrought with Figures. I was seated on one, and the *Mandaryns* on the other, side of the Vice-roy. The Tables were also set off with very fine Flower-pots, full of Flowers of all sorts of Colours, work'd in Silk, which not only looked very beautiful, but very natural ; Crimson-Velvets, and the most charming colour'd Silks, being chosen, to make them ; it being Winter, when no natural Flowers were to be gathered : On the fore-part of these Tables were also placed Silver-Cups, in which was laid lighted Pieces of the fragrant Wood *Kalamba*, which afforded a very good Perfume ; next which stood fine wooden Images, and variety of small Figures, or Puppets, finely painted and gilded. The Chairs, or Stools, on which the Vice-Roy and I sat, were, according to the *Tartarian* Fashion, hung at the Backs with *Leopard* and *Tyger-Skins*, which appeared very magnificent ; and a larger Dish of Tea than ordinary, in which was put peel'd Walnuts and Hasle-nuts, with a little Iron-Spoon, to take them out on occasion, was placed before each Person. After the Tea was drank off, which tasted very agreeably, several little Agate Cups, filled with Brandy mix'd with distill'd Waters, were serv'd about ; and after that, several Dishes, or rather Cups, of fry'd or broyl'd Fish, cut into small Pieces, were set in Heaps one upon another, garnished with fine Herbs and Flowers, and, as an Ornament, set on the fore-part of the Table in a row ; by them were placed Six Cups of very agreeable Soops, dish'd up with fine stew'd Flesh and Fish ; and when we had eaten of these, we were regaled with several Courses

of

of the richest Edibles, which were follow'd by all sorts of fine bak'd Meats; and after this last Course, all sorts of delicious Confects as candy'd Grapes, Limons, Oranges, Chestnuts, and Shell'd-nuts.

During our sitting at Table, in the Room where we eat, was acted a Play, interlarded with Songs and Dances by little Boys dress'd in Girls Cloaths, who very skilfully measured their Steps in Proportion to the Time of the Song, and play'd on the Flute, withal, distorting their Bodies into Antick Postures, and playing with a Fan in their Hands. His Lady and Daughter also appeared at the farther Part of the Hall, standing at a Door, which was but half open: They were very richly dress'd according to the Mode of the *Mongolian Tartars*. After I had very divertingly spent about Three Hours there, accompany'd by my Retinue, I rode to my Apartment.

Some time after, I was invited to the House of the Treasurer of the Empire, who is called *Schiloy*, where I was splendidly entertain'd. His Hall was very well furnished according to the *Chinese* Fashion: The Floor of it was laid with a sort of fine Stone; at Three Corners of which, on Ebony Feet, were Three extraordinary White-Marble Tables, naturally shaded with black Veins, which represented beautiful Woods, Mountains, and Rivers: On these Tables were placed high Silver Flower-Pots, very naturally adorn'd with all sorts of fine Flowers. The Pillars, clear up to the Roof, were painted with very fine Colours. While we sat at the Table we were entertain'd with a Ball, and, after this very agreeable Entertainment, I arose and took leave.

When this Lord accompany'd and conducted me thro' the principal Markets, where Silk, Cloath, Gold and Silver, Jewels, and all sorts of fine Manufactures, were sold, I was desired to a-light, and conducted to the Emperor's Dispensary, which I was willing to make some Scrutiny into, it being full stock'd with all sorts of Roots, Herbs, and Med'cines. I was here treated with a Dish of Tea, and observ'd, while I stay'd there, that, according to the *European* Custom, several Prescriptions of Physicians were brought in, which were accordingly prepar'd. Next to this was a Toy-shop, which I enter'd, and bought what I liked. The Master of it had a very fine Garden-House, in which were all sorts of Flowers, young Stocks, and Limon-Trees, in Pots: And amongst other things, he shew'd me a large Glass full of Water, in which were several living Fish about a Finger's length, which naturally look'd as if they had been gilt with the finest Gold; and the Scales of some of them being fallen off, discover'd, to my great Surprise, the Colour of their Bodies to be the most beautiful Crimson in the World.

After we departed from thence, we went thro' all the Markets; each Shop hath a great Board set before it, on which is very orderly written the Shopkeeper's Name, and the Commodities which he deals in. We also went thro' the Fish-Market, in which are all sorts of living Fish, but more especially Carps, Caroeses, and Water-Snakes, (which they eat here) Crabs, Shrimps, &c. all which stand in Tubs to be sold, in great abundance. Passing thro' another Market, I saw great numbers of Harts, Roebucks, Hares, Pheasants, Partridges, &c. and several other wild Game, to be sold.

On the 7th of *January* the customary Annual Festival happened, which they observe for three Weeks. It began late at Night with the appearance of the New Moon, and first the great Bell at the King's Court was rung, and their large Drums, expressly kept for, and used, in their Idolatrous Worship, were beaten, and several Cannon discharged; upon which all the People in the City, of what Degree soever, according to their Ability, express'd their Joy by Rackets, Serpents, and all sorts of Fire-works, to which they also added the beating of an infinite quantity of Drums, and, according to their Custom, the sounding of Trumpets by the *Lama's*, or Idolatrous Priests, in their most innumerable Temples and Cloysters; insomuch, that from Ten at Night till next Day Noon, there was as great a Noise, as if two Armies of One hundred thousand Men were in the heat of Battel against one another. In the Day-time the Streets were crouded with all sorts of Processions, with their Idols, which were carried in various Shapes, and the *Lama's* march'd by them with Incense-Pots, and Strings of Beads; the Drums and Kettle-Drums beating, Trumpets sounding, and other Musick playing, was endless. The carrying of these Diabolical Images, follow'd by a great Train of People, as well as a vast number of *Lama's*, or *Monks*, which preceded them, lasted three Days, during which time all the Shops were shut, and all merchandizing forbidden, on Penalty of severe Punishments. During this time also the Streets were crowded with People of both Sexes, but more especially Women, who rode on Asses, or Chaises with two Wheels, cover'd all round, only before left open. The Servant Maids which sat behind, sung, some of them, whilst others blew on a sort of Horn-Pipe; and some Ladies sat publickly taking a Pipe of Tobacco. The Women never appear in publick in all *China*, except the Province of *Peking* only, and more especially the City, which is inhabited by *Tartars*; the *Chinese* being obliged to live all about the City Wall, and the Suburbs, where all the chief Markets, and publick Places of Sale, are.

Some Days after this, the Emperor sent two *Mandaryns* to desire me to be ready to receive my Audience of Leave the next Morning two Hours before Day: And accordingly three Hours before Day, three *Mandaryns* came to me on Horseback, and we rode to the usual a-lighting Place; whence being conducted to the third Court, and desired to sit down, I was entertained with a sort of *Bean Decoction* or *Coffee*, usually drank here in the Mornings. In the fourth Court appear'd all the principal Officers in their richest Robes, dress'd after the *East Tartarian*, or *Mongolian*, Mode. At break of Day I was introduced into the fourth Court, and seated amongst the *Mandaryns*, who, according to the particular Rank of each of them, were placed on the East and South sides of the Court. After waiting half an Hour, we heard the Emperor approaching, accompany'd with an agreeable Consort of Fifes, and a sort of Lutes. This was not the Hall in which I had my former Audience, but here was a Throne erected, and hung with yellow Damask, on this occasion. On each side of it were two great Drums, curiously gilt and painted, each of which being two Fathom and a half long, they lay upon a Stool made on purpose for them. After the Emperor was seated, by his Command, the Herald which stood before the Throne, went to the Presence-Chamber Door, directed himself to the Lords which sate without in the Court, and uttering some Words with a shrill Voice, he thrice successively cry'd, *Stand up, bow to the Earth*. Whilst this was three times done one after another, the Bells were rung, the Drums were beaten, the Lute was touched, and three Pipes, made for that purpose, were very loudly sounded. Then two principal Lords were, by the Emperor, sent to acquaint me, That it was his Majesty's Pleasure, that I should approach nearer the Presence; accordingly they led me, by the Hand, from the Place where I was, being about eight Fathom distant from the Throne, where my Retinue were left sitting: And I sate down on one side, about three Fathom from the Royal Throne, betwixt two great Lords, which were *Wannes* or *Princes*, and by Birth *Tartarians*; and after having paid a respectful Complement to the Emperor, his great Bell was rung, and the large Drums, on each side, were beaten, which made as great a Noise as a Volley of Guns; the Flutes were also played on, and the before-mentioned Pipes nine times sounded: Upon which I was desired to sit down; which having done, a Dish of *Coffee*, or *Bean Decoction*, was presented to me, which I accepted, and drank up. And after I had dispatched the Affairs of their Czarrish Majesties, with the Emperor, I rose up, and having paid my Complement to him, he also arose from his Throne, and went out at the West-Door to his Apartment.

The

The Emperor's Life-Guard stood in this fourth Court; they were cloathed in red Callicoe, printed with red Figures as big as a Rix-dollar; they wore small Hats adorn'd with yellow Feathers, that being the Imperial Livery Colour. They were arm'd with Scimiters by their Sides, and fine Lances, with Colours fix'd to them, and stood ranked at a distance from the Throne, on each side of the Court, where also stood eight white Saddle-Horses for Shew. In the third Court of State, were also placed four extraordinary large Elephants, one of which was white. They were all covered with rich Gold-embroider'd Cloaths; and all their Trappings, as Bridles, Cruppers, &c. were covered with Silver, and gilt; and on their Backs was placed a very fine carved wooden Castle, or Gallery, spacious enough for eight Persons to sit in. In this Court also stood the Emperor's Wagons with two Wheels, and his Chaises, all hung with yellow Damask Curtains: Besides all which, there were there placed several Stands, or Stools, for Drums, Kettle-Drums, Idolatrous Instruments, &c.

Being got out of the Castle, I mounted one of the Emperor's Wagons and was drawn to my Apartment by an Elephant; on each side of which ran ten Persons, with a thick Rope in their Hands, fastned to each side of the Elephant's Mouth, by the help of which they lead and govern him: On his Neck also sate a Man with an Iron Hook in his Hand, which also contributes to hold him in and guide him. He went but his ordinary Pace, which put his Leaders to run as swift as possibly they could in order to keep Pace with him.

C H A P. XVI.

The Ambassador invited by the Jesuits to their Cloyster: Which stately Building is described. The Church richly adorn'd. The Jesuits Museum. How they treated the Ambassador; who is also invited to see the City. The Emperor's Elephants Stable. Various Tricks of these Elephants, which come from Siam; their Food. A Dog fattened to eat. Surpizing Tricks done by an Ape, as also by two Mice. Strange Two-horn'd Beasts presented to the Emperor, which the Ambassador could not see. Preparation for his Departure. His Passage out of Pekīng, with a great Train and Convoy. Arrival on the Tartarian Frontiers. Great Mortality amongst the Horses and Camels. Taking leave of the Mandaryn. Arrival at the great Tartarian Desart, also at Targasinia, and the River Jalo. Is in danger of being assaulted by Robbers. The Joolschian Hills, but very indifferent travelling. Very heavy and deep Ways, which destroy several Beasts. Fields burned by the Tartars, which occasions great Inconveniency.

A Few Days after I was invited by the Jesuits, with the King's Leave, to visit their Cloyster; pursuant to which, two Mandaryns, according to Order, attended on, and conducted me thither. I was then introduced into the Cloyster, which was encompassed with a high Stone-Wall, and provided with two exquisite regular Stone-Gates, after the *Italian* Manner. On the left side of the Entrance, under Shelter of a Roof, made for that Purpose, in the Court, stand the Cœlestial and Terrestrial Globes, of an extraordinary size, each being about a Fathom Diameter. From hence we proceeded on to the Church, which is a very beautiful *Italian* Building, furnish'd with a large Organ, made by Father *Thomas Pereyra*: And the Church it self, suitable to the *Roman* Catholick Usage, was richly adorn'd with fine Images, and Altars; and was withal large enough to contain Two or Three thousand People. On the Top was a Clock and Chimes. Having seen the Church, the Fathers brought me into the *Museum*, which was stored with all sorts of *European* Rarities. After which they conducted me to an Apartment on one side of it, where, being asked to sit down, I was treated with all sorts of Confects and Preserves: Nor did we forget, according to their Custom, to drink the Healths of all the Christian Princes of *Europe*, in rich

rich Wines : And after a considerable Stay, I rode to my Apartment, very well satisfy'd with the Entertainment of these Fathers.

About this time, two *Mandaryns* came from the *Cham*, to invite me to take the Diversion of seeing the City : Accordingly I mounted, with my Retinue, and these *Mandaryns* conducted me to the Emperor's Elephant-Stable, where stood fourteen of those Beasts, one of which was white : Having then seen them, that was not enough, but they must shew several Tricks, and, at the Command of the Master of the Stable, they roared like a Tyger, so dismally loud, that their very Stable seemed to tremble : Others lowed like an Ox, neighed like a Horse, and sung like a Canary Bird ; but which was most surprising of all, some of them imitated a Trumpet. After this they were obliged to pay their Respects to me on their four Knees ; to lie down first on one side, then on the other, then to rise up. When they lie down, they first strike out their Fore-legs forward, and then throw out their Hind-legs backward, and by this means lie with their Bellies flat upon the Ground. One of these was not broken, and, by reason he was very unruly, he was loaden with heavy Chains on two Feet, and, for the whole time he had stood there, had not been removed from his Place ; and a great Pit was dug before his Stall, that in case he broke loose, he should fall into it, and be prevented from coming into the Court to do any Mischief. All these Elephants were extraordinary large, and the Teeth of some of them were a full Fathom long. The *Mandaryns* told me, that they came from the King of *Siam*, who annually sends several, by way of Tribute, to the Emperor of *China*. Their Food was only Rice-straw bound up in small Trusses, which they take up one after another, with their Trunk, and convey to their Mouths.

After a satisfactory Sight of what I desir'd, I rode with the *Mandaryns* to my Apartment ; and as we were on our way, I observ'd, at the Door of a considerable *Mandaryn*, and a Great Officer, some Persons fleaing of a fat Dog ; upon which I asked the *Mandaryn*, Wherefore that was done ? Who answered, That it was a healthful sort of Food, especially in Summer, it being very cooling. After I had handsomly treated these *Mandaryns*, they went away.

Next Day the Vice-Roy sent a *Tyger*, or *Panther*, in a Cage, to the Ambassador's Court, to be shewn to me, as also several Juglers with Monkeys, and Mice, which had been taught several Tricks. These Apes, at their Master's Command, did really some very strange Things. They fill'd a Basket with Stuff-Coats of all Colours, each of which an Ape took out singly, at his Master's Command, never
missing

missing the Colour which he was order'd to take out, and put on, always varying his Grimace with his Habit; after which, he not only danced on the Ground, but on a tite Rope, in a very diverting manner. There were also two Mice fastened to their Chains, who, at their Master's Command, so entangled themselves in them, and immediately got loose, that it deserved Admiration: But what was most strange to me, was, the odd Motions of these Vermine.

The Jesuits once told me, that about three Years past, were sent to the Emperor, as a Present, from an Island in the Eastern Sea, four Animals as big as ordinary Horses, each of which had two sharp Horns prominent before; and that these Fathers were sent by the Emperor's Order to his Park, about ten Miles from *Peking*, to see these Beasts, in order to inform his Majesty, whether they had ever seen any of them in *Europe*; but returning, they affirmed, that they had never before seen any of that Species. I was indeed very desirous to have seen them, but it being too far out of Town, and the time of my Departure approaching, it was impracticable.

After I had sent my Complement to the Vice-Roy, I desired that I might be advertis'd of my Departure Eight or Ten Days before the Time, when it should please the Emperor, that I should leave the Court and Royal City, which, pursuant to my Request, was accordingly done some Days after.

Upon which, having made all necessary Preparations for such a long Journey, and latterly, according to former Custom, having one Morning in a Week eat at the Emperor's Table, I left *Peking*, accompany'd out of the City-Gate with a numerous Train of Great Officers of State, and *Mandaryns*, on the 19th of *February*, 1694, and on the 25th reached the City of *Galgan*, close to the *Daourian* Wall. From thence we went on to *Naun*, and passed thro' several *Xixigarschean* Villages, to the *Tartarian* Frontiers, and the great Deserts, where we encamped and lay still several Days, and provided Saddles for our Camels, and all other travelling Necessaries, by reason that to *Argum*, on the Frontiers of their Czarrish Majesties Dominions, I was obliged to provide me with all Necessaries on my proper Cost, which I consider'd when in *Peking*; and Camels and Mules being very cheap there, I carried a good number of the last, loose, along with me, they, as well as the whole *Caravan*, travelling free, at the Expence of the *Chinese*, hitherto, as well as my self and whole Retinue, who eat at the Emperor's Charge thus far.

If I had not made this Provision before-hand, but had depended on the Camels and Horses which I left at *Nuna*, we should have fared but

indifferently, for of all that I left there, scarce 800 remained, all the rest, which were a very considerable number, being kill'd by the ill Forrage, and unwholsom Grass.

On the 2^d of *February*, being ready to set forwards on my Journey, I treated the *Mandaryn* and his Retinue, who, by the Emperor's Command, had accompany'd me thus far; after which, taking, very civilly, Leave of each other, we parted.

On the 26th Instant, in God's Name, we enter'd the great Desert, about the River *Sadun* and *Kallar*, being obliged to be upon our Guard, by reason that four *Mungessian Taischi*, or *Lords*, with about 3000 Men, who waited for me, were ready and willing to try their Fortunes with us: Upon which I gave all necessary Orders, and in the Night caused a strong Watch of 60 well armed Horsemen to be kept; but not encountering any thing from that Quarter, we next Day set forwards on our Journey. Reaching the *Jalischian* Mountains, we found our Forrage grow worse the farther we went, and our Saddle as well as Carriage Beasts began to look thin. Having travell'd a whole Day over these Mountains, the Night proved very cold and snowy, and the Grass grew yet worse, being that of last Year, which was dried up in the Field; so that the Camels, but more especially the Horses, tho' they eat their Fill, were not much strengthened by it. I here deliberated whether I should take the old way, or a by-way which was the safest Method that could be taken to escape the *Tartar* who lay in wait for us, and again proceed on Eastwards: Preferring Certainty to an Uncertainty, I pitch'd upon the last, which proved very incommodious, especially for the Cattle.

We travell'd but slowly thro' these steep, mountainous, and deep morassy Ways, and that Day 12 Camels and 15 Horses sunk under Foot, and for 16 Days after we were obliged to wrestle with these difficult Ways, which daily occasioned several Camels and Horses to sink under their Loads, and die; which happened from the heavy Burdens they were obliged to carry, as well as from the sapless and dry Grass, which afforded them no Nourishment. But our Difficulties encreased with respect to Forrage, for our Cattle had Grass hitherto, which, tho' dry and not sufficient to satisfy, yet served to keep them alive; but now we came to Fields that were intirely burnt up by the *Tartars*, which forced us, how feeble and incapable soever our Beasts were to perform it, to dispatch Two Days Journey this Day, in order to come to a Place where there was some Grass left.

Several of our Merchants, who lost their Saddle-Horses, their others being sufficiently laden with Merchandises, were obliged to go on foot;

Foot; and if many of them had not been provided with spare Horses and Camels, we should have been obliged to have left a great quantity of their Goods behind in the Wildernels.

C H A P. XVII.

Arrival at the River Sadun. A Chinese Envoy dispatched to Nerzinskoy, joins us. Arrival at the River Kailaan. Great Smoak occasioned by the Field-burning. The Ambassador's Preparation against it. Terrible swiftnefs of this burning, by which some Tents were consumed, and several Men hurt. The Danger in which the Ambassador himself was. The Fire stopped. Inconveniencies occasioned by this burning. Ambassador's Consultation concerning the proceeding on his Journey. A very toilsome, fatiguing Passage, which kill'd several of the Beasts of Burden. Arrival at the River Mergeen. Scarcity and Anxiety in our Camp, or Caravan. Arrival at the River Gan, where we found fresh Grass. Famine amongst us, and how alleviated.

AFTER various Fatigues and Miseries, with the greatest difficulty in the World, we at last reached the River *Sadun*, where our Quarters began to mend, in some measure, and the tender Grass to sprout up a little. We lay still Two Days by this River, in order to refresh our Camels and Horses, which were unable to have held out any longer. During this repose, a *Chinese* Envoy, with 100 armed Men, came up to me, who, by the Command of the Emperor of *China*, was, by the Vice Roy of *Tartary*, dispatched from the City of *Mergeen*, with orders to accompany me to *Nerzinskoy*, there to treat, concerning some Affairs, with the Governour. The Arrival of this Company was very welcome to us, for now we could make out full 600 Men, and consequently had no reason to fear any prowling Parties of Robbers. On the 15th of *March* we arrived at the River *Kailaan*, which we forded, the Water being low; and passing about a Mile farther in a Dale, we pitched our Tents there, tho' there was but little Forage to be found: Yet we passed the Night here, and in the Morning discovered a terrible Smoak to arise out of the North-west, which gave me some Apprehensions, that the *Tartars* having burnt up the old Grass, lurked under these Pillars of Smoak, in order to obtain an Opportunity to set upon us with great Numbers. To provide against this, I caused the Camels and Horses which were left us in this horrible

Desart, betimes, to be drove to a Place where there was some Grass, and which being behind a high Mountain, was securely shelter'd from the Fire. After which I caused 100 Men to provide themselves with the Felts with which the Camels were covered, and be in readiness, if the Smoak approached us, to disperse and drive it from our Camp as much as possible. Within the space of half an Hour, the Air was wholly darkened with the Smoak, and the Fire driven on by a stormy Wind, flew swifter than a Horse could run, into the Vale, where the dry Grass was about half an Ell high; so that it was scarce possible either to escape or quench such a rapid Flame: The Fire flew, or rather flashed, by our Camp, as swift as Lightning, so that whilst I turn'd my self round, it was got to the short Grass, and behind the brow of a Hill: Notwithstanding its speedy Flight, we did not clearly escape it, for the Flame laying hold of our foremost row of Tents, immediately sent 10 or 12 of them burning into the Air: Great quantities of our Merchants Goods were consumed, and 14 Men struck down by it, which were miserably burn'd, and some of them taken up for dead; but after necessary Care was taken for their Recovery, only one *Persian* died. I was my self in great danger, and if I had not in time run to a Hill where there was scarce any Grass, and been assisted by Two Servants, which covered me with a Felt, to keep off the Heat, I should not have escaped better than those above-mentioned.

The Flame was no sooner past us than it visited the *Chinese* Ambassador, who was encamped at some distance from us, amongst the Hills, where, to his good Fortune, there happen'd to be very little Grass, so that the Fire pass'd about and over the Hill, but was not violent enough to catch hold of any thing, so that their Horses Tails only were a little burn'd, or rather sing'd.

Before it was possible to have told 200, this Fire had reach'd the River *Kailaan*, (which was a Mile from our Encampment,) where it was quench'd by the Interruption of the Water. After this burning, the Land, as far as we could see from the Hills, was quite bare of Grass, and every where Coal-black. Upon this Disaster, I sent out my Guide, to try whether he could discover any Place for us to encamp for that Night; he return'd the next Day, with Information, that for Two Days Journey all round, there was no Forage, the Fire having consum'd it all; for tho' there were some few scatter'd Places which had escap'd the Flame, yet there was not half Grass enough to satisfy such a number of Camels and Horses as ours; which was but melancholy News for me and the whole Camp.

Wherefore I consulted whether it was not most adviseable to repass the River *Kailaan*, where the Grass had escaped untouched; but in opposition to this the danger of being fallen on by the *Tartars* which were on that side of the Water, offered its self, so that I rather inclined to chuse the travelling two Days in want of Necessaries, than once more run the risque of exposing our selves to the Inhumanity of these Barbarians.

In the Morning then we broke up our Camp, which we pitched late that Night near a great Morasse, after having endured a great deal of misery and fatigue that Day, by passing through Morasses and over steep Hills; which hardship fell heaviest on the Cattle, insomuch that in this Days Journey only 18 Camels and 22 Horses sunk into, and remained in the Morasses, not being able to stir a step further, which fell very hard upon us, and the farther we went, rendered us the more uneasy, since we were as unwilling to leave our travelling Necessaries and Provisions behind us, as the Merchants were to throw away their Goods, wherefore the remainder of the Beasts must necessarily be the heavier laden.

The next Day we also passed through Morasses, Vales, and over steep Hills, and came to the River *Mergeen*, where the Grass was not burnt off. Having forded this River, and proceeded on our Journey, tho' in a miserable condition, as well by reason of the ill state of our Cattle, which daily sinking under their loads obliged us to leave them behind, as on account of the scarcity of Provisions for so many Men, our stock being at present very low, and consisting barely in a few lean live Oxen, which Travellers generally take with them in these sort of Journeys, but not either Bread, Peas, Barley or other Provisions, because the *Merchants* and *Cozacks* wanted Beasts for the carriage of their Goods, and it would have been too chargeable to lade Camels with Provisions.

There being but a small number of Oxen in our Camp, the People began to be very anxious, considering it was not possible to reach *Argum* on the Frontiers in less than 10 or 12 Days; so that each Person according to the Company he was engaged in began to compute how long what they had would last, and contrive how to manage his share best.

On the 18th of this Month with great difficulty and fatigue, we at last reached the River *Gan*, which at low Water we forded, and on the other side found fresh Grass for the Beasts, with which we were very well pleased, and mightily encouraged. Here I resolved to lie still three Days, and would have rested longer if the *Merchants*,

*chants, Cozacks, and Workmen, had not complained that they were pinched by Hunger, and that there was but a very small number of Oxen remaining, considering how many hundred Men were to be subsisted by them; and they by example shewed me the best provisional methods which could be taken to prevent an intire Famine; for as soon as an Ox was killed, they saved his Blood, and boiled it to the consistence of a Liver; this they eat instead of Bread. Others cut the Hides into slips, shaved the Hair off, and toasted them at the Fire, and this passed at that time for good Food. Nor were any part of the Entrails thrown away, so that if the scarcity had endured longer, possibly their Nature had been changed into that of *Cassers* or *Hottentots*, who eat not only raw Flesh but even the Excrements also.*

C H A P. XVIII.

Successful Hunting on this occasion. A Messenger dispatched to Argum for Provisions. The Famine increases. Fishing with Bows and Arrows. A Schaman or Conjuror's Hutt in the Mountains, which the Ambassador went to. His manner of Conjuring. Receive news of approaching Provisions. Arrival of them at a very dear rate. Coming to the River Argum, and the City of Nerzinskoy. Departure thence, and arrival at Jekutskoy, Jenizetskoy, and entering a great Wood; coming to Makoskoy, where we found necessary Barks. Arrival at and departure from Tobolskoy. And safe arrival at Muscow.

IN this streight being informed that the Country all about this River abounded with wild Game, as Harts, Roebucks, &c. I ordered some expert Archers to go a Hunting; which proved so successful that they shot about 50 Roebucks, which were afterwards distributed to our famished Company, who greedily devoured them half dressed and half raw, and gave convincing proof that Hunger, as 'tis commonly reported to be, is really a sharp Sword; but besides it must be owned that the asswaging it when it hath continued long, and is grown outrageous, is one of the greatest Pleasures of Life; tho' indeed a tedious Thirst is more intolerable and painful to humane Nature.

In this streight I sent a Gentleman, accompanied with eight *Cozacks* to *Argum* the Frontier Place, charged with a Letter to the Governour, requesting that he would immediately send us a parcel of Oxen, Sheep,

Sheep, Bread, Meal and other Provisions, under Convoy, by reason we were driven to the last extremity; and this Message did not prove unsuccessful, tho' the expected relief did not arrive so speedily as we wished; each Day on these melancholy occasions commonly appearing an insupportable Year.

Having dispatched this Messenger with his Orders, I thought it necessary to break up from the River *Gan*, and in the interim to advance as far on our way, and struggle as much as possible with our uneasiness. And after we had travelled three Days, the Hungry complaints of our Company became incessant; The Roebucks were but a Morsel amongst such a number of People, and no edibles were to be bought for Money in this Wilderness. During which Affliction we were obliged to make a Virtue of Necessity, and bear as well as we could what we were not able to remedy. In this condition dispirited and faint we arrived at a Brook, which flowed from the Hills, and was richly stored with large Jacks, Trouts, and other Fish, of which we shot many with Bow and Arrow; for in clear Water the *Cozacks* and *Tunguzians*, of both which I had several, are such expert Archers, that with their double pointed Arrows they very seldom miss the Fish they aim at, and but once touching, generally pierce through them, which instantly causes them to float on the surface of the Water. This Fishery afforded a very considerable refreshment to our Camp, which was also increased by some Bucks being shot that Evening and dressed as before.

Our Hunters discovered a Hutt amongst the Hills, where lived a *Schaman* or *Conjurer* and his Companion. This Magician was Uncle to our Guide, and a *Tunguzian*, which Nation abounds with such pretenders, as we have already hinted. About Midnight I was waked by a horrible noise, upon which running out of my Tent, and asking the Centry that stood there what it was? He told me our Guide was making merry with his Uncle; which excited my curiosity to that degree, that led by one of the Centries, I stole thither softly to see what they were doing; approaching the entrance of the Hutt, I found that they were *Conjuring* after their manner; and tho' the greatest part of it was over, I yet observed him sitting with an Arrow in his Hand, the head of which was inclined towards the Earth, and the point he held under his Nose; after which he rose up, making a louder out-cry, and after leaping all round, laid himself to sleep. In the Morning the *Cozacks* which I had sent a Hunting, and which he had accompanied, told me that this *Conjurer* came to meet his Nephew, whom he in their presence conjured out of their sight, or carried

carried away; which might easily be done without any *Diabolical* or other assistance than the darkness of the Night, and the uneven Hilly Ground. My Messenger returned with the agreeable news, that within three Days we should be furnished with all sorts of Provisions from *Argum*; the approach of which appointed time was not a little longed for amongst us.

On the 3d Day Heaven favoured us with our promised assistance which consisted of 25 *Oxen* and *Cows*, *Millet* and *Bread*; but the *Suttlers* that brought this Convoy of Provisions, made the Merchants pay so very dear for it that their Relief looked more like Extortion than Charity: they taking a *Rixdollar* for one Loaf, and for all the rest in proportion; however cost what it would this supply was very welcome to us at that juncture.

Thus invigorated, and also encouraged to find that the farther we advanced on our Journey the Grass grew better, till through the mercy of God, we got to the end of this barren desert, in which we had suffered so many miseries and struggled with the greatest difficulties in the World;

On the 27th Instant we joyfully reached the River *Argum*, which with the whole *Caravan* we passed; and on the 31st arrived very safe at the City of *Nerzinskoy*, returning our thanks to Heaven, that through so many dangers we were thus far advanced on our way, and had got out of the reach of pinching necessity.

After having refreshed the Camels and Horses with good Grass, and rested our selves for a convenient time, we departed from *Nerzinskoy* on the 5th of *August*, and proceeding forwards by Land along the River side, came on the 8th Instant to the City of *Udinskoy*; where we furnished our selves with Barks, and assisted by an ebbing Tide, and a good Wind, in one Night reached the Frontiers of *Siberia*, and on the 12th arrived safe at *Jekutskoy*.

On the 17th we left that place, and after running a great risque by wading through the great quantities of Water which were fallen, arrived safe at *Jenizetskoy*.

On the 26th we went by Land from this City, and travelled through a Wood 20 Miles long, in which were harboured several wild and ravenous Beasts, who at our approach took their flight.

After which we arrived at the Village *Makoskoy*, where finding as large a store of shipping as I desired, we all embarked, and driving down the River *Keta*, on the 28th of *September* we reached the Castle of *Ketskoy*, on the *Oby*; on which we drove down without meeting any thing remarkable, and on the 16th of *October* came to the

the Town *Samorofskoy Jam*, at the Mouth of the River *Jalis*, on which Stream I spent 14 Days in waiting for Sleads to pursue our Journey by Land. I took the very first opportunity, so that on the 29th I safely reached *Tobolskoy*, where we rested three Weeks to refresh our selves, and to provide our selves with new Cloaths.

After which we set forwards with all possible expedition, being very desirous to put an end to such a tedious Journey, and once more see the Imperial Metropolis.

On the 24th of *November* we travelled through the City of *Wergaturia*, without encountring any thing observable, and through the mercy of God, arrived in Sleads safe at *Muscow* on the first of *January*: After having spent two Years and ten Months in these Travels, and endured several fatiguing miseries, partly occasioned by scarcity of Provisions as already hinted. We returned thanks to Almighty God for graciously preserving us in such imminent dangers, and at last conducting us to the place from which we were sent by their Czarish Majesties.

C H A P. XIX.

Reflection on the Authors Travels, and manner of describing them. A Review of them with respect to several observable particulars. General Description of all Siberia. Mr. Witsen's Map of Tartary praised. Beginning of the Journey Northward. Several sorts of Samojedes. Some of them very barbarous, and farther described. Their Governours. Hart-Sleads. Countenance and Stature. They are gross Heathens. Their Tents described. Their Marriages and Diversions. The Animals here. Discourse concerning the Weygats, described at large by the Burger-master Witsen. What the Russians declare concerning it on their experience by travelling. They are deprived of the liberty of passing it, and for what reason. How Boats are conveyed over the Pojas. Description of the Pojas, or Ridge of Hills; how divided Southwards, and where it terminates.

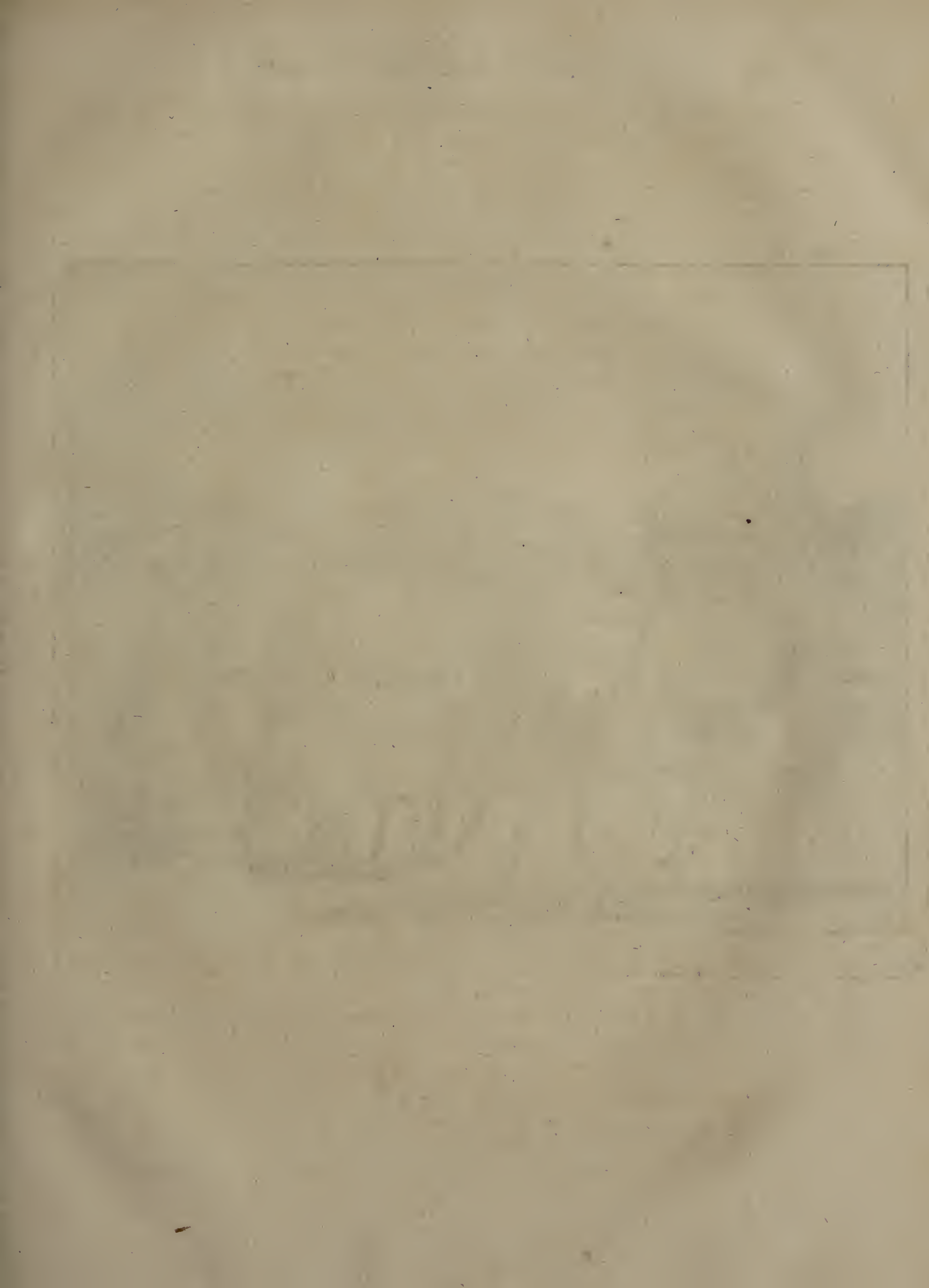
IN the past relation of our Travels, solely aiming at Truth, we have represented her naked, without any Hyperbolical or Ornamental Illustrations to render her the more agreeable and surprising, according to the common practice of Writers of Travels: who magnifie trifles and croud in various particulars on the uncertain reports of others,

others, in order to furbish up the Book. This is indeed what I have all along carefully avoided in the Description of my Journey: But finding I have not been so methodical as I could have wished; that I have omitted some particulars worth the Readers cognizance, or at least not related them as they ought; for the first I beg pardon, and shall endeavour to make some small amends for the latter by a short Review.

My Travels then were through the whole Provinces of *Siberia* and *Daur*; the Towns, Countries and Rivers of which that I have passed through or over, are already above described. The course of our Journey was from the North to the East, that is from *Weygats* to *Amur*; and from the West from *Uffa Baskiria*, to the *Mongolian Country*, and from thence from the West to the South.

As for what relates to the Frontiers of *Siberia* in general, they are every where garrisoned with well armed Forces, by his Czarish Majesty, who are not indeed very solicitous to subdue the Southern *Tartars* inhabiting the *Geliseeschian Fields* to his Majesties obedience, by reason it would not turn to any great advantage. The Circuit of this Kingdom of *Siberia* and the Circumjacent Country is very large, as appears by our annexed Map, with regard to which I must acquaint the curious Peruser, that he ought to guide himself only by the degrees; but as for the distances betwixt Countries, Cities and Rivers, they are not to be expected exactly placed to a Mile: For this Country having never been travelled by Geographers, much less measured by Miles, I have only as carefully as I possibly could taken the Altitudes with a *Mathematical Instrument*, and from thence marked the Places, leaving to my Successors in these attempts, the more thorough search and discovery of these untravelled Countries. I have indeed broke the Ice for them, being the first *German* that ever went through this vast Country to, and returned from *China*.

I must acknowledge that I am obliged for the first light of a good Sketch of a general Map of these Lands, to the highly Honourable and Worthy Nicholas Witsen, President Burger-master of the City of Amsterdam, whose Memory will be perpetually revered by all the Learned World; He having first discovered to the Europeans all *Siberia*, the *Calmuckan*, *Mugalian* and other Provinces to the Chinese Wall; and described them by a Map. This Map I made use of as a Guide throughout my Journey, and as a foundation, on which to build that annexed to this Book. A short Sketch of my Journey is as followeth.





Samojedian Hart sleds :

First we began our Travels in the North, in the *Samojedian* and *Wagulissian Countries*, which are also under the *Siberian Government*, being subject to the *Waiwodes* of *Pelun*, as far as the Sea. It is observable that there are various sorts of *Samojedes*, very different from each other in their Language or Expression, as are the *Berefskians* and *Pustoserfians*, which believe themselves also to be the same Nation: After these are those who live on the Sea-Coast beyond the East side of the *Oby* to *Truchamskoy*, or *Mangazeiskoy*; as also those which for the greatest part of the Year reside about *Archangel*, near the River *Dwina*, tho' indeed in Summer they set up *Hutts* by the Water side, and in the Winter far in the Woods: This last sort are the scum of those People who formerly lived together by the Sea side, which now are come to this Country.

Besides these are the *Samojedes* that inhabit all along the *Ice Coast* of the Province of *Siberia*, which are a People that have not much more to pretend to, than a humane Face and Figure; they have but a very small share of Understanding, and in all other particulars are very like *Wolves* and *Dogs*, for they eat all manner of dead Carcasses, whether of Horses, Asses, Dogs or Cats, which die a natural Death; as well as Whales, Sea-Cows, Sea-Calves or Horses, &c. which are thrown upon the Shoar by the Ice; nor do they take the trouble of dressing these Meats; but devour them raw; and if they had but Wings they would certainly take their flight to *Greenland*, and diet with the White Bears and Malmucks (a sort of Birds of Prey) which feed on the fleaed Whales Carcasses: And notwithstanding all this they inhabit a Country which richly abounds with Wild Game, Fish and Flesh; but most of them are too idle to provide themselves with it.

They have a sort of Governours amongst them, to whom they bring their Tribute, and these are obliged to carry the same to the Cities or Winter Places of his Czarish Majesty. A Gentleman who staid some time at *Postoi Ofer*, told me that their *Hart-Sleads* were very convenient, and that with them they went prodigiously swift over the Mountains covered with Snow. (The fashion of these Sleads, their manner of traveling, and their Buckskin-Habit with the hairy part outwards, together with their Bow and Arrows, are expressed in the annexed Print.) He added that he had seen the above-mentioned Governours in such Sleads as these, to which were sometimes harnessed six or eight Bucks; the Governours are commonly cloathed in Scarlet-Coats, but their Retinue in the Habit already described. Their Arrows instead of being pointed with Steel or Iron, are only armed with the Bone of a Sea-Calf, or some other Animal.

They make a very disagreeable Figure all over, insomuch that I may venture to affirm that such a shocking ill looked People are not to be found on the surface of the whole Earth. Their stature is short and flat, they have broad Shoulders and Faces, flat and broad Noses, great blubber hanging Lips, and frightful Eyes like those of the Linx. They are very brown all over, their Hair is dishevelled, some of it being red or pale, but most of it as black as Pitch: they have very little Beards; their Skin is brown and hard; and they are very swift runners. The Roebucks which they use to draw their Sleads in Winter, are horned and shaped like Harts, but have crooked hanging Necks like those of Dromedaries; besides which, what is observed of them is very particular, that they are as White as Snow in Winter and Greyish in Summer: They are fed with Moss which grows on the ground in the Woods.

These *Samojedes* are gross Idolaters, which have no notion of any Religion otherwise than that, like the *Persians*, they worship the Sun and Moon by bowing their Bodies, Night and Morning; besides which they keep near and in their Tents, Idols which hang on Trees; some of them are wooden Images representing humane Figures, others made of Iron, to which they shew some respect: Their Tents are cover'd with Birch-barks sewed together, and when they remove them, as they frequently do in Winter as well as Summer, they set up the Stakes round with the points together; and upon these they lay the covering of the fore-mentioned Bark over them, leaving a hole at the top for the passage of the Smoak. Their Fire is made in the middle of their Tents, around which they lie at Nights naked both Men and Women. They lay their Children in Boxes or Cradles, made of Birch-bark sewed together, filled with shavings of Trees which are as soft as Wool, and covered with Bucks-skin.

They Marry within the degrees of Consanguinity without the least scruple; and buy one anothers Daughters for Wives, giving for them Bucks and Hides, and according to the custom of several Eastern Nations, they take as many Wives as they can keep. When they design a Merry-making, they stand in couples opposite to each other, throw up one of their Legs, and mutually clap the Soles of their Feet so hard with their Hands that it may be heard at a distance. Instead of singing they make a howling noise like that of Bears, they neigh like Horses, or chirrup like young Birds. They have a sort of Conjurers, that shew all sorts of Diabolical Tricks, most of which are fraudulent delusions. But here taking our leave of these monstrous *Samojedes*, we shall turn our discourse to another subject.

Near

Near this Coast as far as *Weygats* and *Meseem*, are all sorts of *Quadrupeds*, particularly Wolves, Bears, Foxes and Harts, &c. The Fowls are Ducks, Partridges, &c. being Snow-white in Winter, which is so very severe, that about *Samojeda* I have my self seen Rooks and Magpies fall down dead in their flight, being killed by the piercing Frost.

A great deal hath been said concerning the *Weygats*, by *English*, *Danes*, and *Hollanders*, who with Ships have endeavoured to bore through this *Icy Channel*, which hath been done indeed once or twice, but then those who did it, were repulsed, and forced to return to their own Country, by the vehement Current of Ice in the South or *Icy-Sea*; of which Mr. *Nicholas Witsen*, *Burger-master* of *Amsterdam*, treats at large, that Gentleman having obtained an exact account of whatever is remarkable, from several Persons who have been there; all which Observations he hath incomparably well digested in his *Chart* of *Weygats* and the *Sea-Coasts*, to the River *Oby*, by which it plainly appears, that from *Weygats* to the *Icy* or *Holy Cape*, the Sea is utterly unnavigable with Ships, and should a second *Christopher Columbus* appear, and point out the course of the Heavens, he could not yet drive away these Mountains of Ice: For God and Nature have so invincibly fenced the Sea side of *Siberia* with Ice, that no Ship can come to the River *Jenisea*, much less can they come farther Northwards into the Sea. Not to mention the Voyage from the *Icy* or *Holy Cape*, round *Japan* and *Jedzo*, I shall only insert what I have collected from the informations of the *Russians*, who several times have sailed through the Streights of *Weygats* to the *Oby*.

We go, say they, with our *Kotski* (a sort of Barks fitted for the Sea) to the Streights of *Weygats* to fish for Sea-Calves, and not meeting with great quantities of Fish, we sail directly into the *Weygats*: But if the Wind blows from the Sea, the whole coast is covered with Ice, and we are obliged to put into some of the Creeks or little Rivulets which run inland, and withal not to venture too far, but stay there till the Wind turns about, and blows from the Shoar towards the Sea, upon which these Streights are so perfectly cleared of all their Ice, that it soon drives several Miles out of sight at Sea; and making use of that opportunity, we sail along the Coast, till the Wind turns contrary, when we are again forced in, in search of a Creek to shelter us; which if we fail of, the Bark is shattered to pieces by the Clots of Ice.

About 50 Years past the *Siberian Russians* had free liberty to fetch their Provision, as Corn, Meal, &c. from the Sea Ports, and to carry their *Siberian Commodities* thither through the *Weygats*, supposing that they paid the proper Toll to his Czarish Majesty : But these *Siberians* abused their Sovereigns favour to a very great degree, and made use of it to bring in great quantities of Goods by other ways and Rivers into *Russia* by stealth, whereby his Majesty suffered very much in his Revenue ; for which reason, ever since, the Importation of any Goods through the Streights of *Weygat* hath been absolutely prohibited ; but all are obliged to be brought over *Beresova*, the *Kamenskoy*, or the Rocky *Pojas* : Which passages are not attended with small difficulties ; for when they leave *Beresova*, the Carriers are obliged to cut their Boats (which are cut out of a Tree) across in two, and in those half Boats draw themselves and their Goods over the high Mountains, and having spent some Days in this irksome way of travelling, till they are come to the North side, they again fasten their Boats together, stopping the Joints close with Moss, and therewith pursue their Voyage to *Archangel*, or the other places in *Russia*, situate on the River *Oby*.

I shall now turn my Discourse to the *Pojas*, or *Ridge of the World* ; which is a vast quantity of Rocky Hills, which in their parting, according to the exactest observation make a sort of *Ridge* or *Pojas*. This *Ridge* begins from *Petzerkay Oser*, or *Pezerse Lanis*, and extends without any division, through the Province of *Wergaturia*, under which is comprised the *Wergatoerschian Wolok* ; and this Mass of Hills, is no otherwise to be travelled than by drawing over it. From thence it runs Southward by the Castle of *Utka*, to the *Ussinian Tartars* Country, out of which Mountains the River *Ussy*, and Eastwards the River *Nitra*, *Tuna*, &c. originally rise, and the last falls North-Westward into the *Kama*. From hence this Mountainous *Ridge* takes its course Southward, to the *Kalmockian Borders*, out of which *Pojas* the large River *Jaika*, so rich in Fish, rises Westwards, and dissem-bogues its self into the *Caspian Sea*, and the River *Tobol* rises out of the North side of it. Its Course Eastwards is along the *Kalmuckian* Country, and the borders of *Siberia*, passing by *Asero Saisan*, and *Oser Kalkulan*, two Lakes : From the first of which the vast River *Oby* springs, and from the second *Irtis*. From this great Lake *Oser Kalkulan*, this *Ridge of Mountains* turns off again Southward, where the River *Jenisea* rises, which discharges its self into the *Tartarian Icy-Sea*.

Farther Southwards this *Pojas* or *Ridge of Hills* inclines in the shape of an Elbow to the North-East and South. It runs along by the River *Jenizea* Northwards, and Southwards by the *Oser* or *Lake Kofogol*, out of which rises the River *Selenga*, which falls into the Lake *Baikal*. From hence the *Pojas* extends to the *Sandy Desert*, in the *Mongolian Country*, and being interrupted by some Days Journey through the mentioned Desert, proceeds onwards to the South, as far as the *Chinese great Wall*, and then turns off Eastwards to the *Careeschian Sea*, as is delineated in our Map.

C H A P. XX.

Of the River *Kugur*. The *Uffinschian* and *Baskinschian Tartars*. Other Clans or Hords described. Habit of Men and Women. They are a Warlike People. Their Language. The River *Oser* produces rich Stores of Salt: and how it is obtained. Description of the City of *Torre*, and the adjacent Country. Governours of the same. Manner of living and Trades. Their Bread, Drink, Arms, and hunting of furred Beasts. Here are very fine Pasture Grounds. Their Idolatrous Superstition when they go a Hunting. Presents to their *Saitans*. Description of the City of *Tomskoy*. Their trading to China. An uninhabited Country. Country of the *Kirgizens*. Nature of those People. How far they extend themselves; their Arms and Language. Of the *Tunguzians* and *Burattians*: They are under the protection of his *Czarish Majesty*. Some great Mountains described. The Regents of the *Mongolians*. The Castle of *Argum*. Of the *Tungezers* and their Force. Their Habits. Publick Buck-hunting in whole Clans. Their Religion and Bestial mirth. Of their Wives, Daughters and Bread. The Beautiful Country of *Daour* described. Of the *Siberian Frontiers* adjoining to the *Chinese Territories*. Description of the *Koreizians*. Their Employments. Of the Inhabitants of some Islands hereabouts. Their Original. Other Nations called *Xuxi*, and *Koeliki*. Description of the *Icy Cape*. Great Cold there. *Icy Mountains*. Of the *Lina* or *River Airlake*, and the City of *Jakutskoy*. Leathern Boats. Habits of the *Jakutsers*. Their Religion, Offerings and Burials. Their Language, Women, Beasts for the Saddle and Burthen. Their Nature. The *Jukogaiers* Custom concerning the Dead. Of the River *Lima*, and other fine Rivers. The great plenty of Corn and Cattle. Of the Inhabitants of these Countries. Of the River *Jenizea*,

nizea, and three other Rivers. Of the Tartarian Elk-hunting. Of the Cities of Taugviskoy and Mungaseja. Last account of the Author's relation of his Travels, and the following Description of China. Peking the Metropolis of China. Description of the Nature and Manner of the Antient Chinese. The present Emperor a favourer of Christianity. His Sovereign Authority. The Opinions of the Chinese concerning their own Country. Their Religion and Religious Worship. They have no notion of Sin. Their administration of Justice, &c. Of their conduct in War. Their Arms, and manner of Fighting. The Authors Application. The Emperor of China a Tartar. Of the Jesuits and other Ecclesiasticks. Who hath published the Chinese Chronology. Of the great Chinese Wall, in which there are four Gates.

BUT to come to the Description of the People of these Provinces, and to inform the Reader to whom they are Tributaries. The Country from *Pelim* to *Wergaturia*, all along by the River *Zusawaja*, to the Province of *Uffinia*, is mostly inhabited by the *Wogulischian* Heathens, whose Tenents and manner of living are already above described. The River *Kugur* where the *Uffinian* Habitations begin, rises out of the *Uffinschian* Jurisdiction, betwixt the Rivers *Zusawaja* and *Uffa*, and falls into the *Kama*. On this last River is situate the City called *Kungun*, in which his Czarish Majesty hath a Garrison. These *Uffinschian* Tartars, as also another sort called *Baskinzians*, inhabit near the City of *Oeffa*, and live dispersed in Villages and Towns, all which are well built after the *Russian* fashion, along the Western Shoar of the River *Kama*, and by the *Wolga* side; almost as far as the Cities *Sarat* and *Sarapul*, both which are situate on the River *Wolga*, and Garrisoned by his Czarish Majesty, in order to the collecting of his Tribute, and to keep the *Tartars* in awe. This Tribute they pay in Furrs and Honey; and are a sort of People that will not bear being too roughly handled by their Governours, but if so treated by them are sure to Rebel, of which there have been several instances formerly; but for a long time they have not been guilty of any disloyalty.

South-Westwards, in the District of *Astracan*, there are also other small Clans or Hords of that Nation, who being independant People, in conjunction with the *Kalmockians* bordering on *Astracan*, Rob and Pillage in the Province of *Siberia*. Besides which, by way of supplimental maintainance, they apply themselves to the Tillage of the Ground, chiefly for the production of Barley, Oats, and Buckwheat: And as soon as the Corn is reaped, they prepare a Threshing-

ing Floor in the Field, thresh it out, and stow it in the Barn. This Country as plentifully flows with Honey as any part of the World. Most of the Men's wearing Cloaths are made of *Russian* white Cloths, the Coat being about the same Fashion with those of the *Muscovite Peasants*, with long Flaps hanging down on their Backs. The Women, when the Season is not too cold, cover the upper part of their Body with a Shift only, which is curiously stitched with Silk of all colours by way of stripe, from the top to the bottom; and about the lower part of their Body they wear Petticoats, and a sort of Shoes which perfectly cover their Feet, and reach above their Anckles. Their Head-dress consists in a sort of Fillet about a Hand-breadth, which they wear on their Foreheads, and fasten it behind. This Fillet is stitched with Silk of several colours, and adorned with a sort of variegated Glass, in imitation of Coral, which is strung, and hangs dangling near the Eyes. Some have these broader than others, as being full two Spans long, and of one Hand breadth, and stitched through with Silk; these look like a thin Plank, and are adorned with Corals of all sorts of colours, which cover their Forehead. When they go abroad, they cover their Head dress with a square Linnen Handkerchief, stitched with Silk, and edged with Silk-Fringe.

These *Uffinschian*, as well as the *Kaskierschian Tartars*, are a valiant, warlike People; they sit their Horses well, and carry no other Arms than Bow and Arrows, in the use of which they are extraordinary dexterous. They are vigorous and large Men, their Shoulders are broad, and they suffer their Beards to grow to a good length. The Hair of their Eye-brows is so very thick and long, that it hangs over their Eye-lids, and generally runs so far cross the Forehead as to unite the two Eye-brows. They have a Language peculiar to themselves, and can partly understand the *Astracan Tartars*. Their Religion is Pagan, tho' indeed they partly encline to the *Mahometan*, which they have borrowed from the *Crim Tartars*, with whom they formerly conversed very much.

The Country betwixt the Rivers *Tobol* and *Oby*, to the *Jamuschowa Oser*, is inhabited by *Kalmockians*. This *Oser* or Lake plentifully abounds with *hard Salt*, and lies under the *Kalmockian Jurisdiction*; notwithstanding which about 20 or 25 *Dochenicks*, or *Russian Vessels*, guarded by a Convoy of 2500 well armed Men, come annually from *Tobolesk*, up the River *Irtis*, from whence they travel by Land to this *Oser* or *Lake*, where they dig up the Salt like Ice from the Shoar, and load their Ships with it. Indeed they generally have some skirmishes with the *Kalmockians*, who will not allow of this practice:

etice : But yet whether they will or not, they are forced to suffer it.

Inclining lower down from this *Jamusawaian Lake*, near the River *Irtis*, lies the City of *Torre*, adjoining to the River *Tara* : This is the last Frontier Place which belongs to his Czarish Majesty, bordering on the Territories of the *Kalmockian Prince Bustuchan*. The Inhabitants of which are called *Barabinsy*, and stretch themselves Eastwards from the City of *Torre*, to the River *Oby*, opposite to the River *Ton*, and the City of *Tomskoy*. This Country of *Barnabu* is travelled in Summer as well as Winter ; but chiefly in the latter : For the *Oby* at *Surgut* and *Narin* being unpassable in the Winter, Travellers generally go this way to *Siberia*, by *Tomskoy* and *Jenuseeschs*. This Nation, which is called *Barabinsy*, consists of a sort of *Kalmocks* which equally pay Tribute to the Czar, and the *Bustuchan*. They have amongst them three Governours or *Taischi* ; the first of which is called *Karsagaz*, the second, *Baikisch* ; and the third, *Baiduck* : These three Lords receive the Tribute of the *Barabinzes*, and bring the Czar his Portion. The *Karsagaz*, the first of them, brings his part to the City of *Tera* ; *Baikisch*, his Portion, to the Russian Castle of *Teluwa* ; and *Baiduk*, the remainder, to the Castle of *Kulenba* : All of these Tributes being paid in Furs. These are an insolent villanous sort of People ; they live in low built wooden Houses, like those of the *Siberian Tartars* ; they are not at all acquainted with the use of Stoves or Ovens, but make use of a sort of *Chimnies* or rather *Smoak-holes*. When their Wood is burnt, they stop the *Smoak-hole*, and warm themselves by the Coals as long as any heat remains in them.

Their Houses are ranged into Villages ; they set up high Hutts in the Summer, but in Winter retire into their warm wooden dwellings. They are very much addicted to Agriculture, and sow Oats, Barley, Millet, and Buck-wheat. But are not fond of either Rye or Rye-bread : And tho' they like the taste of it well enough, yet they chew it so awkwardly, and roll it upon their Tongues as if they had dirt in their Mouths, and spitting it out, scrape the remainder off their Tongue as after a thing which they cannot swallow. They steep their Barley in Water, dry it a little, and then thresh off the husk ; after which they dry, or rather fry it in a very hot Iron Pan or Kettle ; by which management it becomes as hard as Bone ; and this is their Bread which they daily eat, and is so hard and dry, that it crashes betwixt their Teeth. They also eat the *Saranna* or *Bulb* of *Yellow Lillies*, dried, stamped, and boiled with Milk, as a sort of Milk-pap. They drink *Kumis*, a sort of Brandy drawn off from Mares-Milk ;

Milk; and *Karaza* or *black Tea*, which is brought thither by the *Bulgarians*.

Their Arms are those common to the greatest part of the *Tartars*, viz. Bow and Arrows. They keep great numbers of Cattle, particularly Horses, Camels, Cows, and Sheep: But neither keep nor will eat Hogs. Their Country abounds with fine Sables, Martens, Squirrels, Ermins, Foxes, Hyena's, Beavers, Minks, Otters, &c. in which they pay their Tribute. This Country extends from *Tora* to the Rivers *Oby* and *Tom*; is not Mountainous but plain even Land, abounding with Woods of beautiful Cedars, Larch-Trees, Birch and Pitch-Trees, which are intersected by several Chrystaline running Streams. In the Habits of both Men and Women, they follow the *Numgolschian* and *Kalmockian* Fashion; and Marry as many Wives as they can maintain. When they go into the Woods in order to hunt furred Animals, they carry their *Saitans* along with them; which is a rough Image, as well carved in Wood as they can do it with a Knife: This they cloath in a Stuff dress of all sorts of colours, in imitation of the Habit of the *Russian* Women, and place him upright in a small Case, and carry him upon a particular Slead, both made for that purpose; and to him they offer up their first Capture of what sort of Beast soever it prove.

When they have killed great numbers of their Game, they return home very merrily, mount their Idol in his Case, to the highest place in the House, and hang him behind and before, above and below, with Sables, Mertins and all sorts of Furrs, in order to express their acknowledgments to him for rendring their hunting so successful; and all these rich Furrs must hang there to be spoiled and putrified, they believing it a most unpardonable Crime to take off or sell any of these dedicated Hides; whence it is that we daily see so many fine Skins placed by these Images, that are eaten up by the Worms, which it is indeed a great pity are not better employed.

Crossing the River *Oby* from hence, we come to *Tomskoy*, which is also a Frontier Place belonging to the Czar, situate on the *Buzuk*, and is a very fine and vast large City, strongly garrisoned by *Russian* and *Cozackian* Soldiers, to prevent the Incursions of the *Tartars* into *Siberia*; and in the Suburbs over the River live great numbers of *Bucharfian Tartars*, who pay Tribute to his Czarish Majesty. This City lies on the River *Tom*, which rises in the *Kalmockian* Territories, and from hence the Subjects of the *Busuchtü Chan*, and the *Bucharfians* drive a very considerable Trade to *China*, several *Russian* Merchants being concerned and sharing with them. This way to *China* is very expeditious,

expeditious, it being practicable to go thither in 12 Weeks and return back in as short a time, but it is withal accompanied with the greatest inconveniencies and difficulties in the World; for the Travellers are obliged to carry all necessaries along with them upon Camels, nay even Water and Wood to dress their Victuals. They go directly through *Kalmockia*, and through *Cokoton*, a Chinese City without the Wall. But it is utterly impossible for *Russians* or other Nations to travel this Road, by reason that it is infested with several Robbers, which set on the Passengers, and very often deprive them of all that they have gained by so tedious and fatiguing a Journey.

From *Tomskoy* down to the City of *Jeniseesch* is utterly desolate and uninhabited Land; the Country is an even Plain, on which appear some scattered Thickets: Also all about the two Rivers *Kia* and *Zuwin*, to as far as the Cities *Kusnezkoj* and *Krasnajar* is very little or not at all inhabited, any where besides the Frontiers. The first peopled Country we find here is that of the *Kirgizens*, which are the Subjects of the *Busuchtu Chan*. The City of *Krasnajar* is very large, and defended by a strong Garrison of *Cozacks* placed in it by his Czarish Majesty, and they are always obliged to keep a very strict Guard to prevent the Incursions of the *Kirgizens*, for which reason 20 Horses both Day and Night stand perpetually Saddled and Bridled, in the Market-place, before the Governor's House: For the *Kirgizens*, tho' at Peace with the *Siberians*, are a People who are never to be trusted. For frequently when they are not expected, they come in Parties, and steal both Men and Horses under the very Walls of the City, and out of the circumjacent *Siberian* Villages: But the *Cozacks* generally make severe reprisals on them, by often killing and carrying off several hundreds of Men and Horses from their *Hords* or *Clans*.

These *Kirgizens* extend their Habitations South-Eastwards, as far as the *Mongolian* Districts. They are a Warlike Nation, being generally vigorous, tall and broad faced Men, somewhat like the *Kalmuckians*. Their Arms are Bow and Arrows, but they never go out in quest of booty without very good Coats of Mail and Lances, which they draw along by the Horse side, with their points on the Ground. They generally live in the Mountains, which advantageously secures them from a surprize. The greatest part of their Language is *Kalmuckian*, but they also speak a great deal of the *Crim Tartarian* Idiom, which the *Turks* partly understand.

From *Krasnoy* along the River *Jenisea*, as far down as *Jeniseesch*, is inhabited by some *Tungezians*; but chiefly by *Burattians*. This last mentioned Castle just touches on *Mongalia*, and borders on the Ridge
of

of *Rocks*, betwixt *Tunkinskoy* and the City of *Selinga*. The Frontier Fort butting on *Mongalia* is not large, but provided with a very strong Garrison, chiefly of Horse, in order to defend the Western side against the *Mongalians*, and their subordinate *Tartars*, the *Mirottians*, *Milyans*, and the *Burattians*. Near this City grows a sort of *Santalum* or *Sanders*, which is prodigious hard. The *Burattians* which are under the protection of his Czarish Majesty formerly inhabited the Country all about *Selinga*; but by reason some of them at the Instigation of the *Chinese*, began to fly over to the *Mongalians*, the remainder were for greater security transplanted to the *Baikassian Lake*, around which they live in the Mountains, and pay their Tribute to his Czarish Majesty in Sables and other rich Furs.

From this City to the Lake *Baikal* runs a continued series of Hills, where are found very fine Sables and Cabardins. From the Lake *Kofogel* Eastward to the Sandy Desert, and from thence to *Dway*, or the *Mongolian Lake*, and so on to the Province of *Argun*, and thence again North-West as far as the Rivers *Onon* and *Sikoy*, is the circumference and boundary of the whole *Mongolian Territories*, or as hath been formerly said of the Jurisdiction of the Race of Gog and Magog, which is governed by three Regents, the chief of which is the *Kuttugt*, who is also the *High Priest* of the Nation. The second Brother is the *Aziroi Sain Chan*; and the third is *Elict*, whose boundaries border on the West *Tartars*. The first two Brothers inseparably hold together, but the third robs and plunders wherever any booty is to be come at; and is so bold as to venture sometimes even to the *Chinese Wall* with his Troops, carrying off all that comes in his way, not sparing even the Emperor of China's Money, which he sends as a Charitable Present to the Neighbouring *Tartars*, to engage them to a firm continuance in their Allegiance. *Kuttugt*, otherwise called *Koe-toegt*, and *Aziroy Sain Chan* his Brother, tho' their Country is of a vast extent, have yet put both themselves and that under the protection of the Emperour of China, out of their great fear of the *Busughtu Chan*, Prince of the *Kalmuckians*, from whom they suffered very much in the Years 1688, and 1689.

But to stay on the Frontiers of his Czarish Majesties Territories, and take a turn Eastwards of *Argum* Castle, which Fortrefs is built on the West side of the River *Argum*, and garrisoned with *Russian Forces*; the People inhabiting all round are *Tungasi Konni*, who pay their Tribute to his Czarish Majesty in Sables, Linx, and grey Ferrets Skins, which there prove very fine. The *Tunguzians* are a fierce warlike People, and can on occasion, from these borders only, bring into the
Field.

Field 4000 Horsemen, armed with Bow and Arrows; insomuch that no roving *Mongolians* dare rise or appear hereabouts, otherwise than by Night, when they sometimes drive away a few Horses and Cattle out of the Fields. Their Winter Cloaths are Sheeps-Skins, and their Boots made like those of the *Chinese*. Their Caps are turned up with broad Borders of Furr, which they can turn up or pull down, as rainy or fair Weather gives occasion. They wear about their Waists a Girdle of about a hand's breadth, fastened with thin Iron Plates, and an Arrow, upon which they make a sort of Piping-Musick. In Summer time they generally ride with bare Heads, shaven all round, leaving only one Lock hanging behind like the *Chinese*. Their Summer dress is made of blue *Chinese* Callicoe, quilted with Cotton, but as for Shirts they wear none. They naturally have very small or indeed scarce any Beards, are broad faced like the *Kalmuckians*, and very strong Men.

When they labour under the want of Provisions, they go in whole Herds or Clans out a Buck-hunting, where they encompass and shoot vast quantities of them, and whatever they take, they mutually divide; and rarely shoot but they hit their Game. The Wives are cloathed much in the same manner as the Husbands, being chiefly distinguished by two pleated Locks which they wear on each side of the Head, which hang down on their Breasts, and are tied with Silver or Tin Rings. They Marry as many Wives as they can keep, and buy them of one another, not being very nicely concerned at their having lived with another Man. They believe and acknowledge a God in Heaven, but they neither pay any Worship, nor address any Prayers to him. In the Night they apply themselves to the *Sutkur* or *Saitan*, by beating of Drums and performing of Exorcisms, especially when they are going a Hunting or upon any Robbing Design, to enquire whither they are to expect good or ill success. Their Liquor with which they make merry is *Arak*, a sort of Brandy Distilled from Mares Milk, which they suffer to turn acid. Instead of a Cauldron they draw off this Liquor in two Pots, one set upon the other, and well luted together, there being a Wooden Pipe in one of them. This they draw off twice or thrice, and this operation produces good Brandy. Which even Girls as well as Men and Women sip to that excess, that they become insensible and motionless for a long space of time. Their Wives and Daughters ride on Horseback, arm'd with Bow and Arrows as well as the Men. Their Bread is a refined and dried sort of Flour of yellow Lilly-Bulbs, of which they make a sort of Pap; besides which, they have no other Bread: But they also eat

eat the mentioned Bulbs dry out of hand, and are utterly unpractised and ignorant of Agriculture. The Trade or Barter which some of this Nation drive with the *Targasinians* and *Xixigarfians*, which live under the *Chinese* Jurisdiction, is chiefly trucking Furrs against blue Callicoes, Linnens and Tobacco, and proves very advantageous to them, as it generally doth to all who follow it. They believe themselves to be the Descendants of the *Targasinians* of *Daorzi*, with several of whom they keep up an amicable Correspondence.

Near the before-mentioned Castle of *Argum*, about half a Days Journey from it, amongst the Hills, is a *Silver-Mine*, and it plainly appears that formerly the People of *Nieuchieu*, or *Daourzen*, had several Foundaries and Works there, which are at present run to ruine. From hence to *Nerzinskoy*, the chief City of *Daour*, it is 10 Days Journey by Land with Camels, and is also a fine Country very conveniently watered, with several running Brooks. Upon and betwixt the Hills grow the most charming Herbs and Flowers, which Imagination can suggest: And the Vallies are covered with long Grass, about half a Man's height. Tillage is not very much practised here, by reason the Inhabitants are chiefly his Czarish Majesties *Tartars*.

But to cross the River *Argun* again, and take a view of the vast River *Amur*, to the River *Gorbiza*, which separates the Dominions of his Czarish Majesty from those of the Emperour of *China*; from the Haven of the *Gorbiza* Eastwards to the Sea, being subject to the *Chinese*; and the Western as well as Northern side of the said River belonging to his Czarish Majesty. If we steer Eastwards from the *Gorbiza* to the Rivers *Tugur* and *Uda*, which rise Northwards of the *Amur*, and fall Eastwards into the *Chinese Ocean* or *Amoerschian Sea*, we find the Country betwixt these Rivers yields great quantities of black Sables, and the Shoars of these mentioned Streams are inhabited by *Tunguzians*, *Alemurians* and *Koreizians*. Which last Nation seems originally to come from *Coela*, that Country lying not far distant from thence, it being easie to reach it in a short Day, with a favourable Wind. They are reported to have settled along by the River *Amur*, and afterwards spread themselves farther. Those who live on the Sea-coast depend chiefly on Fishing; but there are many of the In-land People very Rich, great numbers of the best Sables and richest Furrs being found here. This Country is subject to the Governour of *Jakutskoy*, and the Woods all hereabouts are strongly guarded in order to prevent the *Chinese Tartars* from Hunting any Sables here.

To the Shoars of these two Rivers, there come annually a sort of People out of the Islands which lie in the Sea, but so near the Shore that

that from thence they may be easily seen. These People appear very well dressed in very fine Furr-Surtouts, under which they wear filken Coats almost as rich as those of the *Persians*. They are tall, have great Beards, and make a good Manly Figure. They come in small Barks to the *Siberian Tartars*, and buy Girls and Women of them, of which they are very fond, giving for them rich Sables and black Fox-Skins; which they report they have in great quantities on their Islands, and earnestly solicit the *Siberian Tunguzians*, to come and trade with them. They pretend that the Province of *Jakutskoy* was formerly subject to them; and their Language bears a little similitude to the *Jakutschian*.

Northwards of these two Rivers arises the River *Ogota*, betwixt which and the *Uda*, near the Shoar, and all along in the Sea, as far as the *Icy-Cape*, abounds with Whales, Sea-Horses and Sea-Dogs. *Kamsatka* and the Country farther along by the Sea-side is inhabited by a People called *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*, each of which have a Language peculiar to themselves. Those who live near the Sea, are cloathed in Seal-skins, and dwell in subteraneous Caverns; but those who inhabit the In-land Country, are generally rich, and very much accustomed to Hart-hunting, they eat all their Flesh and Fish raw, and wash themselves with nothing besides their own Urine; and they are a fly treacherous People, that never keep their Words. Their chief Arms are Slings, in the use of which they are very dexterous, and can throw a great way. All hereabouts, near the *Icy-Cape*, the Winter Snow lies on the Ground, tho' it is not very deep, and chiefly falls in the beginning of the Winter, all the remaining part of that Season being free from Snow. There is a Gulf which comes up to *Kamsatka*, that affords prodigious quantities of Sea-Horses and other Sea Fish, which are also caught in great numbers.

If we put to Sea at the *Icy-Cape* we find that the farther out we sail, the course of the Sea is still the more interrupted by the multiplicity of Islands: And not far above *Kamsatka* is a passage which the Seal-Fishers and others make very good use of. All *Anadieskoy* and *Sabaliska* are inhabited by the already described Nations called *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*. The River *Salazia* abounds with fine Herrings, Sturgeon, Sterbeth and Nebna. And in the In-land Country somewhat distant from hence, all along by the *Simaniko*, are several Winter-Houses, which are inhabited by his Czarish Majesties *Cozacks*, who collect his Taxes and Tolls: But notwithstanding that several Sables and Linxes are caught in this Province along by the several Rivers, yet the *Simonikoe* of *Muskoy* yields the most considerable Revenue,

Revenue, the greatest quantity of Sables being caught there. The Climate of this *Icy Cape*, called in *Muscovite* Dialect, *Swetoinos*, otherwise the *Holy Cape*, is extraordinary cold, it freezing so hard that the Sea is covered with thick Ice in several places, which driven into Mountainous heaps by the Wind, from Year to Year encreases, and sticks so fast together that it seems but one Clot: From which according as the Wind sits, are sometimes broke off great pieces, which disperse themselves, and in process of time in a boistrous Sea, become new Mountains of Ice: It sometimes happens that this Sea is frozen up for two or three Years successively, as was observed that it continued so from 1694 to 1697.

From hence let us proceed farther on to the great River *Lina d' Air-lake*, which arises out of the South-west near the Lake *Bakail*, where the Provinces of *Siberia* and *Daour* are divided from each other. Upon this River lies *Jakutskoy*, the Capital City of this Northern Province: From which Town, in Summer-time, it is customary for small Barks to coast it along by the Shoar-side, and go thro' the Cape to *Sabazia*, *Onodieskoy*, and *Kamsatka*, in search of Sea-Calves Teeth and Train-oyl, &c. The Neighbouring Heathens, or *Tartars*, make use of little Leathern-Boats on this River, which are very swift. The Country about the City of *Jakutskoy*, and the River *Amga*, is inhabited by a sort of People called *Jakutisians*, whose Habit is very particular. Their upper Coats being made of various colour'd Furrs sewed together, and the Edges border'd all round, with a Border about a Hand's breadth of Buck's-Hair, but in every thing else made somewhat like the *German* Fashion, and open at the sides and behind. They have long Hair, wear no Shirts, and believe that there is a great Being above in Heaven, who gave them Life, and lends them Food, Wives, and Children. And they celebrate a great Festival in the Spring, in which they make Offerings of *Kunis*, or *Arak*, distill'd from Milk, to this Being: And during the continuance of this Feast, they do not drink themselves, but make great Fires, and continually sprinkle this *Kunis*, or *Arak*, towards the East; which is their manner of Offering. When any one of them dies, his nearest Relation is bury'd alive with him; from the same Principles that, in several Places in *India*, the Women accompany the dead Bodies of their Husband on the flaming Funeral-Pile, in order to enjoy their Company in the other World.

About one half of their Language agrees very well with that of the *Mahometan Tartars* near *Tobolskoy*, which is derived from the *Bulgarian*. They take as many Wives as they can maintain. Their chief Beasts of Burden are their Stags, upon which they also ride, and there-

by in a little time go a vast way : They are a valiant and a quick-witted People, which seem to be great Lovers of Truth. When the Governour of *Jakutskoy* proves to be a Person which governs remissly, they do one another all possible Mischiefs, by robbing, pillaging, and all other Exorbitancies : But when they have one that holds the Reins very tite, they are quiet and obedient, and no Outrages are heard of amongst them ; but they praise his great Wisdom, and wish he may continue long in that Post. They venture to tell us, That their Ancestors originally came from *Kalmuckia*, from whence they were driven by the *Russians*, and forc'd to take up their Quarters in the cold Parts of this District. They are very much afflicted with the Scurvy, which they soon drive away, by eating raw Fish, and taking of *Deugti*, which is a sort of *Tar*.

The *Jugogayers*, a sort of Heathens also which inhabit Part of this Country, usually, when any of their Relations dies, cut off all the Flesh of his Corps to the Bones, dry the Skeleton, and hang it with Glafs-Corals of all Colours, carry it round their Huts, or Dwellings, and thus pay Idolatrous Worship to the deceased. Along by this River *Lima*, are annually found several *Mammuts* Teeth and Skeletons, which fall off from the Mountains, and out of the frozen Earth near this River ; these Hills, by the Current of Ice from the high-swoln Waters in the Spring, loosing great Pieces, which are tumbled down into the River. The several fine Rivers which descend from the South and fall into the *Lima*, are the *Witim*, *Olekina*, and *Maja*, along which are great Multitudes of fine black Sables, and other Furrs : In Winter 1000 Ermins being to be bought of the *Tartars* for Three or Four Rubels. All about the River *Maja*, as also at the source of the *Lima*, at *Wergolenkolso* and *Kirenga*, grows all sorts of Corn, the Land being very fertile, and serving to supply the Province of *Jakutskoy*, and that at so cheap a rate, that 100 Weight of Rye-Meal is commonly sold for 10 or 12 Pence, and all sorts of Cattle are proportionably cheap ; so that living here doth not cost much, but Money is very scarce.

To take our Progress further along this Sea-Coast, from the *Lima* to the River *Jenisea*, which Extent hath not yet been travelled further by any, either by Water or by Land, than to the River *Tarsida*, by reason the Sea is too full of Ice, and is utterly unnavigable : Most of the Inhabitants between *Tarsida* and *Jenisea* are found to be *Samojedes*, and a Party of *Tungoeschian Tartars* and Heathens : What their Opinion is, is hinted above. But the River *Jenisea* is, all along its Shoars, mostly inhabited by *Russians*, and rises in the South-part of *Tartary*, in the *Kalmackian* and *Kirgizenian* Territories, and very plentifully

tifully abounds with Fish: Three very fine Rivers fall into it, which are the *Wergnaja Tunguska*, *Podkamenna Tunguska*, and the *Nisnaja Tunguska*; on the Sides of all which dwell great numbers of a barbarous wild sort of *Tunguzians*, which may very well be ranked with the *Samojedes*, the latter being only larger and stronger than the former. The *Tartars*, whenever they have wounded an Elk with their Bow and Arrows, (all their Arms) follow him by the Tract of his Feet, accompany'd with their Wives and Children, sometimes for 8 or 10 Days, in the Woods, and taking no Provisions with them, but relying solely upon their Capture, they have a sort of Stomacher, or Breast-Cap, which, by reason of Hunger, they lace One or Two Fingers breadth closer; and having at last caught their Game, they kill it, pitch a slight Tent, and stay upon the Spot till no Part of the Beast but the Skeleton is left: But if they in the Interim get any Furrs, they immediately repair to the *Russian* Villages and Towns, in order to sell them. Here are great numbers of white and brown Foxes, multitudes of Squirrels, but very few or no Sables. On this River are situate the two Cities of *Taugviskoy* and *Mungaseia*, both which drive a very great In-land Trade in Furrs, Sea-Horse and *Mammuts* Teeth; and in Summer-time several Boats go from these Places to the Sea-side at the Mouth of the River, in order to catch Sea-Horses or Calves and Seals.

Believing we have in some measure attained our End, and performed what we propos'd, in the Description of our Travels; we shall now subjoin a short, but very accurate, Description of the mighty Empire of *China*, written by a Native of that Country, whom I brought hither with me: This Description, which was never before printed, I have caus'd to be illustrated with several pertinent Annotations, extracted out of the Writings of the best Descriptions of that Empire, in order to clear up some Difficulties, and satisfy the Reader; and this was not done by an illiterate Pen.

Notwithstanding which, before I take leave, I am, in some sort, oblig'd to say something in general, which is the result of my own Observation, concerning that vast Empire, and was omitted in the Relation of my Travels.

The Empire of *China*, as far as I saw of it, to, and in *Peking*, its Metropolis, I must indeed acknowledge, seems to be a Land peculiarly blessed by Heaven; and I believe, that as this City is the Capital, so it lies under the best and most healthful Climate of all *China*. The Men there are vigorous, healthy, and tall: Corn, all sorts of Fruits, Herbs, Roots, and indeed whatever is either necessary or convenient to humane Life, very plentifully abounds there, except only that no Tea grows in

that Province, nor are any Silken-Stuffs or Porcellain made there. In Winter it freezes so hard here, that the Ice will bear the Peoples going over it; and the Summer Weather is moderately hot; whereas on the contrary, in the other Provinces, whole Summer-Days are useless, by reason of the intolerable Heat. The present Descendants of the ancient *Chinese* are naturally more sincere than the *Mansures* or *Tartars*. They live temperately and frugally; are very neat and clean in their Cloaths; are very greedy of Presents, and shameless in their Trade, and have Address enough to suit themselves to all Humours. They religiously observe their ancient Laws, in which appear some Traces of Barbarity. They never alter the Fashion of their Dress, nor suffer the Introduction of any new Laws; and some of their principal Lords told me, That no *Chan*, or *King*, for the space of 12000 Years, hath been empower'd to make even the least Alteration in their Religion, Laws, or Habits.

So that it seems that the present Emperor, *Ammologgan Kamhi*, is the first who hath discovered a slight Opinion of the old barbarous Customs, and accordingly began a good Reformation of their Religion and Law; when in the Year 1692, he caused publick Proclamation to be made in all his Empire, That whoever was desirous to become a Christian, had thereby free liberty to apply himself to the *Romish* Clergy, and be baptiz'd. This was a grievous Thorn in the Eyes of the *Bonzies*, or Idolatrous Priests, but they were yet forced to bear it patiently, and be Eye-witnesses to the Conversion of Thousands yearly to Christianity; and which is more, the Emperor himself is, in his Heart, a good Christian, but cannot possibly quit any of his 1236 Wives. He is a more absolute Legislator than we hear any of his Predecessors were, for, by virtue of his despotick Authority, he is so formidable to his Subjects, that he governs them, without the least Restriction, according to his Arbitrary Will and Pleasure.

The *Chinese* obstinately persist in denying, in their Map of the World, That there is any larger Country on the Surface of the Terrestrial Globe, than their own; to confirm which preposterous Assertion, their Maps never mention any more than one great Sea, in the middle of which they assign a small Point of Land, which faintly appears to the Eye, like one of the smallest Stars.

They honour their Prince like a Deity, calling him a *Son of Heaven*, and a *Terrestrial God*. Their Religion is perfect Pagan Idolatry, as plainly appears by their hideous Diabolical Images, exposed to View in their *Pagods*, or Temples. They have frequently replied to Questions which I put to them concerning the Immortality of the Soul
and

and Eternal Life, That they were utterly ignorant of any such thing; and that since their Forefathers did not believe it, so they could not. Their chiefest Pleasure consists in keeping several Wives, to which they are extreamly addicted. They have no Notion of Sin, but whenever they have been guilty of any villanous Crime, for which they happen to be seiz'd and brought to Justice, they take the Punishment inflicted by the Judge, for only a very small Scandal, without shewing any remorse for the Wickedness and Dishonesty of the Fact.

Their Administration of Justice, and Judiciary Decisions, and whatever of that Nature which they take to be civiliz'd and reasonable, are indeed but rude and barbarous. Their Manufactures are principally those of Silk-Stuffs, Porcelain, and Varnished painted Works, which considering their great distance from *Europe*, are somewhat surprizing. Their Warrs are carried on by the sole dint of numbers, they seldom ever taking the Field before they are two or three hundred thousand strong, as they did when they were engaged against *Busuckturhan* the West *Tartar*, from the Years 1686 to 1693. In which Wars, when their General *Alliganibo* happened to be killed in a Battle, they all fled, and each Man endeavour'd to secure his Life by making all possible hast to his own home. They carry with them good Field Pieces, and are indifferent expert in the use of them, but their hand Arms are very wretched, the best of them being their Bows and Arrows. Their Horses are provided with very good Saddles, but when they ride they cover them with Pillows and Matrasses above them, so that they sit very high and loose from the Horse's back. In a Word, as their Military Affairs are managed in a confus'd and disorderly manner, so their Battles being utterly devoid of all conduct, they act like Wild Men; for they run head long together with their whole Force upon the Enemy, by which means they frequently are entirely routed.

In short, from my own observation I conclude that the great share of Wisdom, Arts and Sciences, for which they are so highly extolled by many Writers, comes far short of the *Europeans*; tho' indeed some few *Chinese* by the assiduous diligence of the Jesuits, are instructed in the Mathematicks, Astronomy and other Sciences; and therefore publish their Masters fame to the World. The present *Ammolog Chan*, *Kamsti* or King of *China* and *Tartary*, is an East *Tartar*, or *Mongolian*, born in *Nieucheu*, near the River *Sagalien Oula*, or *Amoer*; He governs his Subjects very well, tho' he doth not heartily love the *Chinese*, but on all occasions prefers his own Nation before them: And whenever a *Chinese* solicits to obtain any important Post from the

Chan,

Chan, he is obliged to Naturalize himself a *Mansur* or *Tartar*. Most of the Inhabitants within the Walls of *Peking* are *Tartars*, and the principal *Chinese* Markets and Goods are kept without in the Suburbs. All rich People keep a certain number of Slaves for the Emperour's Service, for which they receive an Annual stipend from him; and these Men in time of War are obliged to be kept ready Armed, Cloathed, and mounted on Horseback. The *Jesuits* who were at *Peking* when I was there, were but eight; of which two were *Spaniards*, three *Portuguese*, two *French-Men* and the last a *Roman*.

The *Chinese*, but especially the Courtiers retain a very great respect for these Fathers, and the other Ecclesiasticks; but the *Bonzies* look upon them somewhat obliquely. It must indeed be owned that the *Romish Clergy* discover a very great Zeal for the Propagation of their Religion. The *Russian* Nation hath also built a Church at *Peking*, and have converted and baptised several considerable Persons to the *Greek* Christian Religion. I don't think it at all necessary to touch on the Races of the Monarchs which have hitherto reigned in *China*, since the curious part of the World may find an intire and exact List of them, in the *Chinese* Chronology published by *Christian Menzelius*, Councillor and Physitian of the Body to the King of *Prussia*; printed at *Berlyn* in 1696.

As for what relates to the *Great Wall*, which encompasses part of the Empire of *China*, I shall only add in short to what I have already said of it, that it is a prodigious Work, but not so much to be valued on account of any extraordinary Art shewn in the building of it, as the surprising Labour and Expence employed in the erecting of it by the King who raised it: For which the *Chinese* Curse him to this Day, by reason he thereby thoroughly ruined the Empire. The *Jesuit Father Alexander* informed me, that by the Emperour's Order he travelled all along by this Wall, from the West where it begins, to the South-East, as far as the *Corsiscan* Sea, and found it to be 300 *German* Miles long, and had it stood all on a level, it would certainly stretch to 400 Miles; but it is carried over several high Mountains, and hath four Entrances, viz. The *Leatongian*, *Daourian*, *Lelinger* and *Tibetschian* Gates; besides which it is so broad that eight Horsemen may easily ride abreast upon it.

I don't think it proper to offer any more particulars concerning *China* since my residence there was not long, but desire the Reader favourably to accept this little, and give me leave to refer him to the farther Description annexed, in which he will find several things very well worth his Cognizance.

21012 TACOT 1938

1938

CHINA

1938

1938

1938

1938

1938

1938

1938

A
SHORT DESCRIPTION
Of the Vast
EMPIRE
OF
CHINA.

BY
DIONYSIUS KAO

A Native of that Country.

Illustrated with several pertinent Annotations
by a Learned Pen.

A

SHORT DESCRIPTION OF CHINA.

CHAP. I.

Of the Division of that Empire.

THIS Extensive Potent Empire comprehends fifteen Provinces, which may more properly be called Kingdoms: For before they were united under one Head, above three thousand Years past, each of them had its peculiar King: As at present every Province hath its Viceroy, all which are subordinate to one supreme Sovereign the Emperor. The Province of *Leaotung*, tho' situate without (*) the great Wall, is also reckoned amongst the rest, and passeth for the sixteenth.

(*) *Nieuhoff* places this Province within the Wall, in his Map affixed to the relation of his Travels, and is herein followed by *Martinus Martini*; but are both clearly born down by the convincing testimony of our Author; concerning whom his Excellency, *Everthard Ysbrand Ides*, late Ambassador from the Czars of *Muscovy* to *China*, expresses himself to the following purpose, in a Letter to Burgermaster *Witsen*: This (meaning this brief Description of *CHINA*) is a short and pertinent account of that Country, free from any considerable Faults; which was handed to me by *Dionysius Kao*, a Person of Integrity and Credit, who is a *Chinese* born in *Canton*, hath professed Chirurgery at *Siam* and in *India*, and embraced the Roman Catholick Religion: Thus far the Ambassador. The Jesuits *Le Comte*, *Bouvet*, and *Gobien*, unanimously confirm our Author's Assertion, they all affirming that the Province of *Leauton* is only separated from part of

These Provinces are divided into North and South.

The North (under which is also *Leaotung*) are *Peking*, *Xantung*, *Xansi*, *Xienshi*, and *Honan*, in all six. And the South Kingdoms or Provinces are the following ten: viz. *Nanking*, *Chekiang*, *Kianshi*, *Huquang*, *Suchuen*, *Queichen*, *Junan*, *Quoangsi*, *Quoantung* or *Canton*, and *Fokien*.

Besides these, several Kings and Kingdoms, are obliged to pay their Annual Tribute to the Emperor of *China*: Of which number are *Tunkin*, *Cochinchina*, *Laos*, *Liukin*, and *Chaofien*. The two last of these are Islands situate very near *Japan*. *Corea*, *Japan*, *Siam*, and *Pegu*, were also formerly subject to this Empire, tho' not at present. I design to describe all these Provinces and Neighbouring Tributary Kingdoms separately, and Geographically, as they butt and bound East and West, North and South, as briefly as possible.

Peking lies East of *Xansi*, as *Xansi* does West of *Peking*, and the Great Wall serves as a Northern boundary common to them both.

Xantung is Southwards of *Peking*, and Northwards of *Nanking*; it borders Eastwards on the Sea, and Westwards on *Honan*.

Xansi, as is above hinted, lies Westwards of *Peking*, Eastwards of *Xienshi*, Southwards of *Honan*, and bounds Northwards on the Great Wall.

Xienshi the largest of all the sixteen Provinces, is situate West of *Xansi*, Eastwards of West *Tartary*, whence the *Lama's* come; Southwards of *Suchuen*; and Northwards of the *Tartars* at the end of the Great Wall. And the source of the yellow River *Hoango* is also in the West part of this Province.

Corea by an Arm of the Sea, and is on that side of the Great Wall, viz. the side on which *Corea* is: tho' Father *Martinus*, the Jesuit, in his *Chinese Atlas* hath not placed it on that side, but within the mentioned Wall, and thereby misled almost all the Geographers since, they having very industriously continued his blunder.

Formerly all Authors reckoned but fifteen *Chinese* Provinces; but after the *Leaotungers* assisted the *Tartars* in the Conquest of *China*, that became one of the Provinces of that Empire, and doth accordingly enjoy all the Privileges of that Nation.

Le Comte speaks yet plainer on this Head. The Geographers (saith he) are grossly mistaken in their Accounts of *China*. First they place the whole Province of *Leauton* on this side of the Great Wall; tho' it is certain that it lies not within, but without it; notwithstanding which it always belonged to *China*. This is an undoubted truth, to be satisfied in which no more is requisite than to have been on the spot as well as we.

And yet farther he goes on, I do not take in as belonging to it (he is speaking of *China*) the Islands of *Formosa*, *Haynan*, and several others, which united would make a great Monarchy, any more than *Leauton*, which lies without the Great Wall.

Honan is in the middle of *China*, butting towards the South on *Hu-quang* and *Kiangsi*; Northwards on *Peking* and *Xansi*; Eastwards on *Xantung* and *Nanking*; and Westwards on *Suchuen* and *Xienfi*.

Leaotung borders Northwards on *Xantung*, which delines Southward from it; Eastwards it is opposite to *Corea*; it extends also Southwards to the Great Wall, and Northwards to *Tartary*.

Nanking is bounded by *Chekiang* on the South, and *Xantung* on the North; it stretches Westwards to *Honan* and *Huquang*, and Eastwards to the Ocean.

Chekiang touches on *Nanking*, from which it lies Northwards, as it doth to the South of *Fokien*; The Sea washes it Eastwards, and Westwards of it lies *Kiangsi*.

Kiangsi borders Eastwards on *Chekiang* and *Fokien*; Westwards on *Queicheu* and *Honan*; Southwards on *Quantung*, and Northwards on *Nanking*.

Huquang is bounded Northwards by *Honan*; Southwards by *Quantung*; Westwards by *Zuchuen* and *Queicheu*; and Eastwards by *Kiangsi*.

Zuchuen butts Eastwards on *Huquang*; Westwards on *Tibet*; Northwards on *Xienfi*; and Southwards on *Queicheu*, and *Funan*.

Queicheu lies Northwards almost on *Quangsi*; Southwards on *Zuchuen*; Eastwards on *Huquang*, and Westwards on *Funan*.

Funan joins Eastwards and Southwards to *Quoangsi*; Southwards to *Gannan*; Westwards to *Laos*, and Northwards to *Zuchuen* and *Queicheu*.

Quoangsi or *Quamsi* hath *Quoantung* on the East; *Cochinchina* on the South; *Funan* on the West, and *Queicheu* on the North.

Quoantung or *Canton* is bounded on the East and North by *Fokien*, on the West by a Point; farther Northwards by *Quoangsi*, and Southwards by the Ocean.

Fokien joins on the East and South-East to the Sea, and the Island of *Formosa*: Westwards of it, lies *Kiansi*; Southwards *Canton*, and Northwards *Chekiang*.

C H A P. II.

Of Peking the Imperial Seat.

PEKING is a Royal Province, subordinate to which are nine lesser Provinces, or great Cities, with their dependant Districts, all which are distinguished by the additional name of *Fu*. And these nine large have sixteen lesser Cities subjected to their Jurisdiction, which are also distinguished from them by the apellative of *Cheu*: and the less considerable Places which are under the Government of the last sort are surnamed *Hien*.

The First Imperial City of this Province is *Xuntien* (*) *Fu*, otherwise called *Peking*; it hath twenty six other Cities subjected to its Jurisdiction.

The Second, *Junging Fu* hath six Cities under her Command.

The Third, *Chinding Fu*, hath twenty six Cities.

The Fourth, *Quoamping Fu*, presides over six Cities.

The Fifth, *Thiemming Fu*, is chief of eleven Cities.

The Sixth, *Fuuming Fu*, governs six.

The Seventh, *Hokien Fu*, governs seven.

The Eighth, *Paoding Fu*, ten Cities.

The Ninth, *Xunte Fu*, hath nine inferiour Cities.

From this ruling Superiority and Power, which the great Cities as well in this as in all the following Provinces, have over the lesser, tho' large and populous Cities, plainly discover the ability of each Province, and added together display the vast extended Power of this most glorious Monarchy.

(*) *Xuntien Fu*, is the antient and true name of this City; but since the Seat of the Empire was transplanted from *Nanking* to this Place, it hath assumed the name of *Peking*; which imports Northerly, as *Nanking* signifies Southerly. We shall speak of the Courts presiding at *Nanking* in our Description of that Province and City. This Metropolis however very justly lays claim to two Names, it being at present grown into two Cities, a new one being built near the old one: For when the *Tartar* establish'd himself on the Throne, he so croud'd this Place with such great numbers of his own Nation, that the *Chinese* were necessitated to build a new City without the Walls of the old one. This new built Town is full as large as the antient one, which last is a perfect Square, of about four Miles compass, and being inhabited by *Tartars* alone, is called the *Tartars City*: The new Town is as big as the other, but more populous, and is called the *Chinese City*: And both of them take up the compass of six large

The Soil of this Province is not very fertile in any thing but Corn, even of which it doth not yield sufficient to supply its own necessities ; but is therefore obliged to be furnished with what falls short in their own growth, from other Countries.

Formerly *Nanking* was the Metropolis and Imperial (*) Seat : But the Incursions and Outrages of the Neighbouring *Tartars*, occasioned the removal of the Imperial Court to *Peking*, in order to be nearer the Great Wall and the Enemy.

This Wall, which is of a prodigious length and thickness, was built above two thousand six hundred Years past, (†) by the *Chinese* Emperor *Chien Chuvoang* by way of Provision against the Incursions of the neighbouring *Tartars* ; and accordingly it covers the three Provinces of *Peking*, *Xansi* and *Xienfi*. This Wall exactly measured with a Line, in length is above six hundred and fifty *French* Miles, or Hours travelling ; (and by the way the Reader is desired to take all Miles mentioned in this tract for *French* Miles of an Hours march each.) But if all its crooked windings

Miles about, each Mile being reckoned at 3600 Paces, as appear'd when it was measured by the Emperor's express command : It is indeed a large City, but not to be compared to *Nanking*.

(*) The Emperors of the last Race before the *Tartarian* *Mancheou* (the Family or Nation which now Reigns in *China*, and of which the present Emperor *Cangby* the third is) translated the Seat of the Empire to *Peking*, for the reason hinted by our Author, that the Troops of the Household being several thousand strong, might be immediately ready and near the Enemy : But neither this precaution, nor the Great Wall, of which we shall speak presently, could prevent their being forc'd, or rather hinder Prince *Oufangeii* (who was invited into *China* to oppose a Tyrant and Usurper) from establishing himself on one of the most August Thrones in the World.

(†) This Wall is reported to be built by the Emperor *Chius*, about 250 Years before the Birth of Christ, to the performance of which such a vast number of Men were allotted, that the whole was finished within the space of five Years, and was so extraordinary firm, that no Nail could be driven into it. To raise Men for this great Work, that Monarch absolutely commanded throughout his Dominions, that three out of every ten Men should work at it, and afterwards two out of every five were compelled to labour at this undertaking : It is also said that tho' the Inhabitants of each Province wrought as near their own abode as they could, yet either by the length of their Journey, or the difference of the Climates, almost all those employed in this Building died unexpectedly ; which raised a tumult in the Empire, which proceeded so far as to murder the Emperor and his Son *Agutzi*, in the Fortieth Year of his Reign.

The Jesuits, who enjoy the Ear and Favour of the Emperor, are very expert in the Art of Mensuration, as their printed Books discover ; amongst these are the above-mentioned *Le Comte*, *Bouvet*, and *Gobien* ; and they tell us that the most formidable Enemies the *Chinese* ever feared were the Western *Tartars* ; wherefore an Antient *Chinese* Emperor built this Great Wall, to keep them off.

I have (saith *Le Comte*) four times traced and observed it very near hand, and without any Hyperbole dare aver, that the seven Wonders of the World are not to be compared to it, and that Fame represents it less in *Europe* than I found it to be.

were

were measured it would appear to be above one thousand Miles long ; it being carried over very steep Mountains and Rocks. Upon the highest of these it is provided with Fortresses and Towers, four of which are placed within the space of every Mile throughout the whole. Besides all which it is full broad enough for eight Horses to gallop abreast without any danger.

Two particulars, continues he, surprized me very much.

I. That this Wall in its long extent from East to West, is in several places carried not only directly through vast and desolate Fields, but also over very high Mountains ; over which it seems to advance by slow degrees, the intermediate vacancies betwixt being strengthened with great Towers, which stand about two Bow-shot distant from each other. I measured the height of one of these, and found it one thousand seven and thirty Geometrical Feet above the Horizontal Line ; and it is not easie to conceive how such a prodigious Bulwark could be raised to such a height, in dry mountainous places, to which Water, Stone, Lime, and all other materials, must of necessity be brought from far distant places.

II. That this Wall is not carried on in a direct line, but in several places winds and turns according as the shape of the Hills required, so that one would be apt to say, that three Walls instead of one, cover a great part of *China*.

He farther saith, That the *Chinese* have exceeded the Antients in Fortification ; that they call this Wall, *Vauli Tcham Tchun*, that is, of ten thousand Furlongs : That its extent is from the Oriental Sea to the Province of *Xansi* or *Chanfi* : That tho' it is certain that it is not so long as report makes it, yet all the turnings and windings considered, it cannot be much less than five hundred Miles long : That wherever it seemed most easie to be forced, two or three fences are clapped up one behind the other, so that the hindmost can easily contribute to the defence of the foremost : That it is carried over the highest Hills, and raised or sunk in proportion to the uneven ground it stands on, for (saith he) it is not to be imagined that it is every where level, but that whenever it takes its course over lofty Mountains, it is extraordinary high, but otherwise it doth not exceed the height of common City Walls ; and notwithstanding Writers so widely disagree about its breadth, it is not above five or six Foot.

He adds that it is built with Brick, but the work so good, that tho' it hath stood so many Ages, it is yet sound and almost intire : That as this undertaking was the greatest in the World, it was also the most ridiculous attempt that ever was made ; for admitting that Prudence obliged the most feasible inlets to be shut up, and fortified, it is not yet less absurd to raise a Wall to those Mountain tops which are so high, that a Bird can scarce fly over them, much less could the *Tartarian* Troops climb them, and to leave some places so low and defenceless as they are. It is indeed to be wondered at, how they found such excellent Artists and proper Instruments, to convey the Materials so high ; and more Workmens lives were sacrificed in this building, than the utmost outrages of the *Tartarian* Hosts would ever have killed them.

CHAP. III.

Of the Province of Xantung.

THE Kingdom or Province of *Xantung*, lies Southwards of *Peking*, and extends Eastwards towards the Sea: and through this Province or that of *Leaotung*, the Inhabitants of *Corda* bring their Annual Tribute to *China*. The Soil is Fertile, producing all sorts of Corn and Fruits in such plenty, that one Years crop is sufficient to provide the Inhabitants of this Country for ten Years. All sorts of Edibles, tending to the support of Luxury as well as necessity, bear but a very low price here; and this Province its abounding with Rivers, Channels and Ponds, is the reason that Fish is here prodigious plenty; as are also all sorts of tame and wild Flesh. Nor are the Silk-worms backwards in yielding great quantities of Silk. But withal, this Country is more infested with Robbers and Villains than the other Provinces of *China*, and they herd together in such numbers that they can raise a small Army. Subordinate to this are six great Cities distinguished by the additional appellative of *Fu*, the signification of which is explained above.

And subject to these six are fifteen lesser Towns surnamed *Cheu*, under which are Eighty nine yet lesser, called *Hien*.

The Principal City is *Zinan Fu*, which hath under its Jurisdiction four less called *Cheu*, and sixteen smaller surnamed *Hien*, which have again twenty under their command.

The second large City is called *Junchen Fu*; it hath twenty four called *Cheu*, and three and twenty yet lesser surnamed *Hien*, under it.

Tungchang Fu, the third large City, presides over three Cities with the Surname *Cheu*, and fifteen called *Hien*.

Cinchen Fu, the fourth, hath subordinate to it fourteen of the Cities called *Cheu*, and as many of those distinguished by the name of *Hien*.

Tengcheu Fu, the fifth great City, commands one of the Cities *Cheu*, and seven of the little ones called *Hien*.

Laichen Fu, the sixth, governs two *Cheu*, and five *Hien*. And these are the six great Cities of *Xantung*.

The most excellent *Chinese* Philosopher *Ciungfusius*, drew his first breath in this Kingdom or Province.

This *Ciungfusius* or *Confutius*, left several Philosophical Tracts behind him, for which not only the *Chinese*, but also the Neighbouring Polite and knowing People, express the greatest veneration, and carefully preserve them, as the most sacred and valuable Writings in the World; he is said to have flourished about five hundred Years before the Birth of Christ. The *Chinese* so highly reverence him, that they bow down to the Ground at the very sight of any Table or Plank, &c. dedicated to his Memory, and on which his Name is inscribed. Tho' indeed this practice doth not always obtain, but on certain Solemnities, at certain Times and Places, that the Memory of such a learned Man and great Benefactor to Mankind, may not die; to preserve which by going too far they make an Idol of him.

There are some small Islands which are also dependent on this Province, amongst which are the following three, *Feuxu*, *Xamuen* and *Tenheng* are the most considerable: and the last very remarkable for having five hundred *Chinese* Philosophers murdered there, tho' it is not so much valued on this account as *Xantung* is for having given birth to the great *Confutius*.

The Emperor *Xius* or *Chi Homti*, who built the great Wall (mentioned in the Description of *Peking*) being very much addicted to War, and an accomplished Soldier, but an utter Enemy to all Philosophers, whom he had peremptorily resolved to put to Death; he commanded them all to repair from all parts of his Kingdom to a particular place, on the specious pretext of discussing some very important point; and they all being assembled together, he shipped them off to the mentioned Island, and caused them all to be murdered in a very inhumane manner: tho' others say that they drowned themselves. He was such an inveterate Enemy to all Literature that he strictly commanded all his Subjects on pain of Death to burn all the Books in the whole Empire, except only those which treated of Agriculture, Physick and Necromancy.

Through this Province runs the River *Luen*, of which the Inhabitants relate very strange things (*) many of which are found to be true.

(*) *Nieuhof*, amongst other surprising things reports, that if nine Sticks are thrown into it, six of them will infallibly drive Southwards, and three to the North: and that he himself tried the experiment and found it true.

In this and other Provinces, is observed a sort of Fishing Bird called *Louwa*, which is somewhat less than a Goose, and not unlike a Raven; having also a very crooked Bill towards the end. The manner of fishing with them is as follows: The Fishers having rowed themselves in their Boats to a proper place, throw these (†) Birds over board, who immediately dive, and the very instant they have caught their Game, dart up to the surface of the Water, when their Masters immediately seize them, and very expeditiously pull the Fish out of their Crops, it not being possible for it to descend lower, by reason it is stopped by a Ring fixed about the Birds Neck, which is removed when the sport is over, and the Birds let loose; after which they go a Fish-stealing with open Throats, and having satiated themselves return to their Boats. Near the City of *Chincheu* or *Juncheu Feu*, a Stone called *Nienhoang*, is observed to grow in the Stomach of the Cows, which some take for a sort of *Bezoar*, and is very much coveted, and highly esteemed by the *Chinese* Physicians, being an efficacious remedy against Catarrhs.

(†) *John Gonsales de Mendosa*, says, they are fastened under their Wings to a long Rope, before they are thrown into the Water, and that they fish every third Day in the proper Season, after the Fish have Spawned.

C H A P. IV.

Describing the Province of Xansi.

THIS Province lies Westwards of *Peking*, extends Northwards to the great Wall, and is divided into two parts, by a large rapid River which runs through it, tho' it rises in the Western part of (*) *Xiensí*, from whence it turns Southwards, shortly after it winds to the North, and lastly inclining again Southwards disembogues its self into the Sea. It runs through four Provinces, beginning with West *Xiensí* where it rises, and passes through that side of that Province; after which it runs through *Xansi*, *Honan* and *Nanking*, where it falls into the Sea. The breadth of this River in some places is a *French* Mile, or a Mile and half, and in others two Miles over; and by the violence of its Tide, and force of this great mass of Waters, it very much damages the adjoining Lands, by sometimes overflowing not only particular Houses, but whole Villages and (†) Cities,

(*) Writers differ very strangely concerning the names of this Province, City, River, &c. Our Author calls the Province *Xansi*, another calls it *Chansi*; the chief City he names *Honang Fu*, others *Caifung*; he calls the River *Huango*, another makes it *Hoamso*; and there is also a difference, tho' not a very wide one, concerning its source. *Le Comte* tells us, that the *Hoamso* rises at the farther end of those Mountains which cover the West part of the Province of *Suchouen*; from whence it throws it self into *Tartary*, where having run its course without the great Wall, it repasses through it into *China*, betwixt the Provinces of *Chansi* and *Chensi* (or *Xiensí*), after which it waters the Province of *Honang*, and running through the Province of *Nanking*, having compleated its course of above 600 Miles, lastly empties its self, not far distant from the large River *Kiam*, into the Oriental Sea.

(†) This River hath formerly made vast devastations, and obliged the *Chinese* to guard off its Water, by casting up high and strong Dikes or Banks; which after all proved insufficient to the securing of the Cities from the ill effects of its overflowing. Besides which, the Cities in *Honang*, are all fenced round about a quarter of a Mile from the Town, to prevent an Innundation, in case of this rapid River's breaking through all its Banks, as it did above fifty Years since. For the Emperor, in order to raise the close Siege laid to *Caifung*, the chief City of *Honang*, by the Rebel *Libuang* (who had perfectly shut it up from all relief,) and to confound his Army, caused the Banks to be cut through. But their delivery proved more fatal to them, and did them more mischief than the utmost rage of the Enemy could: For by that means not only the City it self but almost the whole Province, and several other Towns and Villages were laid under Water: so that above three hundred thousand Men, amongst which were several Missionaries, who had then a numerous Christian Congregation in the said City, were all drowned and destroyed, losing at once both their Church and their Lives.

twenty or thirty Miles distant, sweeping before it Men, Cattle or whatever it finds. In the *Chinese* Language it is called *Huango*, which signifies the yellow River, by reason the Water looks yellow or reddish, which is occasioned by its passage over, and carrying along with it a sort of yellow Earth on the *Tartarian* Mountains, that imparts its tincture to it: For this River runs through part of *Tartary* without the great Wall, and after taking a winding course there, re-enters the Wall. It is very deep, but yet in most parts of it (**) unnavigable.

This Country is very Mountainous, and tho' less than other Provinces, yet is very populous and fertile; its Jurisdiction extends over six large Cities surnamed *Fu*, eleven *Cheu*, and ninety five *Hien*.

The præeminent City of the first large district is called *Thayensu*; the second *Pautesu*; the third *Pingiangsu*; the fourth *Zugansu*; the fifth *Funcheusu*, and the sixth *Tatingsu*.

All these have several small subordinate Cities, which not affording any thing very remarkable, to avoid prolixity I shall not enlarge on. But it is very observable that in all parts of this Province are found fiery Wells, which very conveniently serve for the boiling of their Victuals in the following manner: They cover them close with a lid in which is left a hole, to set the Kettle or Pot on, by which means whatever is contained in it is boiled, without any other assistance.

The valiant Warriour and great General *Quaninchang* was born in this Province. This Heroe had three bosom Friends, Lords, which had sworn a mutual and inviolable friendship, and to whom he proved very sincere and faithful. They were all three highly esteemed by the Emperor, but one of them was his peculiar Favorite: And it happening, that the Death of the Emperor occasioned a Civil War, This Heroe and the others endeavoured to set their Friend on the Throne; in pursuit of this end he several times proved victorious and won several Battles; but it happening once that the Enemy had carried off his Friends Wives and their Attendants, the news no sooner reached his Ears than with utmost hast and equal bravery, he reduced his Men to order beat the Enemy, and delivered the Captive Ladies; and retired before, and in sight, of a vast approaching Army which pursued him close at the heels for two Days and two Nights, notwithstanding all which he defended and preserved them from all danger, and delivered them inviolate and untouched to his Friends. And for this Glorious and Gallant Action, he is highly revered by his Country-men; in remembrance of such sublime.

(**) *Le Comte* saith, I have sailed on several parts of this River, and found it everywhere broad and rapid, but shallow, and scarce Navigable.

Virtue, they adore him as a God, and set up Images in their Idol-Temples in honour of him. It is but seldom that they will shew this Image, the Face of which is of a very deep blood colour, like a Hero not debauch'd by *Bacchus*: and the Military Men highly esteem that sort of Countenance: Nay, the whole *Chinese* Nation imagine him very propitious to them, and fancy that such a fiery flaming Face will inspire them with Valour, and enable them to acquit themselves well.

C H A P. V.

Of the Kingdom or Province of Xienfi.

X*ienfi* or *Xenfi* is the largest of all the *Chinese* Provinces, and had formerly three Viceroys, tho' at present it hath but two. Its breadth from East to West is three hundred and fifty, and its length four hundred Miles. Its Plains as well as Hills are very fertile; and here are vast Herds of (*) Kine, and large Flocks of Sheep: This Province lies Westward of *Xanfi*; the great Wall terminates in it; it also borders on West *Tartary*, from whence the *Lama's* (†) come, which are *Tartarian* Priests that wear yellow or red Habits.

This Province also borders on the upper Principality of *Tibet*, which extends it self to the Territories of the Great Mogol, from whose Dominions great numbers of Merchants come to the vast trading City of *Zunning*, in the Kingdom of *Xienfi*: And the Door of Com-

(*) This Province breeds as many Cattle of all sorts as any Country in the World; The Sheep and Goats come on so kindly and thrive so well, that they are shorn thrice every Year; and their Wool is wrought into very fine Cloaths and Stuffs, fit for wearing or other uses. This Country also produces great quantities of Musk, which is extraordinary good, and grows at the Navel of an Animal like a Hart without Horns; Their Navels swell most in their rutting time, when they are taken and killed, the Navel and what is contained in it cut, and that proves the best unadulterated Musk; a more particular account of which illustrated with a Print, is inserted page 45, of the prefixed Travels to *China*.

(†) The Great or Chief Lama is the head of their Religion, and him they honour as a Deity. When the first Embassy sent by the *Dutch East-India Company* to *China* was at *Peking*, there was also an Envoy from him; And by reason (saith *Nieuhoff*) they had formerly lived in *China*; but before the *Tartar* had conquered that Empire, had been by the last *Chinese* Emperor driven out of it: Their Errand was then to request a permission for the return of their banished Ecclesiasticks on the old foot, and a free exercise of their Religion.

merce being for some time opened here, and liberty granted to them as well as *Muscovites* and *Tartars* to trade here; they have with their Wares and Trade introduced the *Mahometan* Religion, which as Weeds grow apace, is spread over all *China*, to that degree, that there appears more of that accursed Seed than of the true Doctrine of Jesus Christ.

In this Province are eight large Cities which have a hundred and sixteen under their Jurisdiction. The Principal City is *Sigan Fu*, which is indeed large and very fine; the rest are *Hanchung Fu*, *Fungiang Fu*, *Pingliang Fu*, *Linxiu Fu*, *Vachang Fu*, *Hingang Fu*, and *Singang Fu*; These are the eight, subordinate to which as I above hinted are all the others.

Not far from *Sigan Fu*, somewhat above seventy Years past, a Monumental Table was found, upon which a Cross, (*) and several Letters were cut, whence the Ecclesiasticks prove that the Christian Religion was anciently known in *China*, and that *St. Thomas* the Apostle, or some of his (†) Disciples were there.

(*) The Jesuits *Kircher*, *Le Comte*, *Gobian* and others, testify to this Cross and Table; but I shall only make a short extract of the Principal things which they treat of at large. They say then, that it is a long Marble Table, on the top of which is Engraven a Cross: That in the Year 1625, some Bricklayers, digging the Ground near *Signanfou* in the Province of *Chienfi*, found a long piece of Marble, which had formerly been set up as a Monument, but time had sunk it under the Earth. This Stone was ten Feet long and five broad; and was the more narrowly examined, by reason a well Engraven large Cross appeared at the top of it; and somewhat below that, a long Inscription in *Chinese* Characters, with some strange unknown Letters, which were found to be *Syriack*. The Emperor being informed of it, caused a Copy of it to be given out, and afterwards commanded the Monument to be kept in a Pagode, where it is at present about a quarter of a Mile from *Signanfou*. The Inscription (which is too long to be transcribed here) mentions the *Messias*, and imports that an Angel brought the Tidings of his coming, and that *Olopouen* departed from *Judea* in the Year 636, and came to *China*, that he being examined, his Testimony was found good, and that the Emperor published a Proclamation and Command in his favour, in order to the building of a Church, &c. Those who desire to be more particularly informed concerning this Table, may apply to *Kircher's China*, or *Le Comte's Description of China*, where the Story is at large.

(†) It is a probable conjecture saith *J. G. de Mendoza*, page (*mibi*) 50. that *St. Thomas* the Apostle preached in this Empire: For we find in the Lesson appointed for his Festival, that after he had received the Holy Ghost, and preached the Word of God to the *Parthians*, *Medes*, *Persians*, *Brachmans*, and other Nations; he went into *India*, and for the Faith and Gospel which he preached, was Martyred in the City of *Kalamina*; the Margent adds, at *Kalamina*, at present called *Malipur*, *St. Thomas* suffered Martyrdom, and his Body is there. On the same page he saith farther, that *St. Thomas* going to *India*, where he became a Martyr, passed through and preached in *China*, tho' not very successfully, by reason that Nation was engaged in a War, so that he only Baptized and Instructed a few of the Natives in our Faith, and left them behind to spread the Gospel.

C H A P. VI.

Of the Province of Honan.

Which is situate in the middle of *China*, borders Southwards on the Provinces *Huquang* and *Kiansi*: Northwards on *Peking* and *Xansi*; Eastwards on *Xantung* and *Nanking*, and Westwards on *Suchuen* and *Xiens*. Antiently, before all *China* was subjected to one Monarch, but each Province or Kingdom was governed by its own King, this was accounted the middle Kingdom, and distinguished by that Name; which is at present given to *China*, by reason it is situated in the middle of several Circumjacent Lands and Kingdoms: And accordingly the *Chinese* frequently say, Southwards lie the Kingdoms of *Tunking* and *Siam*; Eastwards *Japan*, and some other Islands; Westwards *Pegu*, and the Country as far as *Bengal* and *Tartary*; Northwards are the *Barbarian Tartars*, which formerly paid Toll and Tribute as Subjects: Whilst *China* lying in the middle of all these is justly called in *Chinese*, *Chung Ivoi*, that is, the Middle Kingdom.

This Province consists of Flat Land, without Hills, which is very fruitful, yielding a vast plenty of Rice and other Corn, all which are to be bought here very cheap; a hundred pound of Rice being here frequently sold for Twelve pence.

It contains eight large Cities, which have subordinate to them a hundred and eight Towns or lesser Cities. The Principal City is called *Schaisung Fu*;

Which formerly was the Royal Court: but was overflowed and covered with Sand by a great (†) Innundation; and at present a City is built opposite to it. *Quinte Fu*, *Hincte Fu*, *Vecse Fu*, *Vaking Fu*, *Honan Fu*, *Nining Fu*, and *Hojang Fu*, are the names of the remaining Cities; making altogether eight, which preside over the above mentioned hundred and eight.

(†) By this Innundation is to be understood the cutting of the Banks already mentioned in the Description of *Xansi* and the River *Hoanga*, which was done by the Emperor to deliver the City from the Siege which the Rebel *Libuang* had laid to it, and to drown him and his Army: But alas! it proved the drowning and destruction of this chief City, and so many hundred thousand Men. The History follows in the Text, to which we refer, wherefore we need say no more of it here. But I shall only add, that the Champion Ground of this Province, hath continued ever since like a Pond or Morass: Projects have indeed been thought on to drain it, and reduce it to its pristine state; but the Undertaking is almost above humane ability, the Expence is unmeasurably great, nor is it possible to accomplish it; wherefore the Court have given over all thoughts of it.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Province of Leaotung.

THIS Province lies Northward of *Xantung*, Eastwards of *Corea*; but Southwards of Northern *Tartary*. Through this Province the present reigning *Tartars* came into *China*. In the Reign of the Emperor *Vanli*, about the Year of Christ 1590, the *Tartars* also broke into *Leaotung*, but were repulsed by that Monarch. This was about the time that Father *Matthew Riccius* the Jesuit came into *China*. This Emperor *Vanli* governed, and peaceably possessed *Leaotung* for 49 Years: but after his Death the *Tartars* by the assistance of some exil'd Traiterous *Chinese*, that lived in this Province, the utmost boundary which parted *China* from *Tartary*; the *Tartar*, I say, assisted by these Traitors who had before behaved themselves ill at home, again entred this Country. This happened when the Emperor was but Young, and all the publick Affairs were directed by his Viceroy's and Eunuchs. So they grew more Potent in this Province. And about the Year 1630 *Lichuang* a certain Rebel rose up against him in the Province of *Xiensu*, which he not only made himself Master of, but over-powered several other, before the Emperor so much as knew of it; his Eunuch Commanders industriously concealing it, so long, that the ill news never reached his Ears till it was too late to remedy it, that is, till this Rebel was advanced with his Forces so near *Peking* that he entred it the next Morning.

Upon the news of which, the Emperor (*) clapt his Hands to his Sword, but not out of manly resolution, but hurried thereto by Despair only, in order to kill his Imperial Consort, Concubines and Daughter, who expressed their Grief in Tears and Lamentations sufficiently pathetick to have moved the most obdurate Heart. Having thus prevented their future misery by present Death, he himself climbed to the top of a Mountain within the Walls of the Im-

(*) He was the last of the Race of *Taiminga*, whose name was *Zungchi*: of which Family *Chu* was the Founder. He repulsed the *Tartars* who then Lorded it over the *Chinese*. And his descendants enjoyed the Empire for several hundred Years; but of this elsewhere more at large.

perial Palace, and to provide against falling into the hands of this Arch Rebel, chose rather to die by his own, and accordingly hanged himself on a Tree.

After which *Lichuang* ascends the Throne, establisheth himself in the possession of the Monarchy, as Sovereign Ruler of the People, and deported himself like an Emperor, or much rather like a Tyrant and Usurper: For he began his Reign with Cruelty: he commanded the Father to the Prince and General at the great Wall, and several other Noblemen, to be put to a tormenting and painful Death, for no other reason than because he could not bring over his Son to the Rebels side: who afterwards not only attempted the revenge of his Fathers Death, but also to deliver the Empire from this Usurper.

For he then went to *Leaotung*, (†)-and invited the *Tartars* to his assistance: but they very much distrusted him at first, to remove which he promised them on the word of a General to be faithful to them, confirming his promises with an Oath on the naked Sabir. After which he led them as their General, and they boldly followed him. The prevailing Usurper was come without the Wall, and also requested aid of the *Leaotungers* but in vain.

The Heroick General bravely faced his Enemy, and in the first place revenging the Murther of his Father, after an obstinate resistance, he routed, put him to flight, and pursued him and his Flying-Army as far as *Peking*, where his Enemy made no stop, but after he had taken out his Hundred and Ninety Concubines, and the richest Furniture and Jewels, set Fire to the Imperial Palace. The Prince pursued him accompanied with his own Forces, and some *Tartars*, leaving the rest at *Peking*.

The *Tartarian* Cham or Prince, tho' but an invited Guest, in order to assist the *Chinese*, having with him about seven or eight thousand *Tartars*, besides the *Leaotungers*, makes use of this fair opportunity to mount the Throne of this mighty Empire. This happened about ten Years before the worthy Father *John Adams* settled in *China*, he having been there about ten Years before.

(†) From this and what follows, as that *Lichuang* went without the great Wall to request the assistance of the *Leaotungers*, it clearly appears that *Leaotung* lies without the mentioned great Wall, since this Princely General by some called *Usangeii*, and by our Author *Vii Sangquei*, who then commanded, went from the great Wall and applied himself to the *Leaotungers* as well as the Usurper, and on the same account. But in the beginning of this Tract to which we refer the Reader, this is so clearly proved, that no farther Evidence is in the least necessary.

The General returning from the pursuit of his Enemy, found the *Tartar* whose assistance he had implored, seated on the Throne, and himself obliged to obey him: And complying with necessity he consented to become his Relative Allie by inter-marriage. And the new Emperor created this Prince King of *Funan*.

The bond of Affinity was yet too feeble, and the Crown of *Funan* too mean, to satisfy and restrain within bounds this aspiring Prince, who aimed at the Empire it self. And accordingly after the expiration of a few Years, he rose against the Cham; and stiled himself Emperor, by the name of *Vii Sangqueii*; reduced several Southern Provinces to accept his Sovereignty: And after having carried on a vigorous War against the Cham, and also conquered half the Empire, he at last died, being advanced to a very great Age.

His youngest Son who succeeded him in his pretensions to the Empire, was a Minor, and as it generally happens in Revolutions, an irreconcilable dissention arose amongst the Princes, which prevented his seizing the Empire: The Eldest Son kept his Court at *Peking*, was by Marriage allied to the Emperor, and had three Sons; but tho' he was Thirty five Years of Age, yet he and his three Sons were put to Death. (*) And ever since the whole Empire of *China* hath been subject to one Sovereign.

It is indeed true, that not long before some Lords arose up against the Emperor, and carried on a War against him, which did not prove successful, by reason of their mutual divisions: yet incredible numbers of Men were killed; some talk of forty Millions, others say four Millions: Insomuch that humane Blood (in an unheard of manner) streamed from Mountain tops; that the deep Channels were filled with Dead Bodies, and the deeper Vales piled up and levelled with the Hills. This happened during the Minority of the pre-

(*) There is a Law in force in *China* which extends the punishment of Rebels to the ninth Generation. The present Emperor *Canghi* who is a mild Prince, and discovers a very great aversion to Cruelty, found himself obliged in compliance with the Laws of the Land to put to Death the Children and some other Relations of *Ousangeii*, by reason he was convicted of Rebellion: But to testify his aversion to any such practice, he caused Proclamation to be made before hand, that it was not he that had condemned them, but that he was constrained by the rigid Laws of the Empire, the general Assembly of the Princes of the Blood, and the supreme Courts of Justice of the Land, not to delay the Punishment of any Person who was convicted of Rebellion.

sent Emperor *Canghi*, (†) he being then not aged above fourteen Years.

As his Fathers Accession to the Throne was not accompanied with any fatigues or uneasiness, so his Reign was very peaceable; leaving the greatest difficulties for his Son to struggle with, who by his great Wisdom, Heroick Courage, Royal Virtues, and exalted indowments, hath overcome them all.

We shall now turn our Face towards the Southern Provinces, and take leave of these Northern Countries, with saying that *Leao-tung* is a very fine tho' small Province, it containing not above twelve as well large as small Cities: And adding that in this Pro-

(†) In order to furnish the Reader with a true account of this present *Tartarian* Emperor and his Race, it is necessary that he be informed that *Canghi* is the Son of *Chuntchi* or *Xunchi*, who was the Son of *Zungti*, by others called *Tzonte*, the first Emperor of *China*, of the present reigning Family, which is called *Taisou*, *Taicoung*, or also *Taicin*: The Nations and People originally his Subjects were called *Manticheou's*, and were the Eastern *Tartars*. This *Tzonte* was invited to the assistance of *Oufangeii*, against the Rebel *Li* or *Licong*, and he accordingly helped him with his Forces: but whilst *Oufangeii* was in pursuit of and beat *Licong*, *Tzonte* ascended the Imperial Throne of *China*, which he did not long enjoy, and *Le Comte* tells us had no time to possess his new acquest; for he died as soon as he entred on it, leaving to his Brother *Amavan* the Government of the Empire and Education of his Son, then but six Years old: This Protector reduced all the extraneous Provinces, and the whole Empire to an obedience to him during his Minority: and delivered the Empire to him as soon as he became of Age: Being continually as solicitous to establish him in, as he had before been to possess him of the Throne. And this indeed was such an unparallel'd example of Allegiance as can never enough be praised. But notwithstanding *Chunchti's* Reign was quiet, it was but short; for he died in the Year 1662 when the present Emperor which our Author mentions was but eight Years of Age. He was engaged in several great Wars against *Oufangeii*, the Kings of *Canton*, and *Fohien*, and besides fatigued with Civil Wars, Intestine Jars and Conspiracies, in the time specified by our Author, and after long wrestling, overcame them all by his Heroick Virtue and Wisdom. His Family is the twenty second that hath reigned over *China*, and is as above hinted called *Taisou* or *Taicin*: They first got into the Throne in the Year 1643, when the Race of *Taminga* terminated in the dismal end above related of its last Emperor, after that Family had afforded sixteen Monarchs, which ruled that flourishing Empire for two hundred and seventy Years.

The Emperor *Tzonte* died in the Year 1644, almost like another *Moses*, taking but a bare view of the Land; yet with this difference, that this Monarch actually possessed it, and established the Crown on himself and his Posterity: the third of which at present gloriously adorns, and is likely to leave it to a *Hoangtaitse*, (so his Son the Heir apparent is called) that is at present aged 28 Years, and gives reason to hope will not degenerate from his Fathers Virtues.

vince grows the famous Medicinal Root *Ginseng*, (*) and acknowledged by the Physicians to be an excellent Cordial Restorative. The *Chinese* Doctors use it in Hectick Pestilential Fevers, and several other dangerous Diseases: It is prepared by mixture with several other Druggs. Those of these Roots which are large, bright and weighty are chosen as the best; they wrap them up in Paper, and keep them in dry Earth, and also in Pepper: They commonly boil two or three Grains of it minced (†) small, in Chicken Broth, or that failing, in fair Water: but particular care must be taken that the Pot be close covered, by reason that in an open Kettle a great part of its virtue evaporates.

(*) Concerning the Use, Virtue, and Operation of this Root, &c. See *Le Comte* in his frequently quoted Description of *China*, pag. 171, and 172, of the *Hague* Impression: I shall mention a word or two of what he saith at large, because it also confirms the Situation of *Leaotung* without the great Wall, and proves it not to be in *China* but East Tartary: The *Ginsen* (saith he) which is at present used, is brought out from *Leauton*, a Province separate from *China*, and situate in East Tartary.

(†) The same *Le Comte*, in the same place, forbids the cutting off this Root with a Knife: Bite it (saith he) with the Teeth into small pieces, and do not cut it with a Knife, Iron diminishing its Virtue.

C H A P. VIII.

Of the Province of Nanking.

HAVING describ'd the Northern, according to our Promise we come to speak of the remaining Southern Provinces or Kingdoms of *China*.

Nanking, which we named first, is very large, and is governed by two Viceroy's : The chief City is called *Nanking*, or rather at present, *Kiamning*, the *Tartars* having changed its Name. This was formerly the Metropolis ; and the Imperial Court now kept at *Peking*, antiently resided here. This is the largest City in *China* ; and at present is sixteen or seventeen *French* Miles in compass ; but formerly contain'd three Circuits. The first or outermost and largest Circuit was thirty (*) Miles ; but since the Translation of the Seat of the Empire, it is run to decay, and become so far desolate, that its second Circuit contains but sixteen or seventeen Miles, in which compass are above thirty Hills (†).

This most charming City far surpasses all the rest ; besides which it is adorn'd with a lofty Tower of the finest Porcelain (**) of va-

(*) The Footsteps of which yet remain visible ; and seem rather (saith *Le Comte*) to have been the Bounds of a Province, than a City : And tho' *Peking* is large and very populous, and *Nanking* very much declined from its former Grandeur, it is yet more populous than the other. The reason of the removal of the Court is hinted in the second Chapter, whither we refer the Reader.

(†) We should also here add, that this City was within one Night of falling into the hands of *Coxinga* or *Couesius* ; but our Author having mentioned it in the XVIII. where he is treating of *Fokien* and the Island *Formosa*, I refer the Reader thither. And as for the third Circuit, (which our Author barely mentions without any Description) we gather from other Writers, that it was the antient Imperial Palace, where the *Chinese* Emperors formerly resided in as great Splendor, as at present at *Peking* ; it was at the South-side of the City, and encompassed by a Wall, which at present encloses the principal part of the City. Each of its four Sides were an *Italian* Mile long, and consequently required above an Hour's time to go round it, being by *Nieuboff* compared to *Haarlem* in *Holland*.

(**) The mutual difference betwixt all Authors, concerning *China*, is very surprizing, they not agreeing in Names, the Sense of them, nor even in things ; one writes *China*, another *Sina* ; this *Xansi*, *Xiensi*, that *Chansi*, *Chiensi*, and also *Chensi* : One calls the Emperor *Canghi*, another *Kamhi* ; one writes *Ousangouei*, whilst others have it *Usangejus*, or *Viisonguei* ; and all mean the same thing or Person. So we find the like difference concerning the Porcelain Tower, in, or more properly without, *Nanking*. Our Au-
rious

rious Colours, and set off on the out-side with very fine Imagery: It is nine Stories high, and within is full of Stone Figures, richly guilt.

The Streets of *Nanking* are very spacious and wide, as well as clean and neat, and there all sorts of Rarities and fine Wares are exposed to sale; but what is most amazing, is the almost incredible Number of Men which are observ'd to be there. The Inhabitants are computed to be eight Millions, not of numerical Persons, but House-keepers or Masters of Families, so that the Croud of People there seems justly enough said to be incredible to those who have not seen it.

Close by, or about the City, runs a River of two *French* Miles over, which in the *Chinese* Language is called *Tangsku Kiam*, that is, the Son of the Sea; and is navigable through all *China**: This River runs by and cuts through several Lakes and Rivulets, which all by its assistance are conveyed to, and by that means discharge themselves into the Sea: Wherefore this River is very richly laden with innumerable Ships, and lesser Craft, which are very fine within, and richly guilt without; besides which they are adorned with extraordinary fine painted Flags, and above Deck provided with

thor saith, the Porcelain on it is of the very finest and best sort: Others say, that this Tower is but plaistered with Porcelain; and tho' the Rain and Dust hath decayed the Beauty of it, the Remains are yet sufficient to determine that it was Porcellain, and not the finest, but a coarse sort. Nor do Writers less vary about the making of Porcelain, which will be treated of in the Xth Chapter. But before I take leave of this Tower, I shall add what *Nieuhoff* saith, viz. That Seven hundred Years past this Tower was built, to the great grief of the *Chinese*, and as a pompous Monument of the *Tartars* being then Lords of *China*, of which they left this memorial. *Le comte* on the other side saith, it is but about Three hundred Years since this Tower and the Temple of Memory were built by the Emperor *Yonlo*: And farther speaking of Towers, saith, That the Spire, which is one of its finest Ornaments, hath fixed on the Top of it a guilt Ball, or Pine-apple, of an extraordinary largeness; and *Nieuhoff* tells us, that the *Chinese* report this to be all massy Gold. Thus (*Le Comte* goes on) you have a Description of the Porcelain Tower, which some *Europeans* would call a Brick Turret: But indeed the *Chinese* are wonderfully expert in beautifying their Stones with all manner of Ornaments. But as it is, it is undoubtedly the neatest, most compact, and best piece of Work at present remaining in the *East*.

(*) It is reported to be so deep, that no Bottom is to be found; whence proceeds that *Chinese* Proverb, *That the Sea is without Bounds, and the Kiam without Bottom*: And some who have been there, affirm upon their own Experience, that no Ground was to be discovered by sounding; but they also add, that their Line was but fifty or sixty Fathom; and that if they had made use of one of Two or three hundred Fathom, they should have given another Account of it.

all manner of convenient Seats, Tables, and Couches, for the convenience of Travellers ; and they are withal well victualled.

The Jesuits, who have seen the vast Numbers there are of these Ships, say that there are enough of them (proverbially speaking) to make a Bridge from *China* to *Europe*.

The Jurisdiction of this Province extends to fourteen very large and magnificent Cities, all which are vastly rich, and have several small, and they again several lesser, subordinate to them, as in the other Provinces.

The second large City of this Province is *Suchen*, which is the most illustrious, largest, and most famous of all the rest ; being a place of the greatest Trade of any in the whole Empire. And Ships as well as Men appear there as numerous as the Sand on the Sea-shore.

The Emperor receives from hence five Millions of Laens, (each of which amounts to two Rixdollars) besides the Corn, Rice, and Fruit, which is transported from hence annually to *Peking*, in Nine thousand nine hundred and ninety nine Jonks, or large Ships ; each of which is capable of carrying Three or four hundred Weight : Not to mention all sorts of Silks, and other Commodities, yearly carried to the Emperor.

The Ships are six Months on the way ; and as soon as they are come to the end of the great Water, they come into navigable Rivers, cut by human labour, with a Sluce at the distance of every *French* Mile (†), to preserve the Water on occasion.

The Names of the other Cities are, *Ninchueu Fu*, *Thaiping Fu*, *Ganking Fu*, *Sun Kiang Fu*, *Chin Kiang Fu*, *Geancheu Fu*, *Jungjan Fu*, *Chingan Fu*, *Lucheu Fu*, *Quongte Fu*, *Changcheu Fu*, and *Kingcheu Fu*. These fourteen, the two former being included, exercise Jurisdiction over a hundred and thirteen other considerable Cities.

(†) Travellers in the Descriptions of their Voyages call them Sluces, but represent them widely different from ours here in *Holland* ; for they are a sort of Water-falls, over which the Ships are forced by the assistance of a great many Hands and Wind-lasses. It is indeed strange, that the subtle *Chinese* have not yet invented such as ours are, which if they once saw, they would be forced to acknowledge, that we are not such clumsy dull Wretches, as they and other Nations represent us there, and that they themselves seem rather like unthinking People, when they are forced to make use of so many Hands, and are so fatigued to force over their Ships, which we do with the greatest Ease in the World.

C H A P. IX

Of the Province of Chekiang.

THis Kingdom or Province borders on *Nanking*; and the *Chinese* say, that next to that, it is the *Indian Paradise* of Arts, and the *Paradise* of the Gods; by reason it plentifully flows with all good things. Throughout this whole Country are deep-cut Channels, by help of which all Parts of this Province may be easily travelled over as well by Water as by Land. The Bridges have all of them very fine Stone Arches. And the Number of Barks or Boats there is as vast, as that of Men in the great Streets of *Peking*, that is, innumerable, which is the less to be wondered at, since this place is frequented by Merchants from all Parts of the World.

It contains eleven large Cities, the chief of which is *Hanchen*, and is the finest of them all; being provided both within and without with deep and navigable Channels, and almost all the Corners of the Streets are adorn'd with lofty Triumphal Arches. Not far distant Westwards from the City Wall, there is a very fine Lake, the Circumference of which takes in several Miles; its Water falling into it from the Hills is very bright and clear, and is conveyed into the City by the abovementioned Channels.

Eastwards also near the City Wall, there runs a great River, called *Zhien Tangkiang*, which at that place is two Miles over, or as broad as the River *Kiam*, but not so deep, nor doth it extend so far, as passing through but one Province.

The other large Cities of this Province are *Kiaking Fu*, *Xanking Fu*, *Nimpo Fu*, *Kiuncheu Fu*, *Vendeu Fu*, *Niencheu Fu*, *Chinchem Fu*, *Kingkoa Fu*, *Taicheu Fu*, and *Ninchi Fu*; the whole Number being eleven. They preside over seventy six lesser Cities; to which is added *Viicheu Fu*, a City not less considerable than any of the rest, and from it are brought very great Quantities of Silk.

C H A P. X.

Of the Province of Kiangsi.

K IANGSI is a large Province which plentifully abounds with all necessaries to humane Life: it borders on *Nanking*. A Lake or small Sea of three hundred *French* Miles in bigness, called *Phojang Fu*, takes up the greatest part of it, and is as Navigable for great Ships as the main Sea: and is surrounded by a multitude of fine Towns and Cities. All the Rivers of this Province flow into this Meer, which discharges its self into the *Nankinsian* River, and by means of that is conveyed to the Ocean.

This Province contains thirteen large Cities, the chief of which is *Nanchang Fu*, which, tho' a great City, is yet ruined and reduced to a desolate condition by the Wars. *Vieichen Fu*, a City where the (*) *Porcelan* or *China* Earthen-ware is made, is also in this Province.

(*) That this Porcelain is a common Earthen Manufacture in *China*, is acknowledged by all; and that the oldest is esteemed the best, few are ignorant, partly on account of its beautiful whiteness, partly for its antiquity, and by reason none so good is at present made; because that the Emperor appoints a *Mandaryn* at the places where it is made, in order to choose for his use the finest pieces that are made, for which he notwithstanding pays but a very mean price; wherefore the Manufacturers not being able to set their own rate, or perhaps being but very ill paid, are discouraged from making it better than ordinary, and will neither take pains, nor endeavour to shew any great Art in the Manufacturing this Ware without being richly rewarded. Our Author here relates the manner of its composition in his usual plain manner. But others (*J. G. de Mendoza*) tells us that it is made of Chalk, which being beaten is thrown into a Pond closely walled in; in which it dissolves and boils up, a thin skum arising, of which the finest Porcelain is made, and the coarser of the remainder; for the nearer the bottom it grows, it becomes still coarser. They work this into what shapes they please in the same manner as we do, and gild or paint them according to their Fancies, which colouring or gilding never fades. This, saith he, is what we know of our own observation, and is more probable than that it should be composed of Sea Shells, which have lain a hundred Years under ground to putrifie, and are taken and up beaten, and then baked. *Nieuhoff* saith that it is made of a sort of Earth which is brought from a certain Hill in the Province of *Nanking*; that this Earth is not moist like Clay or Chalk, but dry like fine Sand; that they dissolve it in Water, but not that of *Hoeichen* in *Nankin* or the neighbouring parts, it being impossible to work it with that Water; the truth of which they have frequently been convinced of by unfortunate experience; but it is successfully tempered with the Water of *Vieichen Fu*, and the circumjacent places. That having wrought

This

This Porcelain is composed by the mixture of a certain sort of Sand with Earth : The Sand comes from the Province of *Nanking* : from these two Ingredients this *China* Earthen-ware is prepared, moulded into several shapes, dried and baked : and when it is become cold, or rather almost cold, the colours are laid on, and it is glased, once more put into the Oven, and baked in the shape the Artist desires it should remain in.

The other large Cities are *Kincheu Fu*, *Suicheu Fu*, *Nanhang Fu*, *Quoangsin Fu*, *Quienchang Fu*, *Linkiang Fu*, *Chungkeu Fu*, *Tungcheu Fu* and *Nangan Fu*.

These large preside over seventy eight lesser Cities.

it into Vessels of all shapes and sizes at pleasure, they first dry them in the Sun, before they venture them in the Oven, after which they put them into the Furnace and let it bake for fifteen Days, and stand fifteen Days after that to cool, before they take it out, &c. *Le Comte* saith, That it is made of a more solid Earth than ordinary, which is found in the Stone Quarries of this Province ; That this being cleansed and beaten to a fine Poudér, is moistened and made into Mass, which is long and thoroughly mixed and beaten, in order to clear and refine it ; That it is probable this Earth is moulded into several forms at pleasure by such a Wheel as is used for that purpose in *Europe* : That after that it is carefully dried in the Sun, when the Ground and Paint is laid on, and then is put into the Furnace, which is kept to a moderate even heat ; and, That being baked enough, after a long time staying there and becoming perfectly cold, it is taken out. I think it perfectly unnecessary to extract any more on this Head from other Authors, and since these Writers give the most probable account of that Manufacture, I shall leave off here.

C H A P. XI.

Of the Province of Huquang.

THIS and *Xienfi*, already described, are the two largest Provinces of *China*. This contains in its Jurisdiction fifteen Cities, and more plentifully abounds with Rice, Corn and Fish than all the rest: being alone very well able to furnish the whole Empire with sufficient quantities of Corn. For the space of ten Years this Province was miserably infested with Civil Wars and Uproars, which have cut off incredible numbers of Men.

The factious *Li Chuang*, already mentioned in the Description of *Leaotung*, was the cause of all this Blood-shed when he possessed himself of this Province.

And after a small series of Years Prince *Vii Sanguai* (who invited in the *Tartars* to his assistance, and was acknowledged by the Inhabitants of this Country) made himself Master of a great part of it, and for the space of several Years carried on a vigorous War against the Emperor.

There is a Lake in this Province, the Circumference of which is above four hundred *French* Miles: into which several Streams and Rivulets fall: and at the Mouth of it are several Mountains and small Islands, from whence and its burning as well as boisterous Waves, it is not unlike the main Sea. It is frequented by an incredible quantity of Ships, and from it descends a very large River which falls into the famous *Nanquingian* River.

On the four corners of this Province are situate four Cities: The first of which is called *Fochen*, and lies at the Mouth of the River, and is very strong and the Key of all the rest. *Vii Sanguai*, King of *Junan*, took it. The Emperor's Brother whom he had created King of this Province, assisted by the Imperial Forces, sat down before it with a very great Army, and very closely besieged it, losing a great many Men before it. It happened one Night either in this streight, to rid themselves of useless People, and unprofitable Mouths, or else in order to convey a great number safe over the Meer, they embarked on board three hundred Ships; but such a Tempestuous and fatal Storm arose, that all the three hundred Ships and fifty thousand Souls were sunk to the bottom.

But

But after the Death of King *Vii Sanguei*, this City as well as the whole Empire, fell intirely into the Emperor's hands. There are in this Province fifteen large Cities surnamed *Fu*, subordinate to which are an hundred twenty five lesser.

Vii Chang Fu, the Principal, is a very large City, which is intersected by a River, frequented by multitudes of Ships which drive a very considerable Trade here.

Cotton grows here in such vast abundance, that it is transported from hence to all other places.

The other large Cities are *Hanjang Fu*, *Huangcheu Fu*, *Gangling Fu*, *Sangiang Fu*, *Juniang Fu*, *Tegan Fu*, *Jangiang Fu*, *Jocheu Fu*, *Changxa Fu*, *Paoking Fu*, *Xincheu Fu*, *Changte Fu*, *Hangcheu Fu*, and *Jungcheu Fu*. The whole number being fifteen, whose Jurisdiction extends over one hundred and twenty five other Towns.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Province of Suchuen.

THIS Province which hath been ruined and laid waste by several Wars, is the least of all the *Chinese* Provinces, and is Mountainous: It produces Quick-Silver, Tin, Wine, and a considerable quantity of Rhubarb, all which are exported to other Countries: But the Rhubarb is not esteemed the best, nor are great quantities of it either used or carried off.

There are in this Country nine large Cities, the chief of which is *Chingtu Fu*; which is a very great and considerable City, but reduced to a very low estate by numerous Wars.

The other are *Lungan Fu*, *Xunking Fu*, *Hunghing Fu*, *Paoning Fu*, *Chungching Fu*, *Lingcheu Fu*, *Hiengcheu Fu*, *Mabu Fu*, and *Taoy Fu*; the whole making up the complement of nine, which preside over one hundred and three lesser Cities.

C H A P. XIII.

Of the Province of Queicheu.

THIS is a Mountainous Country which produces great quantities of Quick-silver, Copper and Tin: and contains fourteen large Cities, subordinate to which are twenty four lesser.

Tho' this Province hath but a very few Cities, its circumference is very extensive; but 'tis also depopulated and ruined by destructive Wars.

The chief City is *Queijang Fu*, and the rest are *Gangxun Fu*, *Tugven Fu*, *Cinquen Fu*, *Laiping Fu*, *Suchuen Fu*, *Sunan Fu*, *Xecang Fu*, *Tungin Fu*, *Pinjung Fu*, *Pingiuén Fu*, *Thaiding Fu*, *Veineng Fu*, and *Mesi Fu*: amounting together as above to fourteen large Cities, which preside over twenty four lesser.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Kingdom of Junan.

JUNAN, the farther-most Province of *China*, borders Westward on the Kingdom of *Lao*; Southwards on the Kingdom of *Tunkin*; and was formerly accounted amongst the *Chinese* Provinces: but now is only tributary to that Empire.

Cochinchina and *Tonquin* also formerly made one Kingdom: but were afterwards divided into two Kingdoms, and distributed to two Brothers, who carried on very Bloody and lasting Wars against each other.

This Province produces Gold, Silver, Copper, and Tin, in great abundance, and its Mountains, Rivulets and Streams afford several precious Stones, especially Rubies.

This Kingdom is very large, and was formerly together with the Title of King, and the absolute power of governing it at his pleasure, bestowed on Prince *Vii Sanguei*: He also kept his Royal Court, and built a very magnificent Palace there; but after his Death the whole Kingdom as well as the Court fell to Ruine and Desolation. The
Country

Country is partly Mountainous and partly even ground; the Air healthful and temperate, being neither too hot nor too cold; and in this Land is a Lake which is richly stored with Fish.

This Kingdom comprehends twenty large Cities, subordinate to which are sixty eight under Cities: The chief City is *Junan Fu*, a charming pleasant City, where Apples, Pears, Peaches, Plums, and all sorts of Fruits are incredibly plentiful.

The other great Cities are *Quongsi Fu*, *Kaihoa Fu*, *Cinsung Fu*, *Chingkian Fu*, *Quagnan Fu*, *Ivenking Fu*, *Chokium Fu*, *Viiting Fu*, *Tali Fu*, *Manghoroa Fu*, *Junchang Fu*, *Li Jikang Fu*, *Hoking Fu*, *Kintung Fu*, *Juning Fu*, *Xunning Fu*, *Xingan Fu*, *Tungoha Fu*, and *Sinkoa Fu*: These are the twenty above-mentioned Cities which preside over sixty eight.

CHAP. XV.

Of the fourteenth Province called Quoangsi.

THE greatest part of which is Mountainous Land, but the remainder very fertile: one point of it touches on the Kingdom of *Cochinchina*. Abundance of Cinnamon grows here, as doth also a certain very useful Wood to dye Red; which the *Portuguese* call *Sapao*: and which grows also very plentifully at *Siam*. Here are likewise several excellent sorts of Wood fit for the making of all sorts of Cabinet, Joyner or Carpenters Work; besides which great quantities of Rice are transported from hence to *Kanton*.

There are thirteen large, and eighty lesser subordinate Cities in this Province.

Queiling Fu, the chief City, is very agreeably situate in a pleasant place. This Province was formerly governed by a King who was a Prince of the antient Imperial Blood, but he dying without any Heir, his Dowager governed it for some time; but after her Death the Royal Court was ruined and demolished; in which state it is at present.

The remaining great Cities are *Pingeo Fu*, *Viicheu Fu*, *Zincheu Fu*, *Nanning Fu*, *Taiping Fu*, *Sunun Fu*, *Teucheu Fu*, *Zhincheu Fu*, *Singuen Fu*, *Chincheu Fu*, (near which grows a certain Plant of which is made a sort of Cloath-Stuff, that is worth more than Silk) *Suchin Fu*, and *Chingan Fu*: They altogether commanding eighty lesser Cities.

Very

Very good Porcelain is also made in this Province ; but the Earth from which it is prepared (as we have already shewn) (*) comes from one place, and the Water from another : possibly by reason that it is more efficacious and breaks the Earth finer, or incorporates better with it, or for other occult tho' natural Reasons : Thus one place borrows from another what it sometimes doubly restores.

As the greatest part of *China*, so this Province is very Populous, being alone able to raise a Million of Men able to bear Arms, and containing near two hundred thousand Families.

(*) Of which and the manner of making Porcelain, See *chap. X.* We might here enlarge on the difference of Earths and Waters, and what is most serviceable and peculiar to the making of these and other Manufactures ; so that when the same Ingredients are used in the same manner in places, but a few Miles, or indeed less than one distant from each other, and performed by the same hands, and in short in all particulars the same, except the difference of place, and yet the one proves good, the other bad. But this is a truth which very few are ignorant of, who are but acquainted with the daily difference in Bisket-baking, Brewing and others of the same kind. Wherefore we shall let our Author's Reasons pass, tho' they seem obscure and inscrutable to us.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Quoangtung the Fifteenth Province.

Quoangtung, 'called by the *Europeans* *Canton*, is the most Southern Province in *China*; is bounded by the Ocean, and is provided with a very good Haven at the end of a River, which is Navigable with great Ships up to *Canton*. The whole is a fertile Country, plentifully abounding with all necessaries; which draws a very considerable Trade hither, as well with the *Indians* as *Europeans*, from which latter above one hundred *English*, *Dutch* and *Portuguese* Ships annually come to and go from hence.

The last mentioned Nation (*) having made themselves Masters of *Macao*, a Neighbouring Peninsula, have there a very fine Haven, from whence they drive a very great Trade to *Canton*, but are obliged on that account to pay annually 50000, some say 500000 Laens to the Emperor, each Laen amounting to two *Rixdollars*.

They have possessed this Island above an hundred and ten Years. (Our Author wrote about the Year, 1694.) and they have strongly fortified and built several Churches and Monasteries upon it. The Commodities in which they chiefly trade with the *Chinese* are Pepper, Cinnamon, Cloves, Sanders (very useful in dying) Callicoes: The Medicinal Wood, *Pucho*; Ebony, red dying Wood; Wine and a sort of Birds Nests found in the above-mentioned Island. These Birds Nests are esteemed a very good Restorative Med'cine: They are commonly boiled for a quarter of an Hour, and not longer in Chicken broth; for if it be suffered to boil longer, the whole would dissolve: each Pound of this cost three, and sometimes four Laens; and the white is esteemed best. *Arecca* being the Fruit of a certain Palm, which is hard, bitter and astringent, is also brought hither to be sold: The *Indians* commonly chew

(*) *Macao*, saith *Le Comte*, is famous for the former vast commerce of the *Portuguese* there, before the *Hollanders* justled them out of almost all *India*: And at present they are not able to keep many Forces there. Here is a very good Road for Ships to ride; the Haven indeed is but small, but safe and very commodious. All Customs on imported Goods are the Emperors: and tho' the *Portuguese* have yet a sort of form of Government there, yet (as we have elsewhere hinted more largely) they are subject to the *Mandaryns* in all cases which concern the Emperor.

it with the leaves which they call Betel; which washed in a little Lime-water become red: and the Spittle of those who chew it is of a Blood colour: And any Person not accustomed to this usage upon trying of it turns very red in the face and inebriated.

This Plant is greatly celebrated and very much used in *India*; they biting and chawing it the whole Day, as perpetually as some smook Tobacco in other places: It is hot and dry, warms the Stomach and helps Digestion: It is also boiled in Water, and being astringent, is used in case of Fluxes. There are also brought hither Rhinocero's Horns, Ivory, Furrs, and Red Lacca, from whence the finest sticks of Sealing-wax are prepared: This Drugg is the Excrement of a sort of Worms or Ants, which sticks to the Leaf and Wood of the Plants. We shall hereafter treat of the Fruits.

This Province abounds with brown and white Sugar; and great quantities of Silk are wrought here, of which all sorts of Goods are made, and transported hence to *India* and other places. The *Indians* also buy here great quantities of Porcelain, Tin, Iron, and Copper-work, Paper and several other Merchandises and Rarities, most of which are paid for in Silver; but on the other side a great deal of Gold is transported from *China* to *India*.

The chief City of this Kingdom is called *Quangchen Fu*; an extraordinary fine City: which is stocked with and trades in all sorts of *European* and *Indian* Commodities. About four *French* Miles distant from this City is a Village called *Fuxan*, where the greatest Trade in all *China* is drove: for the Inhabitants are richly stocked with all sorts of Manufactures: And it is reported that sixty thousand Families live in this Village.

This Province hath suffered very much by War. In the beginning of the Revolution of the Empire, the chief City was besieged by two petty Kings, Princes of the (*) Imperial Blood, with a very great Army, and for above the space of one Year, furiously assaulted

(*) These Princes were afterwards, one of them King of *Quanton*, and the other of *Fokien*: But those Monarchies were but of short duration; nor did they devolve on their Heirs; for one after the other they were both continually accused of some Crime or other; but indeed the true reason of their fall was, that reasons of State would not permit the Jealous *Tartar* to suffer any Princes of the Antient Race, of which the *Chinese* were not a little fond. This was also the chief reason why *Osangouei's* Posterity were killed, whatever specious pretences were made use of to colour the Barbarity; such were those drawn from the rigorous *Chinese* Laws, which directed the punishment of Treason to the Ninth Generation, and that they were thereby forced to it.

and bombarded with Cannon and great Pieces, by which part of the Wall was demolished; notwithstanding which it was not taken by that means, but delivered by the treachery of a Person, to whom the chief command of one of the City Gates was entrusted, who tempted by a great Summ of Money, and larger Promises, let in the Enemy; after which he received the just reward of his Treason; for instead of the promised riches he was stifled in Sand, after the Enemy had before cut all to pieces that came in their way, and plundered the whole City: after which they over-run the whole Province.

This City was computed to contain eight or ten hundred thousand Families: And without the Fort or Castle is two Mile in compass.

One of these Princes was made King of this Country, and built a Magnificent and Royal Palace in the City; but being afterwards accused of fowl practices against the Emperor, he was bereft of his Life. And the other Prince in reward of his Heroick Actions was created King of *Fokien*.

The first Prince or King being killed, his Family, Household Goods, and Royal Treasure, by the Emperor's Order were carried to *Peking*: His Treasure indeed very justly deserved the name of Royal; for that alone amounted to above one hundred Millions, besides other riches, and the most splendid Furniture of the Court.

This Province comprehends ten large Cities, which exercise a superior Jurisdiction over seventy four subordinate ones: The superior Cities are *Quangcheu Fu*, already described; *Nankiang Fu*, *Xancheu Fu*, *Hoycheu Fu*, *Xanking Fu*, *Kiaochu Fu*, *Luicheu Fu*, *Liencheu Fu*, *Chaucheu Fu*, and *Kincheu Fu*, situate on the Island *Ainan*, (*) which is very considerable on account of the great Trade driven there with the Kingdoms of *Tonkin* and *Cochinchina*. The compass of this Isle is three hundred Miles, and on it are thirteen lesser Cities. Here is also a very fine Pearl Fishery; and Aloes is very common. That Plant grows like a sort of Reed or Flag, about a Finger thick, but forty or fifty Arms in height, and is a very good Med'cine on several occasions.

(*) *Le Comte* whom we have so often quoted, relates that there is upon this Island of *Ainang* or *Hainang*, a standing Water, in which Fish petrifies. I have my self (saith he) thrown Crabs into it, and observed the Claws to be consolidated and so far changed that they differed very little from Flints. But these Miracles of Nature are not so peculiar to *China*, for we meet with them elsewhere (adds he) and withal a great many more prodigies, and occult qualities of nature are observable there, but yet all that the *Chinese* say must not be believed; not but there may be some truth in whatever they relate, but in the dishing up they are too apt to interlard it with so much fabulous stuff, as frequently obliges us to doubt the truth of the whole story. However the Reader ought not to doubt of the truth of the petrification of Crabs and other things, by reason that he may at pleasure see that, and other Metamorphoses in *Mr. S. Schynvoets Museum at Amsterdam*.

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Kingdom of Fokien.

THIS Province hath suffered very much by several Wars ; and before the present Viceroy governed it as a Viceroyalty, was ruled by a Potent Prince ; who when the *Tartar* seized the Empire, would neither surrender his Realm, nor acknowledge any subjection to him : But being treacherously invited to Court, on the pretext of treating concerning some important State Affairs there ; and tho' he was forewarned, and smelt the design, he resolved to venture thither, leaving the Regency in his Sons hands ; being the less suspicious, by reason that he thought that having left the Government in the hands of so brave a Prince as his Son, the Court therefore would not dare to detain or injure him ; and accordingly he went to the Emperor, but was kept there. The more prudent Son, tho' daily invited, persisted to refuse that favour, being at the same time convinced ; his Father was become an involuntary Prisoner at Court : At which being highly incensed, he began, and for several Years bravely on a vigorous War against the Emperor : who on the other side being impatient to reunite this Province to the Empire, was not wanting in the use of all means which tended to compass that end, pursuant to which he raised a vast Army in order to subdue the Young Prince : Who seeing this numerous Host approach him, and finding himself unable to resist such a Potent Emperor, repulse his disproportionate Force, and gain his point, tho' indeed at several times he gave them very severe blows ; he resolved to quit his Country and ship himself off. He accordingly prepared a Fleet, embarked with his Forces, and steered with them to *Tajoan* or the Island of *Formosa* ; where he landed, drove out the *Dutch*, and made himself Master of that charming Isle. This Prince is by the Natives called *Quoesing*, but by others *Coxinga*.

The *Dutch East-India* Company had possessed this Island, and had very strongly fortified it.

At the time of the *Chinese* Commotions, and the great Revolution of that Empire, it was utterly neglected and abandoned to the next who pleased to give himself the trouble to accept it. The *Spaniards* of the *Manilhas* or *Lusong*, being but fifteen or twenty Miles distant, and being informed hereof, seized, fortified, and built a City on it ; which was afterwards

afterwards conquered by the *Dutch*, who becoming Masters of the Island, built several other Forts upon it ; and designed by reason of its very commodious Situation, to have made it one of the most considerable Trading Places in all *India*, and the bordering Realms.

Formosa is indeed a very beautiful Island, which is naturally fruitful, and the Air healthful as well as temperate ; extraordinarily commodiously situate in the Neighbourhood of *Japan*, *China*, and the *Manilhas*, in order to trade vastly both Eastwards and Westwards ; it being possible for Ships to come thither, and go from thence, the whole Year round.

When the above-mentioned *Chinese* Prince *Quoesing* or *Coxinga* landed, there were several large as well as small Ships in the Haven ; and upon the Island lived nine or ten thousand *Hollanders*, who were as rich, and lived as well as they do any where besides. But notwithstanding the *Dutch East-India* Company was so strong there, the *Chinese* left their native Country, and blocked up the Haven with their Fleet ; they bravely attack'd the *Netherlanders*, and conquered, burnt, kill'd, or destroy'd them. They landed their Forces, took the City, Forts, and the whole Island ; they also exercised several Cruelties on their conquered Enemies, of whom they killed several, and cut off the Hands and Feet of some, and the Ears and Noses of others, after which they sent these miserable Wretches on board three Ships to *Batavia*.

After this Success they dispatched away an Envoy to the *Spaniards* at the *Manilhas*, in order to demand a Recognition and Tribute of them ; withal threatening if they refused, to treat them as they had done the *Dutch* : But the *Spaniards* slighting their Menaces, peremptorily refused to comply with their Demands. Before we take our leave of this Subject, we shall relate part of what happen'd to this Prince (*), when at *Taioan*. He had dispatched three Ships freighted with Silver, under the Conduct of some of his Officers, with Orders to unlade it at *Taioan*. These Officers, instead of carrying it where 'twas bound, bring it to the Emperor of *China*, who appoints 'em safe Conduct, and praises the Enterprize. But this Prince very much enraged at the Treachery, raises an Army of above a hundred thousand Men, and equips an innumerable Fleet, on board of which with utmost dispatch he shipped his Forces, and unexpected sailed up the great *Nankingian* River, beat both Army and Fleet,

(*) He is by some Writers called *Conesius*, he is also called *Coxinga*.

by Water and by Land, all round about and before the City of *Nanking*. To which he also laid such close Siege, that he plainly saw that it was feasible, and absolutely intended to master it in a very few Days: Which he had certainly done, had he not declared to his Army, that it was his Pleasure, that that Day should be celebrated with all manner of Mirth and Jollity, in remembrance of his Birth-day, which accordingly began with all imaginable Expressions of excessive Joy, but ended with a bitter Farewel; for the *Nankingers* having notice of it, and being inform'd of the negligence of their Guards, (those upon Duty, as well as those who were not, being all drunk) took that Opportunity to make vigorous Sallies on the Besiegers from all Parts, fell upon them in the midst of their Debauch, beat them out of their Trenches, and killed the whole Army, except a few who serv'd to carry the News.

The Prince with his small Remainder returns to his Island, and is reported to be so much affected with this scandalous Loss, that running distracted he bit off a piece of his Tongue, which occasioned such a Flux of Blood, as could not timely be staunch'd, so that he died of it.

His Son, who succeeded to rule after him, being young, and very little experienc'd in Military Affairs, his Father's Loss remain'd unreveng'd, and thus the fairest Opportunity imaginable of taking *Nanking* was irretrievably lost by an unseasonable rejoicing, and a scandalous Debauch.

On the other side, the Emperor could not rest, till, in order to revenge the injurious Affront offer'd to him and the late Imperial Metropolis, by this unexpected IncurSION, and to prevent any such Attempt for the future, he had mann'd out a Fleet of Four hundred and fifty Sail; and laded them with Forces enough to take *Taioan*, which was entirely encompassed and block'd up by the Fleet: But contrary to all surmise, the young Prince taking the Advantage of a favourable Wind, tho' he had but forty Ships in all, yet by the assistance of his excellent Sea Officers, he heroically attack'd, beat, utterly ruined and destroyed the Emperor's great Fleet. Who thus by dire Experience was instructed not to have too mean Thoughts of his Enemy, and so resolv'd to take juster Measures: Accordingly he renews his Attempt the next Year, and not only sends more Ships and Forces, but took care that they should more cautiously encompass and closely shut up all the Avenues to the whole Island, and kept it in this blocked Condition. Mean while the Prince slipping no Opportunity to gall his Enemy, imagining the Coast clear, tho' provided with a very small number
of

of Ships, boldly flew at his too powerful Enemy; but was beaten out of the Sea, and forced to fly back to his Island, where he bravely defended himself the remainder of that Year: But the Island being encompass'd, and consequently a Stop put to all Commerce, besides which it was also afflicted with a very great Drought, there having been no Rain for five Years, and no Relief appearing, he at last, being driven to the last Extremity by War and Famine, found himself forced to surrender his Country, and submit to the Emperor's Mercy, who ordered him to be brought to *Peking*. At Sight of him the Emperor (touched by the tender Years, and the heroick Deportment of the Princely Youth) not only spar'd his Life, but afterwards made him a Present of the mentioned Island, and the Royal Title of King of *Formosa*, which he accordingly at present governs.

Thus the whole Empire of *China*, in the Year 1682, was again subjected to one Superior; and the Island *Taioan* or *Formosa* submitted to the Jurisdiction of the Province of *Fokien*, with the additional Appellative *Fu*, and accordingly number'd amongst one of the great Cities of that Province.

Its Compass takes in a Circuit of Five hundred Miles: Sugar and Bucks-skins are very plentiful there; and the Island is about forty Miles distant from the Firm Land.

Focken Fu, that beautiful and large City, is the chief of this Province, and is very famous for its daily Commerce with the *Japonese*, *Indians*, and *Europeans*.

This Province contains nine large Cities, amongst which, as is already hinted, the mentioned Island of *Formosa* is reckoned as one. Three of these nine are very considerable and large Cities, to which is added an Island, *Haimui*, which is about eleven or twelve Miles in circuit, and is provided with the finest Haven in the whole Province; and formerly was possessed by the above-mentioned Prince of *Formosa*, and for a long time bravely held out against the Emperor; but sometime afterwards it was conquered by one of the two Kings, which, as is before hinted, governed, the one *Canton*, the other *Fokien*. Both of them were rewarded for their great Actions with Donatives; but the King of *Fokien* rebelled against the Emperor.

This King of *Fokien* at the same time prosecuted a vigorous War against the Prince of *Taioan* by Water, and the Emperor by Land; but being too feeble to resist them both, submitted himself to the Emperor, on whose Command being come to *Peking*, he and his Son were put to Death.

In these Civil Dissentions in this Empire, there fell by the above-mention'd Wars, above Forty millions of Men. The Names of the remaining large Cities, which should be specified e'er we quit this Province, are, *Zhivencheu Fu*, *Hinghoa Fu*, *Chaohen Fu*, *Jenping Fu*, *Quien Fu*, *Tingcheu Fu*, *Changefu*, and *Taioan Fu*, or *Formosa*. These nine Capital Cities preside over sixty others.

The Number of Cities in the whole Empire amounts to Seventeen hundred; to particularize the Names of all which, would take up too much time, and tire the Reader, wherefore we have only mention'd the chief of them. I have but barely touched on some Events, the Story of which is very well known, they happening mostly within the compass of our remembrance, and during the Reigns of the last *Chinese* and the present *Tartarian* Families; for it would have taken up too much of the Reader's Patience, and my Time, to have descended to particulars: Wherefore I chose rather to supply this short Description mostly from my own Knowledge and Observation, having in the mean time, in the acquist of the one, and making the other, suffered great Scandals and Afflictions for Christ's sake, as well as frequently put up my Supplications to him, and implored his Aid in time of need, as also that he would please to make his Grace known to the World, which I hereby do, through his great Mercy; desiring the Reader to give as much Credit to these few Pages, as he would to a Person, that chiefly writes the bare result of his own Knowledge and Observation, by which Rule his Pen hath been guided as well in the future as past Part of this Tract.

I proceed now to treat of the mutual distances of Provinces, and at the same time describe the People of the Country, the Progress of the Christian Religion; the Rivers, Lakes, Shipping, Bridges, and Walls: The *Chinese* Moral Precepts, Education of their Children, Complements, Good Manners, and Learning: Their Trees, Fruits, and Vegetables: Neighbouring Islands, Provinces, Kingdoms, and People; Concluding with the former *Chinese* Emperors, continuing to and ending with the present Emperor *Canghi*.

C H A P. XVIII.

Of the mutual butting, bounding, and distances of Kingdoms and Provinces.

THE Metropolis of the Empire, *Xuntien Fu*, otherwise called *Peking*, is situate two hundred Miles distant from *Leaotung*, (I need not here repeat, that I all along mean *French Miles*, or an Hour's walk) and *Xantung*; about one hundred and sixty Miles from *Peking*. *Xansi* is one hundred and sixty, *Xiensí* two hundred and fifty, *Nanking* two hundred and sixty, *Honan* one hundred and thirty, *Kiangsi* four hundred and thirty, *Chekiang* three hundred and fifty, *Suchuen* six hundred and fifty, *Huquang* three hundred and fifty, *Queicheu* eight hundred, *Funan* one thousand, *Quoangsi* eight hundred and fifty, *Quantong* eight hundred, and *Fokien* seven hundred and fifty Miles or Hours from *Peking*. This is the Distance of all the Provinces from the Court, computing from the Metropolis to each respective Capital City.

From *Nanking* to *Xantung* is reckoned two hundred Miles, to *Honan* one hundred and eighty, to *Huquang* two hundred, to *Chekiang* one hundred, to *Kiangsi* one hundred and sixty. This is the Distance betwixt *Nanking* and the mentioned Capital Cities.

Xiensí is distant from *Honan* two hundred Miles, from *Xansi* one hundred and fifty, and from *Suchuen* two hundred.

Huquang is distant from *Kiangsi* one hundred and thirty, from *Honan* one hundred and sixty, from *Suchuen* two hundred, from *Quoangsi* three hundred and sixty, and from *Canton* four hundred Miles.

Chekiang lies two hundred Miles distant from *Kiangsi*, and above three hundred from *Peking*.

Canton is three hundred and fifty Miles from *Fokien*, four hundred from *Quoangsi*, and three hundred and eighty from *Kiangsi*.

Funan is distant from *Quoangsi* three hundred Miles, from *Queicheu* three hundred and thirty, and from the Kingdom of *Laos* three hundred. These are the mutual Distances of the Capital Cities, computed according to the common Land-measure. [But the Dutch Translator thinks it proper to inform the Reader, that the Latin and

German Transcripts of this Treatise, which he was to render, differ'd somewhat, which he could not otherways reconcile, than by adjusting them to the Maps, in order, by that means, to come as near to Truth as possible.]

The Maritime Provinces are, *Xantung*, *Nanking*, *Chekiang*, *Fokien*, and *Quantung* or *Canton*.

Nanking, *Chekiang*, *Hukwang*, *Kiangsi*, *Junan*, *Canton*, and *Fokien*, are esteemed the finest Provinces.

Xantung, *Xansi*, *Xienshi*, *Peking*, *Honan*, and *Leaotung*, are of the middle sort.

But *Queicheu*, *Suchuen*, and *Quoangsi*, are accounted the worst of all, by reason they are very mountainous, and very much impoverish'd by the Warrs.

The largest Provinces are, *Xienshi*, *Huquang*, *Nanking*, *Junan*, *Kiangsi*, and *Chekiang*; each of these larger Provinces is above three hundred Miles wide, and much longer. Compared with these the middle-siz'd Provinces are *Peking*, *Xantung*, *Quoangsi*, *Queicheu*, *Honan* and *Fokien*, and so accounted, because they are not above two hundred Miles broad; and also *Quantung*, which is but one hundred and fifty Miles long, but full three hundred Miles broad; by which Rule *Xansi*, *Leaotung* and *Suchuen*, are likewise reckoned but small Provinces, by reason they are but about one hundred and fifty Miles broad, and one hundred and sixty in length.

The principal Maritime Trading Cities, Towns, and Places, which are frequented by the *Indians*, *Japonese*, and *Europeans*, are the following ten, viz. *Canton*, the Isles of *Macao* (*), *Hainan*, and *Chaocheu*; all which belong to, and are dependant on the Province of *Quoantung*: And, belonging to *Fokien* are *Fochen Fu*, and the Islands *Haimui* and *Tajouan* or *Formosa*; these drive on a vast Trade with the *Europeans* and *Indians*: Besides which there are also two Cities in *Nanking*.

(*) The Island of *Macao*, which is already mentioned in the sixteenth Chapter, belongs at present to the *Portuguese*; and they have upon it a Fort and City, if that Name may be given to a few Houses, which are not enclosed by any Wall: This Place is very famous for the Trade which the *Portuguese* drove there before the *Dutch East-India Company* chased them out of the principal places in *India*. What they at present possess here, is by favour of the *Chinese*, to whom they are obliged to pay blind Obedience, if they intend quietly to enjoy what they hold: All Customs for Goods imported here are paid to the Emperor; and tho' the *Portuguese* preserve a sort of Form of Government here, their Power extends no farther than to Cases which do not concern the *Chinese*; for they are otherwise subordinate to the Jurisdiction of the Mandarins of *Quoantung* or *Canton*.

and *Xanghai*, and the City *Nimpo* in the Province of *Chekiang*; all which three deal very considerably with the *Japonefe*. In the Province of *Xinsi* or *Xiensì* is the City of *Zinning*, which is the Seat of a vast Land Commerce with the Western *Tartars*, *Mogols*, *Tibetts* and *Moscovites*.

C H A P. XIX.

Of the Natives of China, and the Christians there.

IN the Villages and Towns, as well as Cities, in *China*, the People are reckoned not by Ten or hundred thousands, but by Millions: Their Numbers are so vast, and *China* so prodigious populous, that it really seems incredible; and those who have taken a View of this Country from an exalted Place, have always compar'd the Number of Men to that of Ants creeping in Crouds amongst one another. They are indeed so numerous, that common and very indifferent Houses are charged with five or six Families: And the Roads, Streets and Lanes, are so crouded, that it is scarce possible to pass without jostling one another. Which will appear yet more surprising, if it be consider'd, that no Woman appears in the Publick Passages in any part of *China*, except at *Peking*; they not going on foot, but being carried in covered Seats or Chairs, wherever they please.

The most populous Cities are *Nanking*, *Hangcheu*, *Sucheu*, *Peking*, *Fangcheu*, *Canton*, *Fochen*, *Viichang Fu*, *Chengcheu*, and *Zuencheu*, besides several others. Not to mention the fabulous Relations concerning the first planting and peopling of Countries, I am of Opinion that the first Inhabitants of this Empire were the Descendants of *Shem*, *Noah's* Son; for in the Division of the World they seem to be all distributed in *Asia*, of which *China* is part: And at the Confusion of *Babel*, traversing that Quarter of the World, probably settled here, because they found no part of it better than this, which is blessed with a healthful Air, that's temperate with regard to both Heat and Cold: The Fertility of the Pasture Grounds, which richly feed all sorts of Cattle, invited their Choice and Preference, and in a manner forced them to take up their Abode here. After which, Experience confirm'd the Happiness of their Choice, by their being satiated not only with all Necessaries to Human Life, but even with

whatever Luxury could wish. Industry, Art, and Prudence, improv'd the natural Liberality of the Soil, and engaged the Neighbours to think *China* the Garden of the Universe, and its Inhabitants the wisest and most polite People in the World, and that those of their Neighbours who succeeded best in the imitation of them, were next them esteemed the most intelligent People of *Asia*. Bouyed up by this vast Reputation, they extended the Limits of their Empire far beyond the Bounds of *China*: And not only *Tunchin*, *Cochin-China*, and *Laos*, besides several neighbouring and circumjacent Islands; but the Kingdoms of *Siam*, *Pegu*, part of *Tartary*, *Camboja*, and *Japan*, have been subordinate to them, as may be sufficiently proved by their complying with and continuing to make use of the same Usages and common Customs; which is also confirm'd by the *Chinese* Empire, its being known to be above One thousand Years old, and to have always retained the same Language, Doctrine, Government, and Habit, down to this time. Tho' indeed one Exception lies to that General Rule, which happen'd about fifty Years past; and that was the changing their Fashion of wearing their Hair, when the *Tartar* overpower'd their Monarchy; but that Alteration was a coercive Acknowledgment of their wretched Slavery.

The *Chinese* formerly wore long Hair, of which they were not a little proud, adorning it with Gold Wire, and firmly believing that they should be drawn up to Heaven by it; which doubled the Severity of the Command that obliged them to part with it, and comply with the *Tartarian* Fashion; and engaged them rather to sustain the Fatigues of a cruel War, at the expence of a great many Lives (*), than suffer their Hair to be cut off: But the *Tartar* had proceeded too far to be opposed. However, the Prudence of the Emperor (†), and the Mildness of his Government, permitting the

(*) The *Chinese* (saith *Le Comte*) would rather have renewed a bloody War with the *Tartars*, than quit their antient Fashions with regard to Dress, and most of them had rather have had their Heads than their Hair cut off. A piece of Extravagance full as ridiculous as a just distinction between the value of the Hair and Head, as well as between the Ornaments of the former and the latter, can render it: But yet it must be acknowledg'd as a wonderful instance of the Constancy of that Nation; for when the *Tartars* overpower'd them, they had not alter'd the Fashion of their Dresses for the space of one thousand Years; which Stability can only be ascribed to the good and perpetual regular Government of the Empire, and the strict Observance and Execution of the Laws, even in the most minute particulars.

(†) What is storied of the first *Tartarian* Emperor of *China*, who was invited to *Ousangouei*'s assistance against the Rebel *Lisoung*, is very well worth observation: and
Chinese

Chinese (called Mandaryns) quietly to enjoy their important Posts, somewhat alleviated the melancholly Reflections, occasioned by this Loss, and their Slavery; for the *Tartars* having subjected *China*, did not shew themselves sollicitous to make any alteration of its antient Form of Government; and, as I just now hinted, the *Chinese* Mandaryns remained in the same State and Character as before, only having an equal number of *Tartars* added to them: And by these subtle Measures the Foreign Power, which they were always jealous of, stole in upon them. And this Maxim was so well observ'd, that all the Courts of Justice, from the highest to the lowest, were equally supply'd with a *Tartarian* and *Chinese* Judge; and indeed the whole Government is jointly entrusted into the hands of *Tartarians* and *Chinese*, and to this present time, peaceably sway'd, in subordination to the Emperor of *China* and *Tartary*.

In the Reign of the present Emperor, the Christian Religion is more freely indulg'd than ever before; so that we ought not to despair, but that the whole Empire of *China* may in time embrace that Faith which only leads to Salvation. And from the first entrance of the Missionaries into that Empire, they have continually used their utmost Industry, to engage that subtle Nation to embrace Christianity, and plant that saving Doctrine, which is at present very widely spread in *China*.

Kanghi, the present reigning Emperor, in the Year 1692, granted to the Missionaries and Jesuits, Freedom for all the World to worship God in their Churches, which is the same as to become Christians; and this Edict, pursuant to the Emperor's Pleasure, was confirm'd and ratified by the Supreme Court of Justice of the Empire; and empower'd those who thought fit to cause themselves to be baptiz'd, afterwards freely to exercise the Christian Religious Worship,

the Stratagem made use of to inveigle the *Chinese*, insensibly to submit to the *Tartarian* Yoke, was as great a Masterpiece of Subtlety as ever was heard of, and was as follows. The *Tartar* in compliance with *Oufangouei*'s request, comes with a potent Army to his assistance; but before the Prince enter'd the Field against the Enemy, the *Tartarian* King advis'd him to command his *Chinese* Soldiers to cloath themselves like his Forces, wear *Tartarian* Caps, and cut their Hair in the same manner, in order, saith he, to deceive the Rebel *Lifoung*, and cause him to believe that we are all *Tartars*. *Oufangouei* blinded by Ambition and vindictive Rage, readily follows the *Tartar*'s Counsel, without the least Suspicion of the Snake in the Grass, and as the *Chinese* Proverb hath it, introduces the Tygers in order to drive out the Dogs: Thus that Nation possessed themselves of the mighty *Chinese* Empire, which they govern with an Absolute Sway, and keep the Natives under a strict rein.

without the least interruption, which before that time was prohibited: a favour which hath long been earnestly desired, and before which the Christians have run through sore Persecutions: But now by the supereminent Divine Goodness we are delivered from sore afflictions and oppositions, for which we continually return our thanks to Almighty God.

About the middle of the sixteenth Century, *Francis Xavier* designing to plant the Gospel here, died in sight of Land as he was coming hither from *Japan*: After him several Missionaries and Priests came into this Country with the same intent, viz. *Martinus Xerrada*, *Geronimo Marino*, *Michael Rugieri*, *Piedro Alfaro*, and *Matthias Ricci*, besides several others, who a little before the Year 1600, laid the first foundation of this good work in the Reign of the Emperor *Vanlie*. Father *Ricci*, whom we named last, distinguished himself above all the rest; he converted several of the Nobility; and acquired a very great reputation; He perfectly understood, and spoke the *Chinese* Language; and being a sedulous and faithful Labourer in the Spiritual Vineyard, made the most successful beginning, on which account he hath always been thought the first of the Missionaries.

Whilst this Father *Ricci* was in *China*, and in the Reign of the Emperor *Vanlie*, the *Tartars* made a descent into *China*, took several Cities and conquered several Countries; but were shortly repulsed by that Illustrious Prince, after which he lived in perfect Peace, and in the Year 1620, the eight and fiftieth of his Age, and forty eighth of his Reign, he died. Not long before which, or about the Year 1615. arose a furious Persecution, which threatned the utter Extirpation of the Faith that was so lately planted. These exorbitant Cruelties were principally pushed on by *Chinkio*, one of the chief Magistrates of *Nanking*; and by a malicious cunning the Shepherds were the most vigorously attacked, in order the more successfully to destroy the Flock; but after they had suffered great afflictions for the space of six Years, their Persecutor was punished by Death, and the Church recovering her former liberty, began to increase daily, especially after the arrival of Father *John Adams*, (*) whose Learning, Mathematical Knowledge, and Prudent Conduct, acquired for him one of the chief places in the Emperor's favour, and the good Opinion of the whole Court; which furnished him with an opportunity of farther propagating, and

(*) By other Authors he is named *Adam Schaal*, and by *Nieuboff*, *Adam Schaliger*.

confirming Christianity. And tho' in the interim the great Revolution happened, which transferred the Crown (†) to the *Tartarian*, from the *Chinese* Family, by the Death of *Zungchi*, the last of the Race of *Taiminga*, which had swayed the Imperial Crown for the space of two hundred and eighty Years, and produced in that time sixteen Emperors; yet the Sagacious Father *Adams* rendered himself so perfectly agreeable to the new *Tartarian* Court, that he became President (**) of the Tribunal of Mathematicians; and continued, tho' not without Envy and Persecution, the Emperor's Favourite; and after having enjoyed that Post for several Years, died in 1665.

Tamquamsien, the wicked and Principal Instrument of the most cruel Persecution (*) that ever was in *China*, succeeded Father *Adams* in his Presidents charge: but his Reign did not continue long, he being opposed by Father *Ferdinand Verbiest*, who clearly demonstrated his abilities for that Post to be far superiour to those of the Persecutor, wherefore he was promoted in his place, and *Tamquamsien* fell into such a disgrace, that he narrowly escaped a Sentence of Death, as the reward of his Persecution against Father *Adams*; a stop being put to that Prosecution by the especial Mercy of the Emperor.

After the Death of Father *Ferdinando Verbiest* in the Year 1688. which was lamented by the Emperor himself in a Funeral Elegy, he was succeeded in the before-mentioned charge of President of the Mathematical Tribunal by Father *Philip Grimaldi*: Who filled that Post as laudibly as his Predecessor, and advanced himself to such a high place in the Imperial favour, that in the Year 1689, he was sent Ambassador from the Emperor into *Europe*, to adjust some important Affairs in *Muscovy*, with the Great Czar; his Presidents Post in the Tribunal, being worthily supplied till his return by the Fathers, *Thomas* (†) *Pereira* and *Anthony Thomas*.

(†) We shall have occasion to speak more at large concerning the Revolution of the Empire.

(**) In 1654, being the tenth Year of the Reign of *Cunchi*, the present Emperor *Cambi's* Father, Father *Schaal* was made second President of the Tribunal.

(*) This Persecution happened about the Year 1664; when the old Calumnies were revived, and improved with new ones, and the Missionaries opposed by so many and Potent Enemies, that they were drove out of their Churches, laden with Irons, and kept for ten Months close Prisoners: Which Father *Adams* himself did not escape, but was hurried from his Preferments to Chains, and condemned to a Capital punishment: But God prevented it and restored him, and his Persecutor *Gobien* was condemned.

(†) This is the same Father *Pereira* which in Conjunction with Father *Gerbillon*, was twice sent, they being dignified with the Title of *Mandaryns* of the third rank, as Interpreters in the great Embassy, and Treaty of Peace at *Nepchou*, (by the *Muscovites* call'd

The number of Christians daily encreased with the respect paid to the Jesuits by the Court, and the Emperor's zealous Inclination for the *European* Arts and Sciences, insomuch that the least number of Christians computed to be in *Peking* was 16000; In *Nanking* 100000. In the abovesaid large trading Village or Town, *Xanghui*, there were but ten thousand: In the Province of *Chekiang* are reckoned seven or eight thousand: In *Koangsi* they amount to about ten thousand: In *Huquang* there are six or seven thousand: In *Canton* about ten thousand: In *Fokien* above five thousand; and in *Xiensí* about three thousand: The intire number of Christians throughout the whole Empire being computed to amount to two hundred thousand. (*) But the number of Jesuits and Shepherds, which carefully watch this Flock, and sedulously endeavour the conversion of others, is not above sixty.

Nogovium) and of whom it is reported to their great Honour, that they suggested the Measures which rendred the Treaty of Peace betwixt the *Muscovites* and *Chinese* successful. To which purpose *Gerbillon* went several times alone to the *Muscovite* Camp, and so far convinced that Nation of their true Interest, that the Treaty of Peace betwixt the two Empires was ratified, and sworn on the 3d of *September*, 1689.

(*) *Le-Comte*, whom we have so often cited, expresses himself thus; There are above two hundred Churches or Chappels, consecrated to the Worship of the true God, which are subordinate to the direction of their Ecclesiastical Superiors. *Peking*, *Nanking* and *Macao* are become a sort of Dioceses, which are submitted to the Spiritual Government of their respective Ordinaries or Bishops. The Jesuits who were the first Founders of this Mission, always keep a greater number of their Society there, than there is of any other Order. And accordingly when I left that Country, their number amounted to about Forty: but since that time the Fathers *Grimaldi* and *Spinola* have added several others: But what can Forty, or suppose Sixty Labourers do in such a large Vineyard? But after all their endeavours are crowned with such extraordinary success, that in the space of five or six Years the number of Converts from Paganism is computed to amount to fifty thousand. Besides which there are annually baptized above four or five thousand Children. But what greatly encourages us is our steadfast hope of converting the Emperor in process of time, the infallible consequence of which will be the conversion of the whole Empire. I could not (adds he) come at an exact account of the number of Believers here, but verily believe that those who rate them at three hundred thousand, are not very wide of truth.

C H A P. XX.

Of the great Wall, the Rivers, Shipping, Lakes, Bridges, Sluces, and Havens, belonging to the Chinese.

THIS prodigious Wall is called by the *Chinese* in their own Language *Vauli Tcham Tcham*, and was built some Centuries before Christ's time by the *Chinese* Emperor, *Chien Chu Voang* (*), in order to prevent the Incursions of the Western *Tartars*: for which end it is extended from the *Leaotungian*, or Oriental Sea, far beyond the middle of *Xienfi*, and includes the Provinces of *Peking*, *Xanfi*, and almost all the mentioned Country of *Xienfi*: Its length is computed directly as a right Line (as is already hinted in the 2d Chapter) (†) is above 650 *French* Miles, but reckoned as a Curve-line amounts to one thousand: Whence its *Chinese* name was derived, which imports a thousand Miles (others say a thousand Furlongs); It is full eight Arms or large Ells thick, and six high. It is not a little surprizing to see this bulky Wall in a manner skip over the most terrible and steep Hills, and to observe three or four lofty Towers or Forts within the compass of every Mile, as well as its having run through so many Ages, and its being in such good case at present.

The two Principal Rivers in this Empire are; The yellow River (**) in *Chinese* called *Hoangso*, and *Tangzu Kiang* (††), that is the Son of the Sea, so called on account of its vast depth and great breadth, it being full two Miles wide; It is also called the *Nanking-sian* River, by reason it runs through the Province, and close by the City of that Name. This last River is Navigable throughout the whole Empire; several small Lakes discharge their Water into it as well as several Rivulets fall into it which rise in the Provinces, *Kiangsi*, *Huqaang*, *Quangsi*, *Quoantung*, *Chekiang*, *Suchuen* and *Honan*; and there

(*) Other Authors call him *Chius*.

(†) In which place having treated more largely concerning this Wall we refer the Author thither.

(**) Why this River is called *Hoamso* or the Yellow River, is mentioned in the IVth Chapter.

(††) This River also is treated of in the VIIIth Chapter.

are besides, Passages cut and rendred Navigable from this to the other principal River. The Course of the Yellow River is extended to a very great length, and runs through numerous Countries, it is also very deep, being broad in some places and narrow in others: It rises out of the Lake in the Western quarter of *Tartary*, and runs through and about the Provinces of *Xanfi*, *Xiensfi*, *Honan* and *Nanking*, where at last it falls Southwards into the Sea. This River is scarce Navigable by reason of its extreme rapidity, and the vast floods which frequently descend into it from *Tartary* and the Northern Parts, (through a portion of which it runs;) and sometimes proves very mischievous to both Men and Cattle, by carrying away before its Stream, to places very remote, several Houses, Hutts, Fields and whatever is upon them, and at other times sweeping away whole Villages and Cities (* *) as in the IVth Chapter is instanced.

Besides these two Principal there are other Rivers, as *Zhientangkiang* (mentioned in the IXth Chapter) which is very broad, but not comparable to the two former in length or depth; running only through the Province of *Chekiang*, and then falling into the Sea. The remaining Rivers, tho' some of them are large, are much less considerable.

Besides the Natural Streams or Rivers, here are several Artificial large Navigable Channels; most of the Provinces are provided with one of these broad Channels of long extent, in order for a conveyance from one Province or River to another: They are commonly cut in a direct Line, paved with flat Stones, and adorned with beautiful lofty Stone-Bridges, whose Arches afford a very fine and regular direct prospect. Some are of opinion and strenuously maintain that the yellow River was cut by humane industry, above three thousand Years past, by order of the Emperor *Juwoang*: and to strengthen their assertion, they add that the Land whereabouts it rises was overflowed by a vast Inundation of Water, and that the Emperor in order to draw it off, caused a very wide and long Channel to be dug, which making way for this Deluge, it broke through, and discharged its self with such force into these Artificial Channels, that it composed the yellow River. But this meets with a very cool or rather no credit; it not being possible for the flux of Waters occasioned by such an Inundation perpetually to supply a River, whose

(* *) See an instance of it in the VIth Chapter.

length is above six hundred Miles, and whose current is so strong, besides its vast depth and breadth.

There are Navigable Water Passages to all places of the Empire, except only in the Provinces of *Szechuen*, *Queicheu*, *Xansi* and *Xienshi*.

In *China* the quantity of Ships is innumerable, as the Sand of the Sea: Those which carry Corn only to *Peking* amounting to 9999 (*) large Ships, sufficient to carry above thirty or forty thousand weight: and their passage from *Nanking* to *Peking*, being seven or eight hundred (†) (*Italian*) Miles, mostly through Artificial Channels, takes up full six Months time. Besides these there is an equal number of Ships made use of to carry Silk, Stuffs and other Goods thither; so that they are prodigiously numerous, besides the Ships which belong to particular Merchants: So that it is not only feasible to step from Ship to Ship as on a Water-Key, from *Nanking* to *Peking* (**) but as the Jesuits expressing their incredible number say, if it were but practicable here are Ships enough to make a Bridge from *China* to *Europe*.

Besides these smaller Ships, there are at *Nanking*, and also at several other Havens of the Empire, Ships which are twice as large as these, being of seventy or eighty thousand weight burthen; and these serve to carry Salt throughout the whole Land. There are also abundance of magnificent Barks or Ships which belong to the *Man-*

(*) The same number of nine thousand nine hundred ninety nine being mentioned in the eighth Chapter, we also let it remain so here: *Le Comte* saith that the Barges from 80 to 100 Tuns burthen, make this Voyage once in a Year; but in another place, pag. 177, he tells us, That nine hundred ninety nine are always kept in a readiness; to which he adds; so runs the common report of the People, by reason that such a sort of expression in their Language imports a much larger and indefinite number, which may fairly be construed ten thousand.

(†) That our Author must here be understood to intend *Italian* Miles is beyond all question: For the extent of the whole Empire from the most remote part of it the Island of *Hainan*, to that part of it which borders on the *Muscovian* Empire, doth not contain above 8 or 900 Leagues or Hours; nor is the farthest part of *Nanking*, where the River falls into the Sea, above 250 *French* or common *Dutch* Miles; which according to our Author's account make 7 or 800 (*Italian*) Miles, which word I have therefore ventured to insert in a Parenthesis.

(**) The same *Le Comte* p. 82. calls it a Watry Road, destined for the Transportation of Grain, and Stuffs from the Southern Provinces to *Peking*. The number of Ships (saith he) is so large that whenever one sees that numerous Fleet pass by, one would be apt to say, they were laden with all the Tribute and Treasures of the East, and of all their Monarchs, and that one of their Returns would furnish sufficient Stores of Provision to supply all *Tartary* for many Years.

daryns, Governours, and others of the *Nobles*, which are provided with spacious Halls and Apartments, very richly furnished, as also with Galleries, Rails, Windows and Doors, for Convenience and Pleasure; they are besides finely gilt, lacquered, and beautifully painted with the finest Colours. There are likewise several Pleasure-Boats, made use of by the *Chinese* only for diversion, and mutual merry-making; these are also provided with Chambers and Apartments which are finely painted, lacquered and gilt both within and without; so that indeed they deserve rather to be termed Floating-Houses than Ships: Besides all which all parts are abundantly provided with all sorts of necessary Barks or Boats for Travellers: For there is scarce a City whether large or small, to which there is not a Passage by Water. And what is yet more, here are a sort of driving Floats, on which whole Families live, by keeping Ducks, or following some other Trade: So that indeed when one sees such various sorts of craft in one row; they seem like nothing more than a floating City, in which the Vessels run together like Ants.

There are in *China* seven or eight famous still Lakes or small Seas; Three of which are the largest and most celebrated.

The first called *Tungtinghu* is in the Province of *Huquang*, and is four hundred Miles in Circuit.

The second is in the Province of *Nanking*, not far from *Suchen*, and is also about four hundred Miles in Circuit: this Sea is besides very deep, and hath in the middle of it an Island called *Thaihu*, which is about seven or eight Mile in compass and very Mountainous.

The third is in the Province of *Kiangsi*, its circumference is about three hundred Miles. These Lakes by reason of their towering hollow Waves, and roughness, appear to the sight like nothing so much as the boisterous Main Sea. The other Meers are in *Nanking*, and are about two or three hundred Miles in Circuit. We are told prodigious Stories concerning some Lakes in *China*: viz. That the Waters of that in the Province of *Canton* annually exchange their Colour; That there is a Lake of green Water in *Fokien* which transmutes Iron to Copper; that there is also a Palace on the shoar of another and not very distant Lake, where a ringing of Bells is always heard against ill Weather: and several other the like reports are spread, the truth of which we intirely leave to experimental Examination.

There are great numbers of fine built Stone-bridges in *China*, which are supported by Stone-Arches: Two of these Bridges are the most

most considerable and extraordinary, being built over an Arm of the Sea: One of them is called *Loiang*, and the other *Fungiang*; and each of them is above an Hours Journey, or a *French* Mile long. The first contains nineteen Arches, of such an extraordinary height that large Ships may sail under them with their Masts up. Each of these Arches is shut by two Stones, each of which is (*) ----- Arms or large Ells long, above two broad, and three thick. The Jesuits and other *Europeans* which have seen and been upon them, are astonished at the sight of them; nor can they comprehend what Instruments could be used to raise such great, heavy and long pieces, all which are white Marble, to such an extraordinary height. The second Bridge tho' not so high, is as broad and long.

There is also a third extraordinary Bridge in the Province of *Quanton*, not far from the City of *Chaocou*; but this is carried over Land from one Mountain to another, and is as long as the former. And throughout the whole Empire there are several of these Stone Bridges, which tho' not so surprizing as those already mentioned, are yet very Ornamentally and Artificially built; and are every where carried across the Channels, for the Traveller's convenience, that he may come to all Villages and Towns without going a great way about.

In Watry or Morassy places there are also high Banks or Causeys raised, to serve instead of Roads, and when any Hills or Mountains happen in the Roads, no cost or labour is spared to level, cut through, or render them passable. The Road from *Siquan Fu* to *Hamtcheou* is cut through a Mountain, which was very rocky and steep, and propped up with large pieces of Timber, so that betwixt the Air and the Mountain, it looks like a Pendant-Gallery of Clouds, and appears very dismal to those who are not used to travel it: but they have bred and so accustomed their Mules to such sort of Roads, that they will climb up the most rough fatiguing and almost inaccessible ways, as easily as if they were in good Road.

On the high Roads at the distance of every half Hours Journey, are a sort of arched Gates, about ten Arms or Ells high, on which for the direction of Travellers, is written in large Letters, the distance of one place from another, and an account to what City, Town or Village that way tends. In all parts of *China* there are

(*) The Latin Copy having it 29, and the *German* 20 *Brachia*, Arms, I have here left a vacancy, and the Reader to his choice of which of the two numbers he thinks most probable.

great numbers of Marble Triumphal Arches, commonly containing three arched Doors, the largest of which is in the middle, and the sides are adorned with great Lyons and other sorts of Imagery; The Gates are every where beautified with very fine carved Images, Trees and Foliages; and their number in some Cities mounts so high that the Streets are rather incumbered than adorned with them.

China hath also very good Havens. That of *Nanking* into which the *Nankingian* River falls, is very much celebrated by reason of its depth, breadth, and the prodigious quantities of Goods which pass from thence to the City of that name, and higher up to *Peking* and all over *China*, but do not pass so close by the City, since the famous Robber mentioned in the XVII. Chapter besieged, and had taken that City if not hindred by his own negligence.

The Haven of *Quantung* or *Canton* bounds on the great Ocean, which washeth this Province Southwards. Before the entrance of the City of *Canton*, are a great many small Islands, the most considerable of which is *Macao*, which hath a very good Haven, and is very famous for the great Commerce of the *Portuguese* formerly there, by reason of its neighbourhood to *Canton*, to which great Ships could easily come, and where all sorts of Merchandise and Provisions are plentifully to be gotten.

Fokien is also provided with a very fine Haven, in which any Ships may safely ride, and come almost close to the Shoar, the Sea being very deep and the Harbour bounded on the other side by the Island *Emoni*. And a very great Trade is driven here with Forreigners.

The Haven of *Nimpo* in the Province of *Chekiang* is famed for the great Trade which is there driven with the *Japonesse*, because from thence it is but a short Voyage to *Japan*; but no very large Ship can well come in here by reason of some Shallows and small Rocks which render the passage very difficult.

In the Province of *Xantung*, joyning to *Chekiang*, where it butts Eastward on the great Ocean, there is also an indifferent good Haven and Trade with the Inhabitants of *Corea* and *Japan*; but neither the one nor the other are so large and considerable as the Harbour and Commerce at *Nimpo*, tho' the Province is very well watered; there being there as well as almost in all parts of *China*, very convenient Navigable Channels, provided with Sluces and Locks; without which the ground not being every where level, and the Water tending downwards, and all these Channels dug, they would soon be dry: which necessity put them upon inventing these sort of Waterfalls, to let the Water through intermitting pieces of Land, and keep it
at

at an equal height, and to wind or pull over them the Boats, Barges, &c. by the help of Ropes and Windlasses.

C H A P. XXI.

Of the Religious Opinions and Doctrines of the Chinese.

THE *Chinese* are perfectly well instructed and trained up in the Principles of their Religion, from their Youth. The Parents, send their Children to School, at the Age of seven or eight Years, to learn Reading, Writing, and Good Manners; which teach them to pay the subordinate Respect and Obedience due to their Parents and Superiors. They begin their Studies and Exercises, with the Instructions and Rudiments of their famous Instructor in Wisdom, Policy, and Good Manners, *King* or *Confucius*, called in *Chinese*, *Kingfu*, and highly revered amongst them. These first Principles, as we have already hinted, consist chiefly in directing them to obey and love their Parents, to respect and honour those older than themselves, to live honestly and virtuously, to do no Person any Wrong, or what they would not have done to themselves, to give every Person his Due, and suffer him to keep it. All these Lessons are comprised in Five Books, which in their tender Years they are obliged to learn by heart (*): After which they diligently learn to read; with the Arts of Writing, Arithmetick, and Oratory; in which having

(*) The Emperor himself hath all these Rudiments without Book, and the *Chinese* set as high a value upon them, as the Christians do on the Bible; but what the Jesuits relate of the present Emperor, with regard to his Sons, deserves a very particular Observation. These Fathers tell us, that he hath fourteen Sons and several Daughters; and that ten of the former were by all acknowledged to be very beautiful Princes, but the remainder then very young: And that his Majesty had chosen for their Institution, the most learned Instructors. Notwithstanding which he doth not hereby excuse himself from the exercise of his Paternal Care over these young Princes, but examines all their Compositions or Exercises, and causes their Books to be laid open before him. And his chief Aim is, to train them up in all virtuous Excellences, suitable to their Characters. Besides which we are told, that observing his third Son to be strongly addicted to Mathematical Knowledge at the Age of Seventeen, he then began to instruct him in the Rudiments of Geometry. It is farther testified of this Emperor, that he hath so thoroughly exercised himself in all useful Arts and Sciences, that very few good Books in the *Chinese* Language have escap'd his perusal. But his most solicitous Care is employ'd in the Education of *Hoangtaiſe*, his Heir apparent, being his Second Son, who in 1698 was Twenty three Years old.

made proper Advances, they are questioned and strictly examined in what they pretend to have studied ; and then being adjudged capable, they by degrees become Ushers, Masters, and Doctors of their highest Knowledge, and are also raised not only to that of Mandaryns, but the more elevated Dignities of the Empire, in proportion to their Worth, Learning, and Capacity to serve the Publick, either in the Government of Provinces and People, on the Bench as Judges, or in the Exercise of several Political and Civil Offices entrusted to them.

This learned and venerable *Confucius* lived several hundred Years (†) before the Birth of *Christ*, was born in the Province of *Xantung*, as is hinted in the third Chapter, and died according to some in the Seventy third, or according to others in the Sixty third year of his Age. His Memory is very highly honoured, as an excellent Man, by all intelligent and learned Men. In all Cities and Villages Honorary Temples are erected in remembrance of him ; tho' his Image is not placed in the innermost part of them : His Virtue and honest Principles are very famous, his Precepts are revered like the Word of God, tho' he is acknowledged to have been but a Man, a Lawgiver and Preceptor ; in honour of whose memory the *Chinese* have erected a Pyramid, not of Stone, but in their Hearts, and they annually discover Signs of Gratitude and Acknowledgement. Some of his Descendants are at present living in *China*, who are by Donative endowed with the perpetual Inheritance of a City, with all its Incomes, Rights, and Lordships ; and to the more august preservation of his Memory, their Right of Exemption from all Tolls and Taxes hath been, and is, inviolably observed to this day. He had seventy (others say five hundred) Pupils, which enforced his Doctrine with the Testimony which they bore in all parts, that his Zeal was perfect, and nothing was to be added to the Purity of his Moral Lessons : Besides which they sometimes rather esteemed him as an Instructor of the New Law, than a Man educated in the Corruption of Nature.

(†) Our Authors Number of Years differing from that of other Writers, we have not express'd how many Years before *Christ*, he came into the World ; but indeed they all differ on this Head, for some make it 451, others 483, and the third will have it to be 500 Years before our *Saviour's* Birth ; wherefore we have chose rather to leave it thus, than positively determine it.

For above two thousand Years past, to full five hundred Years before Christ's Birth, the *Chinese* have acknowledged the Lord of Heaven and Earth, abstracted from all Idols : Which appears from their Histories, and the Books of the mentioned Illustrious *Confucius*, in which we read, *Kiao xe chi li soy su xang tie* ; which imports, that our Duty obliges us to make Offerings to the Lord of Heaven and Earth ; almost and only like the Jewish Sacrifices of a Calf or Lamb to the Lord, in the holy Scripture. Notwithstanding which, their Knowledge and Idea of God was not so clear, but more obscure and confused than that of the Jews. But the primitive Knowledge of God declined rather than encreased, and that more especially after *Li Laokim*, a certain Philosopher, and one of *Confucius*'s Disciples, appear'd in the World ; he indeed wrote some good Books, but withal taught that the Sovereign Deity was corporeal, and governed the other Deities as a King doth his Subjects, and that Man might be immortal ; it was then that Idolatry crept in along with good Manners, and corrupted the Minds of Men ; and conjuring, and other Diabolical Arts, came in request, in order to prevent Death : Temples were built to the honour of *Li Laokim*, and as much was consecrated to his Memory as to that of a Deity, tho' he died ; and every Man, by Covenants with Satan and other devilish Practices, was earnestly bent in quest of that Immortality which their great Master could not find : Time strengthen'd the false Doctrine, and increased the number of its Teachers, who by their seducing Conjurations, drawing of Lots, and other Frauds, have even to this day wonderfully possessed the Hearts of the Populace ; who being misled to, and strengthen'd in that Opinion, continually search'd that on Earth which is not there to be found.

The *Chinese* also relate, that long after that time, an Emperor named (*) *Fanvang*, dreamed, or was informed by Revelation, that

(*) *Le Comte* calls this Emperor *Minti*, and tells this Story thus : That *Confucius* frequently said, That the true Holy One was to be found in the West ; that this his Assertion was continually in the Mouths of the Learned ; and that the Emperor *Minti* being disturb'd at these Reports, and excited by the Image of a Man coming out of the West, and appearing to him in his Sleep, dispatched Embassadors to the West, with Orders to travel that way till they found this Saint, which Heaven had revealed to him, about sixty five Years after the Birth of our Lord : That these Embassadors were forced by the danger of the Sea to remain on a certain Island ; and that they found there the Idol *Fo* or *Foe*, which had perverted *India* several Years before, with his Diabolical Doctrine : That these Ministers caused themselves to be perfectly instructed in the Superstitions of that Country, and carried them back with them to the Emperor and his Subjects ; and that through those means, and from that time, that Impious Doctrine was spread throughout the Kingdom.

there was a Saint in the West, whose Religion we ought to embrace ; and this without wresting may be understood to be spoke of Christ and his Doctrine. They also relate, that this Emperor dispatched a Person thither, in order to bring this Doctrine to *China* ; but the Envoy mistaking his way, fell into the South Country, where he met with the *Bramins*, (a sort of Idolatrous Priests, which worship the Image of one of their Kings) and having declared the reason of his coming, he was so well entertain'd by these diabolical Engines, that they at once presented him with an Image, and with their hellish Doctrine, both which he brought to *China*, and to which they at present all cleave, that Idolatry being firmly retained, and numerous Temples every where erected to that Idol, insomuch that the number of these wicked Priests is infinite. They are called *Bonzi's*, and pretend to abstain from Flesh and Marrying ; but Experience convinces us of the contrary, and that they sacrifice to their Lusts in private ; wherefore they are not very much reverenc'd by the *Chinese* themselves, tho' they have ever since that time worshipped that Idol, and the Images of it.

Antiently they worshipped the old Images of several Illustrious Men, as in the fourth Chapter in treating of *Xanfi*, mention is made of a valiant and potent Hero which sprung out of that Country : this they honour and pray to as a Demy-God, which revives their Courage, and excites their Magnanimity ; and the *Tartars* themselves, at present Masters of *China*, likewise offer up their devout Oraisons to it ; tho' indeed this is no point of their Religion, Faith or Doctrine : But the Idolatrous Worship and Religion of the *Bonzi's* is spread over all *East-India*, thro' the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Laos*, *Siam*, *Cochinchina*, *Japan*, and all over *Tartary*.

Several of the most learned amongst the *Chinese* are Atheists, which believe neither God nor Devil, deny a Future State, and in raillery ask who hath ever seen either Heaven or Hell ? Or once came out of either of them ? and boldly tell us that they are meer idle and brainless Imaginations. But the Image-Worshippers believe a Heaven and a Hell ; that the antient, virtuous, and happy Dead are great Spirits or Souls in Heaven ; that placed there as superlunary Princes, they tender and do good Offices to Mankind ; whilst themselves abound in Riches and Prosperity, and perpetually divert and entertain themselves with the finest Wines, and all manner of Delicacies. That on the contrary, the Souls of Wicked and Impious Men either go to Hell, or transmigrate into other Animals, which are either better or worse, in proportion to their Merit. So that at present

sent the *Pagan*, *Mahometan* and *Christian* Religion prevail in *China*.

I ought not to omit that in Paganism, the first of these, The Reason of State or Policy (*) is the supream and prevalent Deity in *China*, to which all Principles and Practices are adapted: And whatever does not fall in with the Political Interest is condemned as downright Sin, and consequently not tolerated. The *Chinese* are utter Enemies to Novelty, and are strangely fond of all antient Customs, solely on account of their Antiquity; and absolutely reject, or at least are hardly prevailed with to allow any modern usage: This fondness of Antiquity prevails not only in Temporals, in which they dare not presume to alter any Custom without the Emperor's most special Command: But more particularly in Spirituals, tho' it really should be, and they themselves were also convinced it was for the better. Hence it is that they reject the *Christian* Religion, because in proportion to the Antiquity of their Empire it is too recent, and hath too lately appeared in the World, as tho' Antiquity alone were sufficient to triumph over Truth, and it were a Crime to hinder the perpetuating of those stupid Errors which could only pretend to have prevailed for numerous Ages.

There are besides several other Sects of the *Chinese* Religion; for some of them believe that there is a Supreme, Eternal and Omnipotent Spirit, which governs and directs all things: This Being they acknowledge for the Lord of Heaven and Earth: And before Idolatry prevailed in *China* they worshipped him under the name of *Chamti* as the Lord of Heaven: But since the sowing of that profligate Seed, that Opinion obtains only amongst a few, but those indeed are most

(*) It is a fundamental Axiom in the *Chinese* Policy, saith *Gobien*, That the Prince is primarily obliged to preserve Peace, Repose, Plenty and Ease; for which the Subjects should acknowledge their obligations to him, and he cause them to be instructed that they are indebted this to him. For all attempts to keep the Subjects within the bounds of their Duty would be vain, without the effectual performance of the primary Condition of Obedience: Since the Laws themselves would be but a weak Bulwark if opposed to the freedom of Arms: and all Instructions would make but small impressions on the Minds of a People, that are hurried on to disprove them by Want and Misery. And he elsewhere tells us, That the true foundation of the Authority of the Populace, and State Government consists with regard to Families in the due Obedience and Respect to Parents and our Seniors; with respect to Government, that the Subjects be faithful to the Prince, and that he be tender of his People: A prudent conduct, the love of our Neighbours, Virtue and Justice are its essentials; an exact observation of mutual Civilities helps to fill up the measure: but the savoury Laws of a good Government afford means for compleating the whole.

of them great Men : The Emperor himself is said to espouse this old Sentiment : And it is not improbable, that it is owing to this, this he is not averse to the *Christian* Religion and Doctrine, and probably would not reject, but easily be induced to embrace it, if not restrained from it by Political Reasons, and a fear of Tumults and Insurrections in his Empire.

There are others also who acknowledge *Nature* to be the sole Deity ; but that, understanding the Force or Power and natural Operation, which being the efficient cause of motion and rest, produces, maintains and preserves all things : They look on Dame Nature as the Fountain of all and every particular Being : And that she is able to appoint and cause the order and Mutations of all things : They take her to be the one Soul which universally informs matter, by virtue of which she produces all things ; thus attributing to Nature almost all that the Antients ascribed to Heaven, or we acknowledge in the Deity : They call her a Principle independent of all others ; separating her from the Imperfections and Deficiencies of, and all Corporeal and Sensible matter. Those who encline to this Sect believe that the World had a beginning, and shall have an end : But shall afterwards begin and end again as before, and so perpetually and interchangeably renew and perish. And according to their Opinion numerous Worlds have already existed, and those after this to an infinite number shall successively make room for one another.

Tho' these *Hypotheses* and Opinions concerning Nature, are but groundless imaginations, yet the most learned *Chinese* are very fond of them, they affording several reflections no way disagreeable, which may tend to the improvement of their intellectuals.

We have already mentioned the *Bramins* and *Bonzi's* in this Chapter : They are not very different from the *Lama's*, (which are *Tartarian* Priests) in any particulars besides the external yellow Clothing, and some peculiar superstitious Ceremonies : Both worship the same God *Fo* ; their Religious Worship, Opinions and Faith is very near the same : However the *Lama's* in *China* are only *Tartarian* Priests : But in *Tartary* they act the part of the *Lama*, God or Gods of the People ; It is there that *Fo* hath his Throne, it is there he appears in the shape of an Immortal Rational Animal, whose place at least is perpetually supplied by a living Creature, for as soon as one Man dies, another like him is substituted in the Divine Throne in the Temple, in order to keep up and promote the ridiculous opinion of the Immortality of this God. To this purpose he is honoured with Religious



Dalai Lama the Immortal God.

ligious Worship by great crouds of *Lama's*, whose number is so large, and the esteem of this Doctrine (tho' not for the Priests of it) is so imprinted on the minds of the People of all *Tartary* and *China*, that its thought to withhold the Emperor himself from discovering any farther inclinations to favour or embrace the *Christian* Religion for fear of a revolt. The annexed Print represents the manner of the *Lama's* appearing.

We have already in the XIXth Chapter spoken concerning the Christians, the time of their first beginning to settle here, their planting of the Faith, their spiritual crop, the bitter afflictions they have suffered, and in what state Christianity and they at present are. It now only remains that we say something of the *Mahometans*; of whose Principles and number, I shall only by the way hint: That their number is not very great in *China*, tho' they are at least more numerous than the *Christians*, as having inhabited much longer, that is above seven hundred Years longer than the latter, in several Provinces of this Empire, where they were indulged with Liberty: which they neither did nor at present do misuse by pressing others to embrace their Religion, or zealously aiming at the making of Converts: For they quietly live close together; and are mostly allied by Marriage, Consanguinity, Interest, or Conversation; and in short live in a sort of Covenant like the *Jews* in other Countries. But their Religion is very much spread here since their Original, and hath taken very deep rooting; more particularly since the free Trade with the *Muscovites*, *Tartars*, *Mogols*, and other Nations, as is hinted above: And as ill Seeds and Weeds soon sprout up and grow apace, this pernicious Seed of impious Doctrine hath so encreased that the sprouts of it are much more numerous in *China* than the Christians.

C H A P. XXII.

Of the Chinese Manners, Ceremonies, Civilities and Complements.

THE former Chapter hath informed us that the *Chinese* are very well bred; whence they are observed to be very civil in Words and Actions: When they entertain any Person tho' below them, they always give the Guest the upper-hand: which in the Southern Provinces is esteemed the Right, but in the Northern is taken to be the Left. They also utterly differ from the *Tartars* in their customary manner of sitting; for the former sit down on the Earth, whilst the *Chinese* make use of Chairs and Stools. In Visits, the Master of the House, seeing his Guest approach, goes out well drest to meet him, and with his head covered (uncovering the Head being a Salutation not used in *China*) advances half way of the outer Court before his House, where he and the Visitant meet, and interchangeably compliment in the following manner. The entering Guest takes the Right Hand of his Entertainer (or left according to the mentioned difference in the Northern and Southern Provinces) who consequently stands on the other hand; then they both very respectfully bow very low three or four times, lifting up their Hands and Arms, (which whilst they are going they continually fold in their wide Sleeves) in a sort of stately manner, and afterwards as decently letting them fall, after which they speak to one another in a very civil, gentile and engaging *Chinese tone*: This done sometimes they change places, he that was on the right taking the left Hand, in order to repay the received Civilities: after which they enter the House; where the visited Person always takes the lower, and gives his Guest the upperhand. Being entred and fate down, a Dish of Tea with a piece of Sweetmeat in it is set before each Person, he that sits at the upperhand being first served, and the rest successively in order. Before they sit down even betwixt Persons of equal condition, several ceremonious and engaging contests arise about the refusal of the superiour place; the most worthy and highest esteemed Person is placed uppermost, and he amongst those of equal Character is the oldest; but Strangers and those who come from far distant Countries are set above all the rest.

The Ceremonies at departure are almost the same with those at the entrance. The Master of the House with several bowings of Head and Body, and moving the Hands, accompanies his Guests, first to the inner Door, then to the middle of his outer Court, and lastly to the outermost Gate, out of which he also goes; during all which time the Visitants are Complementing and thanking their Entertainer with the same respect, after which they either mount their Horses, or get into their Chariots as they came; then a Servant is sent after them by the Master of the House to Complement and wish them a good Journey in his Master's name; upon which they send their Servants back to their Entertainer to thank him for his last Civility. The Ceremonious paying and receiving of Visits amongst great Officers or Persons of Quality, must not be done in their common Cloaths, but in Robes of State; and in case the Visitant should fail in this particular, the visited would be apt to be disgusted at it, and not give him entrance at least before he had changed his own dress: and in like manner if the Master of the House should attempt to receive his Guest in a meaner Robe than he hath on, he would not enter the House. For which reason Persons of Condition always take care to be provided with these entertaining and visiting Robes, and cause them to be carried after them, in order to make use of in case of any sudden accident: for even in chance meetings, the complements are delayed if one of them have his Robe of State on, till the other can put on his. The *Chinese* abound in these and such like Grimaces and ridiculous Gestures, which they reckon an honour to their Nation, and proudly brag of; they say that they are signs of their good breeding, in which they excel other Nations as much as Men do Beasts.

In case of a Salutation or Visit betwixt Persons which have not for a long time seen each other, they both fall on their Knees, and thrice bow so low as that their Heads touch the Ground. And it is in the very same manner that even the meaner sort welcome and wish well to one another: This is likewise the posture of Servants speaking to their Masters, and the populace to the *Mandaryns* or high Officers. The like bowings of the Head thrice so low as to touch the Ground, are also used in the worshipping of their Idols.

I forgot to mention, that the Visitant always before he makes any visit, dispatches a Servant to the Person to be visited, with a piece of red Paper in his Hand, in which is written the name of the Person his Master intends to visit: With this he goes to the House, and delivers his Message, but if the Master of the House be abroad
or

or engaged, he still leaves that Paper in discharge of his order, and returns with the Answer to his Master.

The Ceremonies observed in Feasts and Entertainments are very great; after the customary Compliments of Salutation, each Person is placed according to his Condition at a particular Table, without either Napkin, Knife or Spoon; but is presented with a couple of long Ivory or Wooden Scurers tipped with Gold or Silver, to assist him in the conveyance of the edibles, (which are all cut into pieces) to his Mouth: and they are so dexterous in the use of these, that they can very swiftly clear the Dish even to a single Corn of Rice: As I have already hinted, they make use of fine Chairs, Stools or Benches; quite different from the *Tartars*, who equally void of Civility and Manners, clap down on the Earth, without any other gesticulations, than what they now observe in the *Chinese*, and begin to learn from the very Alphabet to the Book of Manners. The *Chinese* have also very fine Beds and Couches; but the *Tartars* on the other side having neither the one to lie on, nor the other to rest themselves on, make use of a Floor or Plank laid flat on the Earth. The first Dish is commonly provided with some sort of Hash, and a Glass or Cup of Wine, which yet is not so much as tasted before the Master of the House or Treater leads the way; which is followed by the Servants crowding in Dishes and Wine, none of which are taken away, but piled up pyramidically to the number of 20, or 24, or more. Each Person drinks out of his own Cup, and is sure to follow his leader; and tho' the Wine may be very briskly and continually put about, there is no danger of intoxicating very soon, so small a quantity being filled into the Cups, and the Wine its self being naturally not very strong. A serious gravity is always observed at Meals, the *Chinese* disliking all immoderate laughter: After, and sometimes also during their Meals, several Tumblers and such like shew their Agility of Body, several Farces are acted, and other diversions added: Besides which they also Play amongst themselves, and he that loses is obliged to drink, and is within the compass of good manners rallied by the Company.

Nuptials in *China* are very splendidly celebrated, and accompanied with Plays and Diversions during several Days. As for the preliminaries to Marriage, the young Persons who intend to enter into that Estate, have not the opportunity by conversing together mutually to sound one anothers Inclinations; for they are never permitted to come together, but the whole is managed by the Parents, who frequently mutually promise their Children, long before they come
to

to be married, regarding nothing so much as that their Years agree, or at least be not very disproportionate : And notwithstanding the Sons and Daughters happen to be advanc'd in Years, yet they make the Matches without so much as the Consent or Approbation of the Persons to be married. But there is yet a great difference on this Head, betwixt the Conduct of People of Quality, Midling Persons, and those of the lowest Condition. Amongst Persons of the first Quality, no Marriages are concluded without the Emperor's Consent, they being always matched to Persons of equal Descent. Those also of a somewhat lower degree are fond of allying with, and marrying into as good Families as their own ; but their Concubines they either take or buy from their meanly descended Parents, to an unlimited number. The lawful Wife is only honoured as Mother or Mistress of the Family, and respected and attended by all the others as Chambermaids ; and on her Death the Concubine's Children are obliged to a Three-years Mourning, which they are not obliged to wear so long for their own Mother. The Children of the lowest rank of People are in like manner married by their Parents, and the Girls in a manner sold ; for 'tis the Husband which gives the Portion, and the Bride only hath a few Nuptial Trifles, tho' when she is led to the Bridegroom's House, she seems to bring a large share of Household Furniture along with her ; but all of it is bought before by the Bridegroom as her Bridal Furniture ; besides which he gives the Parents a Sum of Money, proportionated to their Character, for their Daughter, whence he is said to buy his Wife. If a Nobleman or Person of Quality dies, the Widow must not marry again : But this perpetual Widowhood is not so much regarded by Persons of meaner Condition and Fortune ; tho' even amongst them the Widows which yield to a second Marriage, do thereby acquire an ill Reputation. Tho' ceremonious good Manners, and the Authority of the Parents runs so high amongst the *Chinese*, the Children will not yet endure a Father-in-law, or pay him any other than pure superficial Obedience : Wherefore almost all the Widows end their days in that miserable Estate. The mature Years for Marriage are twenty or two and twenty for the young Men, and eighteen or twenty for the young Women.

The *Chinese* Wives utterly seclude themselves from the sight of all Men besides their Husbands, not allowing themselves to be seen even by their Father-in-law, their Husband's Brother, or any of the Male Sex, their Husband's youngest Brother only excepted, and that in the time of his Childhood only : But all her own Male Relations are ab-

solutely excluded from all sight of or access to her. Nor do the *Chinese* Women ever appear in the Streets throughout the whole Empire, except in *Peking* the Metropolis, where they are carried whither they please in cover'd Coaches or Sedans, as we have before hinted.

The Piety which the *Chinese* express to their Parents is incredible; which yet doth on no occasion shine brighter than at or after their Decease (*). The Mourning and Funeral Solemnities are very numerous; which consist in the lamenting, keeping the Corps above ground, burying, and what is afterwards done in remembrance of them. When they put themselves into Mourning, they differ from other Nations who make use of black, and wear all white Clothes; in which Dress they keep a long time for any of their Relations; to particularize; for a Father (†) or Mother they thus mourn three Years. A Wife also continues in Mourning as long for her Husband. But the Husband does not hold it above a Year on account of his Wife's Death; which is the Term customarily observed by a Brother or Nephew for their respective Brothers or Uncles. Children for at least one hundred days after the Death of their Father

(*) I cannot help bringing the present Emperor for an instance of the great respect shewn to the Dead, in the Case of his Grandmother. *Bouvet* relates the Particulars thus: Besides ordering Publick Mourning for several Days throughout the Empire, he commanded that for the space of fifteen Days, whilst her Corps lay in State, the course of all Publick Affairs shou'd stop; he obliged all the Princes of the Blood, Nobility, and Officers, from the highest to the lowest, to remain in the Palace Day and Night during that time, notwithstanding the Severity of the Winter-Season, to mourn her Death: Whilst he himself never left the Corps, but pass'd whole Nights without sleeping, in bewailing the loss of her. Her Funeral Solemnities were so expensive, that they amounted to several Millions: He in Person accompanied the Corps to the Tomb, tho' full five and twenty Miles or Hours distant from *Peking*; and not only himself, but all his Children which were able to go, went above an Hour on foot. And without favouring himself in the least, he absolutely prohibited the Nobility of his Court the indulging themselves in any Farces, Musick, or Diversions whatsoever, for the space of three Years: During which time he frequently went in Person to visit the Grave, (notwithstanding its distant Situation) in order to render Honour to the Deceased, and declare his tender Love and Piety to the whole World.

(†) The reason of this extraordinary Piety and Reverence, saith *Nieuhoff*, is to express their grateful Acknowledgments for the first three Years attendance which their Parents give them, in nursing and carrying them in their Arms during that time. Those who mourn for their Parents (if Sons) add to their other Dress a coarse rough hempen Cloth or Coat, which they gird about their Bodies, like the *Franciscan Monks*. The time of wearing Mourning for other Relations is much shorter; lasting sometimes but a Year, sometimes less, according to the Proximity or Distance of their relation to the Deceased.

or Mother, are obliged to avoid lying on any Bed, but must repose themselves on the Earth, and daily celebrate their remembrance in Tears; besides all which they are obliged for three Years to avoid all Matrimonial Conversation with their Wives; and if any of them should happen to be pregnant in that time, they are liable to be punished. They sequester themselves from all Treats, Nuptials, and other Entertainments; they confine themselves to their Houses, without ever stirring abroad, and lay down their Offices or Charges for above a Year, and some for three Years. Whenever they are absolutely obliged to go to any place, they cause themselves to be carried in Coaches or Chariots covered all over with close Mourning, to the intended place.

Their Obsequies are not much different from their Conversation, with respect to Ceremonies: What first appears in the Funeral Parade, is the Representation or Figures of Men, Women, Lyons, and other Animals painted on Paper, which are carried in State; these Bearers are followed by several Incense-Carriers, next which comes the Bier and Coffin born by several Men, and is followed by the Sons, and all other Relations and invited Guests: The Sons are dressed all in white, and carry a Wand in their Hands; next which come the Women in cover'd Chariots or Chairs, hung with Mourning so close, that no Person can see them. The Graves or Tombs are all without the City, some of them are magnificently adorned with Marble, like a Palace, enclosed on the outside, and planted with several Trees in the way to the particular Burying-place: To which being come, the Corps enclosed in a Coffin of costly Wood, after the Paper Figures and Images are burned, is laid in the Tomb, and upon it are placed some Stone Figures, and an Inscription in praise of the Deceased. And at certain set-times of the Year the *Chinese* visit these Tombs, offering up there Meat and Drink, Tears and Lamentations, in remembrance of the Dead*.

(*) There are, say the Jesuits, three Seasons when the Dead are honoured in different manners in *China*: First, before the Interment, when the Corps are exposed to view, or laid in State, together with a wooden Image with the Name of the Deceased, which is placed upon a Table, with burning Candles and Perfumes about it: They salute and honour the Corps by Kneeling and Prostrations, according to the Custom of the Country. The second Season is observed from six to six Months, in a particular Chamber of the House called their Ancestors Apartment, in which every Spring and Autumn all the richest Delicacies that could be prepared for a Prince, are served up in remembrance of the Dead. The third Solemn Time happens but once each Year, and is observed at the Tombs; all of which being without the City, they

The *Chinese* observe several Festivals, but none more ceremoniously than that of the New Year. This Day or Days, for it lasts three Days, are by all Persons past over in very splendid Mirth and Jollity ; they then dress themselves as fine as possible, mutually visit, and make Presents to each other : There is no end of Plays, Entertainments, and other Diversions, and all are then equally rich and happy : All Business is at a stand, the Post and Messengers cease to go, all Civil and Criminal Courts are shut up, and according to their common Phrase, the Seal shut, as indeed it is enclosed in a Chest : And this Seal is of such force, and the Judge so far obliged to regard it, that tho' his Prince fully satisfied of his Sufficiency should sign his Commission, yet he wou'd not dare to act till he had found the Seal, if once lost.

The Lantern Feast observed on the following Full Moon (for the New Moon begins with the Year) is not less famous ; nor is there one House in all *China* which is not illuminated at that time ; the Lanterns (some of which are so very large as to admit of Theatrical Representations within them, acted by living Persons instead of Puppets) are so filled with Lights, and so numerous and close to each other, that the Cities and Towns seem to be in a perfect Flame ; nor are Fireworks and Gunpowder at all spared to add Flame to Flame : The Clangor and Thundering Noise of small and great Shot, mixed with the loud Acclamations, Singing, Roaring and Hollowing of the raving Populace, looks as if the whole World rejoic'd at that time.

There are also Festivals observed in Spring and Autumn, in commemoration of the formerly mentioned *Confucius* : The Ceremonies of which consist in kneeling before a Board erected on a Table, with this Philosophers Name encompassed with beautiful Leaf-work, written on it : Kneeling before this Inscription, they nine times prostrate themselves so low till their Heads touch the Earth, and serve up Wine, Victuals, Fruit, &c. much in the same manner as is above related, that the gentiler sort and rich People commemorate their Parents and deceased Friends with Mourning Feasts. Antiently this Philosopher's Image was honoured in this manner : But the Emperors finding the People fall off to Idolatry, and that they

visit them about *May*, when they pluck up Grass and green Herbs out of the Earth, express several Tokens of Lamentation and Esteem for the Dead, and then having set their Victuals and Wine on the Grave, renew their Mourning-Feast.

either

either actually did, or probably would, pray to and adore him as a God, they ordered this sort of Boards with the bare Inscription of his Name, to be placed in all the Schools and Colleges, instead of his Image : And the shewing of this commemorating Respect hath occasion'd several warm Contests betwixt the *Jesuits* and *Dominicans* ; the latter charging this Practice with downright Idolatry, whilst the other urge in their defence, that it is barely the Custom of the Country, and a Civil Solemnity paid to the memory of every dead Person, and not only that, but the same is given to the living *Mandaryns* and *Nobles* of the Empire, in common Visits and Ceremonies.

The *Chinese* always observe and pass their Birth-day in Diversions ; and as all happy Wishes of numerous Years added to that, Panegyrics, or whatever else can contribute to Pleasure, are not spared on the one side, so grateful Acknowledgments due to such Complements on this happy Day are not wanting on the other. In short. this Day is wholly sequestered to Civil Entertainments, Treating, &c. and ends with good Wishes.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Trees and Fruits, &c.

THE Northern Provinces of *China* do not produce the Fruits which grow in *India*, but the Southern yield them in great abundance. The common Arboriferous or Orchard Fruits are *Apples*, *Pears*, *Peaches*, *Plumbs* of all sorts, *Grapes* (†), *Olives* (*), and several sorts of *Figs*, viz. the *Chinese*, *Indian*, and *European* ; the *Chinese* are as large as *Apples* ; the exterior part or Skin is soft and smooth, they are variously shaped, small or large, round or oval. If they

(†) The *Chinese* do not press any Wine out of their *Grapes*, tho' these are very proper for that purpose, but dry and eat 'em throughout the whole Empire. They draw their Wine from Rice, which sort proves so good, that the *Europeans* there desire no other : It is indeed not very strong, and the Person who happens to debauch in it, is in no danger of a Head-ach.

(*) A certain Author tells us, that their *Olives* are not very different from those of *Europe* ; but there is no Oil drawn from them, perhaps on account they are not proper for that Operation ; or that notwithstanding the Subtlety of the *Chinese*, they have not yet hit on that Improvement.

are dried in the Sun, they may be kept a long time good ; their Stem is rough and strong : The *Indian Fig* (called in *Latin*, *Plantanon*, saith our Author) being perfectly ripe, when the Skin is taken off is longish, soft, and of a sweet taste, tho' there are indeed various Species of them, and what they grow on cannot be properly called a Tree, but rather a sort of over-grown strait Shrub or Plant, not unlike the Box-Tree, whose Sprouts are cover'd with a thin Film, not much different from the exterior Skin of an *Onion* ; the Leaves are extraordinary long and broad ; the Trunk bears its Fruit, which hangs to a single Tendril, but once ; its Blossom is a liver-colour'd Flower, of which it is observable, that whenever it appears, like the Infant from the Womb, it bursts and forces its way from its proper Root ; whenever the Fruit is pluck'd, this Plant dies, but is succeeded by fresh Sprouts which shoot from its Root : It is found to grow in the South Parts of *China* only, but in all Parts of *India* it plentifully abounds. These Southern Provinces also produce great Quantities of † *Oranges*, sufficiently known in *Europe*, and distinguished by the Name of *China-Oranges*.

Licia, a charming Fruit, also grows there ; it is red and contained in or fenced with a sharp or prickly Shell ; the Kernel is of a bright white Colour, very sweet, warming, and withal so perfectly agreeable, that it surpasses all other Fruit, not only in Taste, but Colour : The Tree on which it grows is also very fine, large, and full of Branches and Leaves, which render it very agreeable to the Sight : The Fruit, which grows in Bunches, tho' not crouded together, but on long Stalks, is about the size of an ordinary *Plumb* or *Nut*, and there are also various Species of it. If eaten to excess it inflame the Body, and raise Ulcers ; for which reason it is generally dried in the Shells, and like preserved Fruit, is served up in a Dish of Tea, and by reason of its agreeable Acidity preferred before Sugar ; the interior part of the Kernel dissolving like Sugar in the Mouth ; for which and other Reasons it is stiled the *King of Fruits*.

The Fruit called *Lungan* or *Onjeu*, is almost like the *Licia*, but not so large, and of a very different taste ; their Kernel is of a shining White, and their Shell of the same Colour ; their Taste is agreeable

(†) The *Portuguese* brought this delicious Fruit into *Europe*. And the very first *Orange-Tree* from whence all the rest sprung, we are told, is yet in being in the *Earl* of *St. Laurence's* Garden at *Lisbon*.

and refreshing, but not so hot as the *Licia*, and not prejudicial to Health if even eaten to excess: They are also very good dried, tho' not to compare to the fresh ones. The Tree which bears them is like that on which the *Licia* grows; and a well tasted Wine is pressed out of this Fruit whilst fresh.

Jacca is a Fruit which grows to the Bulk of forty and sometimes fifty Pounds; but there are also small ones, of an oval shape, with a sharp prickly sort of a Shell: The Kernel or Pulp is not firm but fibrous, tastes very sweet, and is of a Gold Colour; and the Shell green: This Fruit, namely the great sort, grows to the foot of the Stem or Root, otherwise the Branches (tho' stiff and strong, the Tree being very large) wou'd be too feeble to bear their weight. The Shell of this Fruit is so very hard, that it can no otherwise be opened than by a Hatchet: The inside is full of small Cavities, in which are contained a yellow Juice, and the Nut, which when ripe, eats better than a roasted Chestnut: The Leaves are rough and broad; and at the Branches grows also a sort of Fruit, more agreeable to the taste, and more healthy than the *Jacca*: The Ashes of the Shells burned are used by the *Chinese* as a Lie to cleanse *Linnen* or *Woollen*.

Anana's are a well-tasted Fruit (*), when ripe; they are yellow or red, and emit a very agreeable Scent: The Plant shoots its Leaves (somewhat like *Aloes*) to the height of six or seven Feet; the Leaves are three Fingers broad, also hairy or woolly; and of them whilst tough a sort of Clothes or Stuffs are made, which in fineness equal *Silks*: The Fruit sprouts out in the middle amongst the Leaves, and when come to Maturity is very near as large as a Man's Head; it is sweet and acid on the Tongue, tho' very delicious withal; at a distance it looks like an *Artichok*: on its middle Stem grow several young ones, which are clapped into the Earth by those who gather the Fruit, and in a Year produce ripe Fruit. The sharp and corrosive nature of this Fruit is so violent as to work even on Iron and Copper, and it also renders the Throat which swalloweth it very rough.

The *Petchi* likewise grows here at the side of or in the Water; and the uppermost paring being taken off its Root, there appears a sort

(*) *Nienhoff* saith, that when they were first brought into *India*, they were so dear, that they were sold for ten *Ducats* apiece.

of Whiteness, which tastes almost like a *Haslenut*, and is endowed with the vertue of softning Copper in the † Mouth.

The *Cocao-nut* is the fruit of a Tree which shoots upright : They grow in the Province of *Junan*, on the Island of *Hainan*, and in other places in *China* ; but in *India* they are incredibly plentiful ; the Nuts are as big as a Man's Head, the external part of the Shell is hairy, and the Substance of it ligneous, being in the whole about three or four Inches thick, and in the *Core* or innermost part of it full of Juice, which, the ligneous Crust being pierc'd through, runs out to the quantity of a Cup full : The Kernel is white and firm, and being shaved or scraped, and mix'd with fair Water, it turns it to a *lacteous Colour*, not unlike that yielded by a Woman's Breast, only a little thicker, as if it had been turned with Renner ; it is also very good Food ; it corroborates and reinforces those who are weary and faint, refreshes the Sea-faring Men, fatigu'd with the Scurvy and other Diseases after long Voyages ; for which reason they are very fond of it, being perfectly acquainted with its Uses. It is boiled with Rice, or in Flesh-soups : Besides which a very fine Oil is drawn from it, not inferior to that of *Almonds* in goodness ; and is not only used in *Medicinal Preparations*, but eaten as Sauce like *Oil of Olives*. The exterior Shell is so hard, that the Kernel being taken out, it is used as a Cup or Bottle. The Trunk on which the Fruit grows, shoots directly upright to the height of fifty Arms length, (others say so many Feet) like the Mast of a Ship ; the Wood is hard, and through it run *Oleaginous Veins* in the inner part of it which is spongy : Its Root doth not pierce deep, nor is it large ; and so it is indeed very surprizing, that such lofty Trees, laden with the heavy weight of Fruit and Leaves, should not be blown up by the Roots by the Winds. The Branches and Leaves are very beautiful and long, the former being full charged with the latter both without and within ; and both regale the Eye with a very agreeable Prospect. No part of this excellent Tree is usefess ; the very hairy Covering which encompasseth the Nutshell, serves instead of Tow to calk and stop Ships : Cups and Bottles are made of the Nutshells ; the Leaves are made into Paper and Clothes ; the Wood

(†) *Le Comte* saith, that he had an Account of an Experiment made to that purpose by one of their Society, by rubbing a Copper Coin with this Root ; one of us, saith he, which had good Teeth, bit it into several pieces, but the Fragments still remained hard, which made us apt to think that this Root was naturally more efficacious to the fortifying of the Teeth, than softning of Copper

is worked into Masts, Planks and Rudders, the Bark furnishes Sails and Ropes, and its Fruit lade our Ships, and is useful in Physick.

Arceka, of which I spoke in the XVth Chapter, treating of the Province of *Canton*, is an *Indian* Fruit, transplanted thence to *China*: The Tree bears some sort of similitude to the *Coco*, but is neither so thick, nor loaded with so many Leaves; both Fruit and Tree are called *Arceka*: The Fruit is hard, bitter and acrimonious; it is chewed inter-mixed with *Betel*, and a little softned with Lime, and the Spittle tinctures the Mouth and Lips red. The *Indians* chew it incessantly; and are mostly followed herein by the Inhabitants of *Quantung*, *Funan*, *Quoangsi*, and some other *Chinese*: which is indeed to be wondered at, considering how little the *Chinese* are addicted to Traveling, and consequently the few opportunities they have of catching Forreign Customs; but finding by experience that it is good for their Gums, keeps their Mouths clean, as well as moist in hot Countries, and besides causes a sweet Breath, hath drawn them into this Custom, as well as several others which they borrowed from the *Europeans*, which convinces them that they are full as clear-sighted, if not more enlightned than the *Chinese*.

The Fruit *Jambua* is a sort of *Lemmon* or *Orange*, as big as a Man's Head; the Peel or Rind is all round a Finger thick: The Fruit is white and red, spongy and of a bitter taste; its inside is almost like that of *Oranges*, with this difference only, that the Kernels or Seeds are larger: The Juice of some of them is sweet, and of others sower: The Trees are much larger than *Lemmon-Trees*, and their Leaves broader and rough; they are externally prickly or thorny like the above-mentioned *Lemmon-Tree*, which they also resemble in their Blossom; they afford a very grateful smell, as doth also the Water extracted from them by Decoction.

The *Indians* call this Fruit *Pampelimans*.

The Pepper-Tree is but a Shrub, which like Beans or Hops climbs up Poles or Stakes, and when gotten to the top like them inclines downwards: There is a second sort of Pepper which is round and long: Both of them whilst green grow on long Bunches close to the Stalk: But when ripe the Fruit turns black, is stript off and dried in the Sun; and if the black Skin falls off, as it is easily made to do, it is white, and tastes much hotter: The long Pepper which is more used in *Pharmacy* than *Cookery*, grows much in the same manner, but creeps more on the Earth, and climbs about lower Stakes, wherefore it becomes more moist, and if that humidity be not dried up, grows Worm-eaten; The long sort is dearer, and harder than the round;

and the Leaf of the former differs somewhat, but not much from the latter, which is softer and a deeper green than the other, somewhat like that of the *Ivy*. The Leaves, Branches and Roots are all hot and dry, enflaming both Tongue and Throat; tho' not to so great a degree as the small Corns.

Here grows likewise a Plant or Berry called *Maluei* (in the *Indian* Language *Carambole* :) this Fruit sprouts from large Plants or Shrubs, about three Arms length in height: The Berries are like those of *Palma Christi*; they are a very strong Purge, four or five Grains being a Dose large enough for the most robust Man; they operate on *tough Phlegm*, and *pituitous humours*, and are good against a foul Stomach, cleansing the Entrails: The Leaves as well as the Berries are Inflammatory to a high degree; wherefore those who pluck them are obliged carefully to avoid putting their Hands (when gathering them) to their Face or Eyes, which would immediately be inflamed by them. This Plant mixed with Rice or Dough, and thrown into the Water kills the Fish. It grows in *India* as well as in several Provinces of *China*: it is also preserved in Pots with *Sugar*, and so transported, and by reason of its warming Virtue made use of against an ill Stomach or stinking breath. There are also *Nutmeg-trees*, in some parts of *China*, but they are not so plenty there as in other hotter places in *India*, from whence they are brought thither. This Tree is almost like a *Pear* or *Apple-tree*: it sprouts free enough and spontaneously grows wild. The Nut which follows the Blossom joined to the end of the Branch, is at first green and rough, but when ripe changes its colour, and becomes pointed all over, and chop'd on the outside, being very ornamentally encompassed by the Mace, which perfectly ripe is three or four times annually gathered, and is of several sorts with respect to its virtue and worth.

The *Grinoffel*, or *Clove-trees* do not abound so plentifully here as in other places in *India*, from whence they are imported hither in vast quantities. The Tree on which they grow is about as large as the former, and so encreases to a great thickness; the Leaf is longish like that of the *Pear-tree*, and full of Fibres: at the end of which the Cloves grow in Bunches, and out of their heads sprout the Blossoms, which as well as the Cloves afford a very strong scent; the Blossoms are of various colours, and like the Fruit change in ripening; for the Cloves are not black or brown at first, but green, and accordingly the Flower is first white and then red. The Cloves are plucked or beaten off, and then gathered; and if any happen to remain on the Tree they fall off to the ground without any farther trouble, and from thence
shoot

shoot up young sprouts which are nourished. I shall not say any thing more of this Tree, by reason 'tis very well known all over the World; but shall only lightly touch on the *Cinnamon-tree*.

I have already hinted in the XV. Chapter that *Cinnamon* grows in vast plenty (*) in the Province of *Quoangsi*, and not only smells very well, but falls very sharp upon the Tongue: The Tree on which it grows is like that which bears Lemmons, its Leaves somewhat like Lawrel: this Plant hath a very fragrant Blossom, which afterwards affords us a Fruit like a Plum: But neither the Fruit, Blossom, nor Leaf agree in any one particular with the Bark; which alone is the *Cinnamon*, and is alone endowed with the Virtue, for besides that the Tree is perfect insipid Wood, whose Fruit is of no manner of other use than to be eaten by the Apes: This Bark which around clings close to the Tree, when the outmost film is scaled off, appears green, is dried in the Sun, and after it is cleansed and thoroughly dried, it turns to the known colour. The Tree being stripped of its Bark, doth not die, but after the expiration of some Years, gets a new Bark and flourishes again.

There is yet another Tree in *China*, which indeed grows more luxuriantly in *Goa*, and is by some called the *Indian-Fig-tree*, and it accordingly produces small Figs, full of small Seeds like the others, but not very much esteemed, by reason of their disagreeable taste: This Tree or Trunk shoots up very high, and the Branches afterwards turn to the Earth and take root again, after which, like the main Trunk, they shoot up and then down again, so that a single Tree becomes a great Wood, and the first Stem is hardly to be discovered.

The *Fat* or *Tallow-tree* is the most surprizing Plant of all, it yields a very fine Leaf and Flower; 'tis of a moderate height, and its Stem is but low, its Branches are thick and covered with long Leaves shaped like a Heart, and its Blossom is white, which is followed by the Fruit, which when ripe resembles a Chestnut, or Wallnut, with one clift. Round about the Stone, like that of a Cherry, is the Grease, or that which in colour, smell, and all its Characteristicks exactly agrees with Grease, except only that it doth not grease or fowl the Hands like it: around the Stones (of which each hath three separated

(*) The *Indian* Writers tell us, That these Trees grow in such prodigious abundance in *Ceylon*, that if whole Woods of them were not burned, the whole World could not consume the *Cinnamon* which grows there. And *Nieuboff* adds, that tho' this Island is so very fruitful in *Cinnamon*, yet neither *Cloves* nor *Nutmeg-Trees* will take there.

by films) is the Pulp, which melted makes a Candle as white as the whitest Capon, and is supplied with a Week of Wood run through it instead of Cotton. From the Stone or Kernel, which is full of moisture, is drawn an Oyl, which by reason of its strong unfavoury smell and taste is not eaten, but serves for Lamps. The red Leaves and white Blossoms of this Tree render it very agreeable to the Eye.

Cotton grows here in great abundance, notwithstanding which, as is hinted a little higher, they do not use it for Candle-Weeks, but make several Stuffs of it. It grows on a very thick, lofty, and crooked Tree, which is not over-loaded with Branches, and its Blossom is a yellowish Flower, from whence proceeds the Fruit not unlike a common Apple, that when ripe opens and discovers the Wool, which when prepared is transported to all parts of the World. There are also Shrubs and Sprouts which produce this Wool, and are not very different from this Tree, but their Blossoms are of a deeper yellow, and their Leaf more rugged; besides which the Cotton which these last yield is better and finer, and of that are made the white Callicoes. The Stems of these second sort of Plants like Reeds run up to a good height; when come to maturity they are cut down, thrown into the Water to rott, and afterwards peeled. The Province of *Fokien* yields great quantities of this Shrub, of which the best and finest Callicoes are made. Here are also whole Thickets of Canes or tough Osiers, which the *Portuguese* call *Kota*; they grow spontaneously, spread very kindly, and are very tough; of them are made all sorts of Ropes or Cords, Hurdles, Baskets, Chairs, Stools and Couches, which in Summer are very cool, and for that reason very much in use amongst the *Chinese*.

Sugar Canes grow in great abundance in the Province of *Suchuen*, and produce the best sort of Sugar, besides which other Provinces yield very good, and this proves a very good Commodity.

Bambooes grow here wild, on waste and untilled Lands: and tho' they are but a sort of Canes or rather Reeds, some of them grow to such a vast thickness, that small Boats are made of them, which both the *Chinese* and *Indians* make use of and very dextrously row: But the chief use which is made of the Bambooes is that of serving for Stakes or Poles, for the Pepper to grow up, and cling round. When they are young, the ordinary People, draw from them a Juice of an agreeable taste, from whence they prepare their *Achar*, a very delicious Sawce.

Tho' Mulberries are a Fruit universally known, yet the Mulberry Trees in *China* are managed in a manner different from all other Countries, for they are kept low, and annually lopped as the Vineyards are, by reason the young Sprouts occasion the production of the best Silk; and indeed the difference betwixt the Silk produced by those Worms, which feed on the first Leaves, and that of the latter growth when they are much harder, is very considerable.

Tho' Ginger grows in several parts of *India*, yet no Country produces greater plenty of it than *China*; nay further, it yields that Spice in a greater degree of perfection than any other part of *India*. There are two sorts of it, a large and a small Species; the Leaves and Root of the latter are less than the former, and therefore termed *Male*, whilst the other is called *Female-Ginger*: The small Stalk to which it grows is like a small Reed, when it first shoots out of the Ground. And the Roots are not all of one sort, but the heaviest are the best: Whenever they are dug out of the Earth, one or two of these Roots are left in the Earth, which moderately cultivated, watered and dunged, spread luxuriantly, and next Year are dug out of the Earth with great advantage. This Plant is also produced in another manner, by cutting off the Ginger or Root from the Trunk, and resetting it in the Earth, which by the next Year spreads and sends forth young Shoots. The fresh or green Ginger is not so hot as the dried: It is Medicinally used against flatulent Distempers, Fluxes, and other Diseases of that Class.

Tea being the common Drink, as well as the entertaining Liquor of *China*, grows there in great abundance: but since this Plant is universally known, I shall say no more concerning it, nor intermeddle with the Disputes of its Virtue, farther, than to inform my Reader that Rheumatisms and Gouts, the Stone and Gravel are Distempers which none of the *Chinese* are ever afflicted with. Whether this is owing to Tea, warm Water, or the nature of the Climate, or temperament of the People, I shall leave to be discussed by others, and proceed to the Description of several wholesome Roots.

The *Root China*, tho' it grows plentifully in all parts of the Empire, yet is not of equal Virtue; for the Province of *Suchuen* produces the best, and the wild sort thrives every where. The first sort grows out of a Sap or Gum, which adheres to the Root of a *Pine-tree*, which renders it such an excellent and efficacious remedy, and so famous on that account in all parts of the World. These Roots encrease to an extraordinary largeness, some of them being as big as a Man's Head. The wild Root, tho' far short of the virtue of this, is

not

not less esteemed. We have already described the Root *Ginseng*, and its Cardiacal Virtues, in the VIIth Chapter, in our account of the Province of *Leaotung*, where it grows; and therefore we refer the Reader thither.

China abounds with great quantities of *Rhubarb*, but no place produces better than the Province of *Suchuen*, as I have already hinted in the Description of that Country, in the XIIth Chapter.

So that it may very truly be said, that *China* plentifully yields not only whatever is requisite to the Restauration of Health, supplying the Necessities and sustaining of Mankind: but likewise all things which can contribute to gratifie the Luxurious Wishes of even an Epicure: Nor do any of the *European* or *Asian* Countries produce any one Commodity which is not here to be found; or at least the deficiency is doubly supplied with equal or much better Substitutes: But to particularize and describe all the Roots, Herbs, Fruits, Shrubs, Trees, Plants, or whatever else of the Botanical kind, which is either necessary or agreeable to the Tongue or Eye, would be to transgress the limits of our short account of this Country, wherefore we have contented our selves with barely pointing them out: and shall proceed to the Description of some circumjacent Islands, and bordering Kingdoms: And conclude this Treatise with a Historical account of the Original and Descent of the later Emperors, to the last and present reigning Imperial Monarch.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Countries and Islands round China.

JAPAN is justly preferred to all the Eastern Islands: and (tho' its Natives unwillingly hear it) was formerly subject to (*) *China*: Their manner of living is like the *Chinese*, they learn and read their Books; and also eat with two Ivory Sticks or Scures; but sit upon the Ground, wear a different Habit, Leathern Boots, and long Hair. This Island is an independent Sovereignty, governed by a Prince who assumes the Title of Emperor. It is a hundred and fifty or sixty Miles broad, and three hundred or three hundred and fifty in length. It very plentifully produces Gold, Silver and Copper, as well as whatever can be wished to supply both necessity and Luxury; it lies amongst and is parted (†) from several lesser Islands, in 34, or 35 Degrees of Latitude. The Natives are very subtle and fraudulent in their dealing, and thoroughly versed in State Politicks: They are extraordinary jealous of their Liberty, and treat all other Nations with utmost suspicion; pursuant to which, they are so very cautious of any thing, that only seems to contribute to their strength, that they unrig and take away the Rudders of all Forreign Ships in their Havens. They are very neat in all particulars, and rally the *Chinese*, on that head, believing themselves very

(*) *J. G. de Mendoza*, after telling us that the *Chinese* were formerly possessed of the whole Continent from *China* to the most remote part of *India*: That of this there are yet several considerable remembrances, on the Coast of *Cormandel*, particularly a Castle called the *Chinese Castle*, by reason it is supposed to be built by them: That at present in the Kingdom of *Calicut*, there are several Fruit-trees which the Inhabitants own to be planted by the *Chinese* when they governed there, and were also Masters of *Malacca*, *Siam*, &c. He adds, that at the same time they were Masters of *Japan*, as appears by several Monuments, as well as the common Uniformity betwixt the Manners and some of the Laws of both Nations.

(†) The Jesuits assert that *Japan* is only separated from *China* by an Arm of the Sea; that *China* (and consequently *Japan*) are by their observation found much nearer (full 500 Miles) to *Europe* than they are commonly believed to be: And avers that *China* is not situate on any side of *Japan*, and that *Japan* lies near *Mexico*: that there is a Chain or continued Ridge of Hills which extend betwixt the East and North of *China*, and reach to the Sea at the farthest part of the *Moscovian* Dominions; and that some are of Opinion that this part of *Asia* is joined to the firm Continent of *America*.

much to exceed them. Before the cruel and rapid Persecution which fell upon the Faithful, almost half the Natives were converted to Christianity, but at present no one Person which is but suspected to be a Christian, is suffered to enter any part of that Empire, before he hath trampled upon a Crucifix, as a testimony that he is not of that Religion. Notwithstanding which, we are told that there are some who privately retain that belief in their Hearts, and confess it to God alone. But the very name of Christians is here so detestable, that, even those of that Religion which do but Trade here are obliged to conceal it, and the *Hollanders* which drive a great Trade here, being asked by them whether they are Christians, never fail to reply that they are *Hollanders*, by which indirect answer they shun the dangerous Rock.

The second Island or Peninsula, (for it is doubted whether it be separated from the firm Land) is called *Corea*, but the *Chinese* name it *Caoli*; it annually pays a Tribute to the Emperor (*): and lies off Eastwards of *Peking* and *Xantung*. When the *Coreans* carry the mentioned Tribute to the Imperial City, they most commonly go by way of *Leaotung*, but very rarely through *Xantung*. In their Habit, Writing, &c. the Natives follow the old Customs of the *Chinese*; but they differ from them in their common Conversation with respect to Women, who are here allowed to come into the Company of Men, on which account the *Chinese* ridicule them as a barbarous and unmannerly People: and this difference also occasions another in their Marriages, which are here the effects of choice. This Island is larger, but not so rich as *Japan*: It plentifully produces all sorts of Corn, and according to the report of the *Chinese*, is four hundred and sixty Mile long, and one hundred and sixty broad. Tho' this Country is very commodiously situated, and richly provided with all things, yet its Inhabitants do not drive any considerable Trade with any other Nations than the *Chinese* or *Japanese*.. Here are very rich Gold Mines, and the Root *Ginseng*, of the virtue of which I have already spoken, grows here; as also the red Colour which the *Chinese*

(*) Our Author saith elsewhere (*pag.* 116), that *Corea* and the other Kingdoms which he there mentions, formerly were subject to the Empire of *China*, but at present are not; and *pag.* 121 tells us, that the Inhabitants of *Corea* pay an annual Tribute, which they bring by way of *Leaotung* to *Peking* Which seeming contradictory, should be understood that they are not so absolutely subordinate to him as his own Subjects, but that they by this Tribute only civilly acknowledge him as a superior Prince and their Potent Neighbour.

call *Cil*, or *Sandaracha*, the best sort of which is prepared here, by expression out of the Bark of a certain Tree, and is of a consistence like Pitch or Glew; whatever it is laid on with a Brush is tinged red, and shines as bright as a Looking-glass: fine Pencils and Paper are likewise made of it.

Besides this, there are two Islands situate near *Japan*, one of which is called *Chaofien*, and the other *Linkin*: The Princes of both which Kingdoms pay Tribute to the Empire of *China*, tho' in Habit and Manners they approach nearer to the *Japanese* than *Chinese* Customs: These Islands are large, but not to be compared with *Japan*.

The Island *Taioan*, otherwise called *Formosa*, is also subordinate to *China*, and is accounted one of the nine great Cities of the Province or Kingdom of *Fokien*, as I have already hinted in the XVIIth Chapter. The Island *Hainan* lies Southwards of the Province of *Canton*, and as is already said is numbred amongst the Cities of that Province: It contains two hundred and Fifty Miles in circuit.

There are also several other Islands, which are dependants on or Members of the Province of *Canton*, as that of *Sanciam*, where *Francis Xavier* died and was buried: *Macao*, where the *Portuguese* have a Fortification and Trading place: together with the three Islands under *Xantung*, one of which was famous or rather infamous for the lamented destruction of the *Chinese* Philosophers mentioned in the Third Chapter. These, besides several others, are subject to this vast Empire, all which united under one Dominion, would by themselves amount to a very Potent Monarchy, and furnish matter for a particular Description. But we shall content our selves with barely naming them as they lie in our way, and conclude this Chapter with an account of some subordinate and circumjacent Kingdoms.

The Kingdom of *Tunking* lies Westwards of *China*; and formerly was subject to and a Province of that Empire: but is at present only Tributary to it; and is divided into the two Kingdoms of *Tunking* and *Cochinchina*; subject to their respective Kings, who are two Brothers, that continually make War against each other. And tho' this Kingdom, or more properly these Kingdoms, are very distant from *Japan*, they yet follow the Fashions and Manners of the *Japanese*: They are instructed by and read *Chinese* Books, which they, like the *Japanese* and *Coreans*, are very well versed in. Several Christians live amongst them; and the *English*, *French*, *Dutch* and others, trade very considerably with the Inhabitants of both Kingdoms.

The Kingdom of *Laos* borders on the Province of *Yunan*; and is also Tributary to *China*: Its Metropolis is *Lanchang*: It borders

Southwards on *Siam*, and Westwards on *Pegu*: But is a Country of no manner of Commerce.

Siam is a very large Kingdom, which is frequently infested with Wars and Confusions: 'twas formerly subject and tributary to this Empire, but taking advantage of its distant situation and the various Revolutions of the *Chinese* Monarchy, that Kingdom hath like *Pegu* shook off the Yoke. This is a Kingdom of a very wide extent, but the Land is waste, untilld and uninhabited: and its People living mostly in Woods and Wilderneses, behave themselves rather like Wild Beasts than reasonable Creatures. They build or erect Hutts made of Hides; and the whole Country abounds with Woods, which harbour Elephants, Rhinoceros's, Buffles, Wild Oxen, Tygers, Bears, and several other Wild-Beasts. Here are great Herds of Apes as big as Children. The Woods are very closely crouded with lofty Trees, of the heighth of Forty or Fifty Ells; some of which are also so thick that seven or eight Men joining Hands can hardly begirt them, and one Trunk is large enough to hew out a Boat. Here are innumerable quantities of Crocodiles, which devour Men alive, and are four or five Ells long: Which renders travelling either by Water or Land very dangerous in all parts of this Country: As it is also at *Pegu*, *Laos*, *Camboja*, &c. The Inhabitants of all which Countries, wear the same sort of Habits, and very nearly agree in their Customs and Manner of living; but differ in their Language and way of Writing. They are all Heathens, and extravagantly reverence or rather Idolize their Priests. Their Pagods or Temples are all of Brick, but very numerous and ornamental: Their Idolatrons Images are large, beautiful, and finely guilt, some of them being about ten Ells high. The Streets and several spacious places are adorned with large Turrets, about Fifty or Sixty Ells high, gilded all over on the outside. These Idols were brought by the *Bramines* (so their Priests are called) out of *India*, as is above-mentioned in the XXI. Chapter.

The King keeps his Court at *Jutia*, which is also called *Siam*; this is a large, and upon an exterior view seems a very fine City, but is very desolate within: The *Dutch* have a House or Factory at the City of *Ligor*, and the *English*, *Portugueze*, *Mogols*, *Persians*, and *Chinese*, trade very considerably here; nay several *Portugueze* live in the City. Formerly the *Europeans* enjoy'd great Immunities, here; but at present are abridged of some of them, on the following occasion.

One *Constance*, a certain *Greek* that had long resided amongst the *English*, came to *Siam*, and became such a darling Favourite of the Kings, that in short he got into the best and most honourable Posts, and climb'd to the highest Step in the Administration; the King left the whole Government of his Realm to him, and he consequently became the Spring of all Actions. During this time the News happen'd to reach the King's Ear, that *France* then at War with the *Dutch* had obtain'd a great Victory over the States; upon which, that Prince, who look'd on the *Hollanders* with jealous Eyes, as a People that might one day do him an Injury, resolved to send an Ambassador to the King of *France*. And he accordingly dispatched one of his *Mandaryns* on that Errand in 1677, on board a *French* Ship; but it is to this day unknown what became of either the Ambassador or the Ship, nor was the least News of them ever heard. The King however pursuing his first Design, sent other Ambassadors, in a *French* Ship to the Court of *France*, where they safely arrived, and were very well received. They, by order of their Prince entreated the *French* King's Friendship, as well as made Protestations of their Master's tender regard for his Most Christian Majesty; and withal requested that he would please to send him some Forces to remain in his Country for the Defence of it. And after the expiration of several Years the King of *France* sent Ambassadors, and three Ships to *Siam*, where they safely arrived, and were very well received and splendidly entertained; besides which, large Privileges were granted to the *Christians* on their account: For besides the Ambassadors, in the three Ships, there came over with them a *French* Bishop with several *Monks*, which together with three or four hundred Men, designed for the Defence of the King and Kingdom, were by the Ambassadors left behind.

This very much disgusted the Populace, but more the Priests; and several of the Chief of the Nobility look'd awry at it; as did the *Hollanders* with envious Eyes (*), and, the *Mahometans*, who gave the King Poison, of which he sicken'd and died.

(*) Our Author in the relation of this Ambassy and the occasion of it, seems not very favourably inclined to the *Hollanders*, as appears by his joining them so close to the *Mahometans*, in the poisoning the King, which is utterly false with respect to the one as well as the other. To trace this a little higher, saith *Le Comte*, after he had before told us that that Prince took a great deal of Pleasure in Star-gazing, and that at the end of *February* in 1687, he was seized with a Melancholly Desire, which looked more like Superstition than a natural Inquisitiveness, - to make an accurate Observation of

After which the General and others rose up in Arms against the Regent or Administrator, mastered the City, and cut the mentioned *Greek* into pieces. The King died without Heirs, leaving only one Daughter †. And this General having forcibly got into the Throne, designed the immediate Destruction of all the *French*; but they perceiving his Intention, retir'd to a strong well situate place, which they so well fortified, and so bravely defended, that he was obliged to permit them to depart freely, and furnish them with three Ships for their Voyage.

Two Years after, the Usurper, now King of *Siam*, sent an Envoy to the *French* Fort in *India*, offering to them Peace and his Friendship: Which how the *French* King will resent, or what Answer he will please to return when his War with the *English* and *Dutch* is come to a happy Issue, Time must discover. But having said enough of this, we shall proceed.

Tartary borders North and North-West on *China*, from which it is divided by the great Wall: These Nations are divided into *East* and *West Tartars*; the latter conquered *China* at the latter end of the Twelfth Century; but about eighty Years afterwards were driven out of that Empire; and the *Eastern Tartars* are at present possess'd of it, having seated themselves on the Throne in the Year 1643. They are call'd *Eastern Tartars*, not with regard to *China*, of which they lie *Northwards*, but with respect to the other *Tartars*, which lie West of them, and are called *Western Tartars*.

and Judicious Reflection on the Conjunction of *Jupiter* and *Mars*, which happen'd then: For, saith *Le Comte*, he was possessed with an Opinion that that Conjunction was fatal to him, and an undoubted Prefage of his Death. We, continues he, in vain attempted to drive away these Thoughts by remonstrating to him, by one *Constance*, that the Events of this lower World had no manner of Communication with the Planets; and that if our Fate depended on them, the King cou'd yet pretend to no greater share of it than the meanest of his Subjects, over whom the Sun and all the Planets rose and took their circuit, as well as over the greatest Princes on Earth. But these nor several other Reasons had no force on him, he continued stedfast in his Belief, that his Kingdom should not continue long, and that he shou'd soon lose his Life; and he died indeed the following Year: But he in vain looked into the Heavens for the Cause of his Death, which he had carried with him in his Body for the space of many Years. A Chronical Distemper fell very severely on him, and was doubtless the real Cause of his Death, as well as his foreboding Fears. Thus far *Le Comte*, whom, to remove the Scandal above-mentioned, I have thought fit to quote.

(†) And yet the *Chevalier Chaumont*, in his Relation of *Siam*, saith, that the King had two Brothers besides this Princess his Daughter: And that in heiring the Crown the Title of the King's Brothers is prior to that of his Children: But possibly these Brothers died before the King, or were made away in the Insurrection.

The *Eastern Tartars* were separated from *China* not only by the Wall, but by the Province of *Leaotung*; which was not a *Chinese Province* before the *Tartars* came thro' it into that Empire; but being situate without the Wall it lay as a Barrier against the Incursions of the *Tartars*; and, before it became a Province of *China*, was a Place of Exile, whither all banished Persons were either order'd or went of their own accord for refuge: These and other Exiles assisted Prince *Ousangouei*, who with the help of the *Tartars* drove the Usurper *Li* or *Licoung* from the Throne, which the *Tartars* then ascended. After which the Province of *Leaotung*, in grateful acknowledgment of its introducing the said *Tartars* into *China*, was incorporated to the Empire, and declared the sixteenth *Chinese Province*, enjoying the same Rights, Privileges, and Immunities, with the fifteen antient and several times mentioned Provinces; all whose Tribunals and Superior Courts of Justice are supplied by an equal number of *Tartars* and *Chinese*, as also all the Presidentships.

Since the *Tartar* conquered *China*, he hath extended the Borders of his Dominions in *Tartary*; for being formerly but one of the petty Kings of the *East Tartars*, he hath not only obliged the other *Eastern Princes*, but even the *Western Tartars*, to submit to, obey, and for the most part acknowledge him their Sovereign Prince. And the Union of these two mighty Kingdoms and Nations, has swelled this Empire to an unwieldy Bulk, and render'd it one of the noblest Sovereignties in the World. By means of this wide Extension of this Monarchy, *China*, or more properly *Tartary*, stretches its Borders to *Moscovy*, by which it is bounded *Northwards*: And by the Peace betwixt the Czar and the Emperor of *China*, concluded in the Year 1689 at *Nogovium* or *Nipchou*, by the Ambassadors of both Emperors, it appears that the Borders on both sides are fixed by Agreement in the Latitude of 55 Degrees; which appeared very surprizing to several, even Geographers themselves (*), they scarce believing

(*) What our Author says here, that about the Year 1688 or 1689, even Geographers could scarce be prevailed on to believe this, is somewhat strange, since *Nienhoff* acquaints us, that when he accompanied the *East-India Company's* Ambassadors in 1658, there were some *Muscovite* Ambassadors at *Peking*; who not succeeding in their Embassy, went thro' the Emperor of *China's* Territories to their own Country; but could not set forwards on their Journey, before they had obtain'd Letters of safe Conduct from the Emperor; so that it was then consequently known, as well as long before, that the *Siberian Limits* of the *Muscovite* Empire bordered on *Tartary* and *China*. But it is much more surprizing, that the *Chinese* Emperor should send *European* and *Foreign Ministers* to *Moscovy*, and make use of *Jesuits* in the negotiating of the last Peace betwixt the two Empires.

that *China* and *Moscovy* were become mutual bordering Empires by the addition of *Tartary*. And the Ambassadors cou'd not reach the now mentioned Frontier City, situate on the utmost Borders of *Moscovy*, from *Peking*, in less than six Weeks time, the distance being three hundred Miles.

The Empire of the *Great Mogol*, and several other Monarchies, were in like manner formerly Provinces obedient to the *Chinese Empire*, as is amply evinced by the present remaining Monuments in several parts of *India*: But either their distant Situation, Political Interest, or the *Chinese* Divisions have long since torn them from that Monarchy. The Empire of the *Great Mogol* extends over all the Kingdoms and Countries betwixt the Rivers *Ganges* and *Indus*, to the Gulph of *Bengal*. The Inhabitants of *Cambay*, *Bengal*, and other subordinate Countries, drive a very great Trade with the *Chinese*; and have also with their Merchandise introduced their own, that is the *Mahometan*, Religion. The Metropolis where the *Great Mogol* keeps his Court, as also the Province in which it is situate, is called *Delle*. The Countries subject to him are very fertile, and what by reason of the Gulph or Arm of the Sea, and the Rivers which on both sides run by it, very commodiously situate for the transportation of the Produce of that Country. Besides vast plenty of *Corn* and Fruit-trees which that Land yields, it affords also great quantities of *Wax*, *Frankincense*, *Spices* and *Drugs*, as well as *Diamonds* and other *Precious Stones*. The number of *Elephants* is here so great, that they are not computed by Hundreds, but Thousands. And according to the Custom of this Country, the Horse and Foot Force of Men capable of, and expert in the Martial Art, which upon a short Warning may be raised, are reckon'd by Hundreds of Thousands. The Commodities with which they chiefly trade in *China*, are rough and other *Diamonds*, *Jewels*, *Elephants Teeth*, *Wax*, &c. The Emporium to which they and other *Indians* coming out of the West resort, as is already hinted in the fifth Chapter, is *Zunning*, a very great Trading City, frequented by all Nations: For tho' antiently no Foreigners were permitted to come to, nor trade freely in *China*, yet the wiser *Tartars* regarding their own Interest much more than obsolete Customs, have allowed almost all Nations to trade amongst them. All the *Indians* are black, and go naked, except only a Cloth which both Men and Women wear about their Waists.

C H A P. XXV.

Of the Original Descent of the last Race of Chinese Emperors.

THO' the *Chinese* Empire is by all the learned of that Nation, without the least Scruple, positively averred to have continued for above the space of four thousand Years, under the Government of two and twenty Imperial Races or Families; and others believe it possible to trace its Origine five hundred Years higher; yet to this day, or rather to the middle of the sixteenth Century, the *Chinese* have not made any alteration in their Humour, Morals, Learning, Habits, Manner of Government, or Language. It is indeed true that Seditions, Civil Wars, Insurrections and Revolutions have happen'd, which have made a temporary alteration of the exterior Form, but they soon disappear'd, and all things returned to their former state: For, one while the Empire was divided into one hundred, nay three hundred Parts, then reduced to seven, afterwards to three; and at last returned to the primitive state of one entire Empire, solely subject to one Sovereign.

According to the *Chinese* Chronology, the above-mentioned two and twenty Royal Families have produced two hundred and thirty six Emperors, computed to extend to the present Monarch, and begin with the first Emperor *Fohi*: Which Prince, agreeably to this Chronology, and the unanimous Attestation of all learned Men, is acknowledged for the undoubted Founder of the *Chinese* Sovereignty. This is particularly confirmed by those appointed to examine into it by the Emperor himself, and his chief or most able Ministers. We are told that this Emperor was a Prince of an exalted Genius, great Courage and Experience; that he projected their Laws, declared Good Education and Good Manners to be the best Foundation of the Publick Good, and bestow'd his utmost Praises on those who by virtuous means pressed forward to the highest degree of Wisdom; whilst on the other side he banish'd all Sloth, and set a very high value on those who by their Parts and Industry distinguished themselves from the rest of Mankind. His illustrious Reign, crown'd with venerable Age and Experience, transmitted to his Descendants such a strong Impression of his real Excellencies, that his Maxims, Instructions, and Laws, are regarded as Divine Precepts, and those who

who have studied them, have found them so superlatively excellent, that they have justly deserved as well as retained their exalted Fame amongst the *Asiatick* Nations.

Fohi was succeeded by *Chumming*, and he by *Hoangti*, who was succeeded by *Xao*, and several others in order, which according to the same Chronology were Elective Kings; and being as long-liv'd as the *Noachian* Patriarchs, each of these is said to have reigned above one hundred Years; tho' like the *Antidiluvians* mentioned in Holy Writ, they declined in proportion to the time of their flourishing. The same Chronologies assign *Tvus* as the first Monarch which followed these Elective Kings, and whose Son and Race succeeded to the Crown; since which time it has remained hereditary to this day.

The present reigning Monarch of the House of *Taicin* or *Taicou*, (as we have already hinted) is the third *Tartarian* Emperor, whose Grandfather after the Death of *Zunchi*, the sixteenth and last Emperor of the Race of *Taiminga*, which had swayed the Scepter for the space of two hundred and seventy six Years, seized or rather rushed into the Imperial Throne, after the Defeat and Expulsion of the Traiterous Usurper by Prince *Oufangouei*, assisted by the *Tartarian* Forces.

The same Writers inform us that in the Reign of the Emperor *Xunus*, the *Tartars* made their first Incursions into *China*, but that Prince bravely repulsed them, and settled the Empire in a quiet state: So that this Event, which happen'd long before Christ's time, was rather a Battle, than a War of any Duration. But in the twelfth Century, the *Tartars* (*) conquered this Empire in the Reign of the last Emperor of the House of *Sung*, which Family had then reigned four hundred Years: They then entred and seized the Empire, by the traitorous assistance of *Zinghay*, one of the Nobility: For this Traytor, watching his Opportunity, introduced the *Tartars* during the Emperor's Minority; and they quietly enjoyed the Empire about eighty Years: But in process of time the Peace, Ease, and Plenty in which they wallowed, debauched that warlike Nation to the luxurious, soft, and lazy way of living of the *Chinese*: Valour and Order were displac'd, and Reputation vanished: The Soldier turned leud, and transgressed his Orders with impunity: And the great Remissness of the Commanders occasioned the greater Mischiefs of Robberies on the

(*) These were the *Western Tartars*; and those now possessed of that Empire are *Eastern Tartars*, which are called *Mantcheou*.

High-ways, and in the Streets, and Murthers, which current of Crimes running high, fear of condign punishment produced Conspiracies of whole Battallions, which at first sculking and dispersing themselves throughout the whole Empire, rendred all *China* very dangerous either to live or travel in: especially when they grew strong enough to appear in the Field in Troops not inferior to small Armies.

The *Chinese* tired with this Forreign Power, which grew to insupportable Tyranny, as appears by what followed, murmured at it, and raised some small commotions throughout the whole Empire, but none of the Nobility stirred in it, notwithstanding which they were delivered from the *Tartarian* Yoak in the following manner.

•A certain Boy born in the City of *Fajangfu*, in the Province of *Nanking*, that had lost his Parents by the Plague, to escape that raging Distemper as well as want of Bread, and in hopes of bettering his Fortune, left his Native Place, and retired to a Pagod, or Idolatrous Temple, and put himself into the Service of the *Bonzi's*, which are their Idolatrous Priests: But they treating him somewhat severely, he ran away from them, and became a Herdsman; and in process of time, being advanced to maturer Years, he lifted himself a Soldier, amongst the before-mentioned Robbers, which were now grown to a formidable Body: And what contributed to his continual and gradual advancement amongst them was, that one of their principal Commanders was his Uncle, who finding him acquit himself well, took care to raise him: And becoming himself a General, he died sometime after, and was succeeded by this his Nephew: Who had not been long General before (having encreased his Forces to his desired sufficient number, and being assisted by the *Chinese*) he so expeditiously, vigorously and successfully rebelled against the *Tartars*, that in the space of seven or eight Years, he obliged them to quit and evacuate the whole Empire of *China*. He fixed himself on the Throne, was proclaimed Emperor, kept his Court at *Nanking*, and died after having reigned thirty three Years, assuming the name of *Hungvil*, i. e. the Excellency of Arms. He was the first of the House of *Minchao*, (or *Tamincha*) which (it's said) governed that Empire about two hundred and eighty Years. His Son succeeded him in the Empire, and removed the Imperial seat from *Nanking* to *Peking*, in order to be nearer the *Tartars*, upon whom he fell with all his Force, and pierced through all *Tartary*, destroying all to which side soever he turned his Victorious Arms, and sparing no body, pursuant to the resolution he had made if possible to extirpate all the

Tartars ; but finding none able to oppose him, he returned to *China*, where after a long and peaceable Reign he died ; and his Descendants continued in the Throne till in or about the Year 1644, at which time the Reign of that Family ended in the Emperor *Zunchi*, who by his miserable end made way for the *Tartar* to ascend the Throne. It is indeed remarkable that the very Family which about three hundred Years before had drove out the Western, was driven out by the Eastern *Tartars*.

Before we enter upon the present Government and Revolution of the Empire, we shall by the way only hint, that the *Tartars* in the Reign of the Emperor *Vanli* (one of the last of the *Taiminchian* Race, who died in 1620, aged 58, after a Reign of 48 Years) made an Irruption into *China*, and were repulsed by him : And that about the Year 1580, in the same Emperor's Reign, the Christian Religion first began to be received in *China*. *Francis Xavier* attempted first to Travel thither from *Japan*, in hopes of promoting the Kingdom of Christ ; but died on his way in the Isle of *Sancham*, a place dependant on the Province of *Canton*. Then the Fathers *Herrada*, *Marino Alfaro*, and some *Franciscan* Brothers, *Martin Egnatio*, *Rogero*, *Pasio*, *Ricci*, and other Fathers undertook this Work with the same ardent Zeal ; but Father *Matthias Ricci*, proved the most successful of any of them, for having long resided at *Macao*, had studied the Religion, Laws and Customs of that Empire, and was very well versed in their Language ; these accomplishments gained him the esteem of the Emperor and the whole Court, and rendred his Mission successful ; he obtained a grant of buying a House and a burying place, as also leave to settle there, which was the first foundation of the spreading of the Gospel here. But the Lords Vineyard at *Macao*, was once very near an utter Extirpation by a cruel Persecution, if the Hand of God had not stopped it by punishing the Persecutors.

After the Death of the Emperor *Vanli*, reigned his Son *Taichan*, a Valiant Prince, who by raising a great Army against the *Tartars*, that began to be in motion, discovered his earnest desire of Heroically attacking them ; but his design was frustrated by his sudden Death, after a reign only of four Months. He was succeeded by his Son *Zhienski*, who not in the least degenerating from the Valour of his Ancestors, as soon as he was on the Throne, assisted by his Allies, beat the *Tartars* out of *Leaotung*, in which Province they had made an Irruption and mastered several Cities, and after a Reign of about seven Years duration died in Peace ; and was succeeded by his Brother *Zungchi*, a mild negligent Prince, who fond of ease, reposed too
great

great a trust in his Officers, who instead of faithful Service repaid his Credulity with Treachery, and after an unfortunate Reign brought their Master to a miserable end, which was followed by the Empire's falling into the hands of a Foreign Family (*). The *Tartar* was driven out of *Leaotung* and *China*, by the above-mentioned Emperor *Thienski*, and besides made a Tributary to him; but the sparks of civil Dissention were not so extinguished as to prevent their breaking out into a more raging flame, which was kindled by the *Chinese* Governours, their exorbitantly treating and plundering the *Tartars*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, and not in the least scrupling the practice of any manner of Injustice against them, in order to exasperate that Nation, and oblige themselves with the opportunity of fishing in troubled Water. The Merchants and others that were abused by the Governours, petitioned against them; but the Emperor and the Court turned the deaf Ear to all their Complaints. The *Tartarian* King in resentment armed himself, and at the head of his Army dispatched a Letter to the Emperor, before he had recourse to coercive means, or backed his Words with his Sword: He laid before him the unjust and partial practices of his Governours and Officers, and set forth that all the remonstrances of his Merchants were slighted at Court; desiring the Emperor would be pleased to punish his Governours and exorbitant Robbers, and provide against such pernicious and corrupt practices for the future, and excuse him his annual Tribute, in order to reimburse him the Military Expences he had been at; upon refusal of which he declared that he should be obliged to take such forcible measures as the continual complaints of the Violence and Injustice daily exercised upon his Subjects should oblige him to. The Emperor instead of examining into this affair, utterly discharges himself of it, and leaves

(*) The causes of the Revolution in *China*, and the utter extinction of the last Race of *Chinese* Emperors, besides those alledged by our Author, are by several Writers observed to be: That the Court (or the Emperor) was plunged in luxurious lazy ease: his only care being employed how to pass his Days with the greatest Pleasure, with the beautiful Virgins which were selected for his use all over the whole Empire: For the Prince being absolute, it was forbidden to Marry any young Women before they were proffer'd to him. This course has ruined more Courts than one, it naturally administering occasions for insurrections within, and Foreign Invasions, whilst the Emperors drowned in ridiculous Pleasures and Diversions, never trouble themselves with the Government, but entrust it in the hands of worthless *Eunuchs*. Others add, that this Prince was also very Covetous.

it to his Council ; who keeping him blind, played their Game according to their own Pleasure, and without any great opposition suffered the *Tartar* to seize part of *Leaotung*. After the Conquest of which, he endeavoured to subdue the whole Province, but was interrupted in his career by a too vigorous resistance ; and the War betwixt the two Nations lasted a long time, Victory sometimes inclining to one, and at other times to the other side ; but at last the Strife ended in a Peace, in favour of the *Tartar*, the Emperor being obliged to permit him in the quiet enjoyment of his Conquests : by reason that the Robbers and several of the Nobility had made such a formidable Insurrection, that the Emperor seemed to apprehend more danger from them than from the *Tartars* themselves. Which was indeed afterwards confirmed by the Event ; for the Robber *Licoung* after taking several Cities and whole Provinces, grew so insolent as to presume to attack even the Emperor himself in *Peking* his Metropolis, which he knew to be empty of Forces, or at least that those there, were commanded by those who would betray their Prince. The Emperor finding himself betrayed on one hand and deserted on the other, being unwilling to fall into the Robbers hands alive, after he had killed his Daughter with his Sabir, ended his own miserable Life with a Rope.

The Conqueror attempted to fix himself on the Throne ; but Prince *Ousangouei*, who commanded the Army at the Great Wall, and kept a watchful Eye on the *Tartar*, designing either to fall on him with his great Force, or engage him on his side, gained over to his Party the *Leaotungers*, and all those who were either banished, or had fled to that Province ; but tho' they were added to his Army, he did not think himself strong enough to deal with the almost infinite numbers, and consequently superior Force of the Robber or Usurper : Wherefore he, by a Treaty with *Tsonte* or *Zunte* the *Tartarian* King, obliged him to join his Force with him against the Usurper, in order to revenge the Death of his Father whom the Robber had cruelly murdered ; he succeeded in his design, and after a bloody Fight (as is already hinted in the VIIth Chapter) pursued him, and it is at present utterly unknown where *Licoung* perished. During this pursuit of the Robber, *Tsonte* enters the Empire in order to support Prince *Ousangouei* on occasion, to cleanse the Land of *Licoung's* Followers, and disperse the Conspirators : He advanced to *Peking*, where finding the Coast clear, and the Throne empty, he ascends it, and assisted by his *Tartarian* Forces, caused the *Chinese* (whose hearts he had

had already won by his engaging (*) deportment) to proclaim him their Emperor, without making any other alterations in the Government, than putting it in the hands of an equal number of *Tartars* and *Chinese*, and introducing the *Tartarian* Habit and Hair, to which he had in a sort inured and engaged the *Chinese* by dressing them in that manner, by a Martial Stratagem, in order to deceive the Enemy, and the easier to beat *Licoung*. After this *Ousangouei* returning from the pursuit of his Enemies, finds the *Tartar* upon the Throne, and pursuant to the Treaty concluded betwixt them, the Empire being now in Peace, and the Rebel hunted out, desired him to return to *Tartary*, tend'ring him the presents promised at the beginning of the War. To this the Emperor putting on an obliging Air, answered, that it was yet too soon, since the Rebel was not so enfeebled, but that hearing of his departure to *Tartary*, he might possibly attempt a fresh Insurrection and carry all before him, which he should be no way able to prevent when not being at hand to help them: wherefore it was much better first utterly to destroy the Rebel and all his adherents, and revenge on him all the Evils which he had drawn on his Kingdom as well as the *Chinese* Empire, and withal to re-

(*) What *Nieuhoff* relates of this Prince is very remarkable, and conduces to the Illustration of this Story. This Prince (saith he) seemed naturally endowed with all manner of Perfections, and if he had any ill Inclinations, he very artfully corrected them by practice. Before he ascended the Throne, he gave plain indications of his Excellencies. In his tender Age his Father sent him in *Chinese* Habit into *China*, under the direction and care of some of his Counsellors: He there learned not only their Language, which his apt capacity soon mastered, but became so tinctured with their Politer Manners and Morals, that he seemed utterly to have forgotten the *Tartarian* roughness and barbarity. As soon as he was got into the Throne he changed the cruel manner of governing into a milder, knowing very well that the former would prevent his gaining his important ends on the *Chinese*: He so established himself on his new Throne rather by his tenderness and good manners than by Arms; which endeared the Hearts of his Subjects to him. He caressed the *Chinese* that came over to him, as much as his own Countrymen; those he took Prisoners, if they pleased, he entertained in his Service, and suffered the unwilling to depart, dismissing them with obliging Expressions and a safe Conduct; thus he won their Hearts, and tendered a kind refuge and protection to the Exiles, or those who had before fled out of their Country, and they indeed were very assistant to him in gaining the Empire: There were also some amongst them which had distinguished themselves in his Service; these he rewarded with Places or Presents, that far exceeded their expectations----- In another place he adds: This Prince in the taking of Places, took strange engaging measures to gain upon the Minds of People: he retained the old Government and Governours, introducing no alterations, [*the Reader knows by the way that he added Tartars to them*]; he left the Government of Cities and Provinces in the Hands of *Philosophers*, which they were before entrusted to: The *Tartars* only being entrusted with the chief Command in all Military Affairs.

ducing

duce them to so low a condition, that it should be impossible for them to make any new attempts. The Prince either was or pretended to be satisfied with this answer, and applied himself to the destruction of the Rebels, which he so warmly pursued, that he did not leave the least remnant of them together, but restored the Peace of China.

The Emperor *Tsongte* was scarce settled on his Throne before he died, in the Year 1644. He was the first of the Race of *Taicim*, who annexed the Imperial Crown of China to his Royal one: and governed both his own Nation called *Mantchecu's* and the *Chinese*, thereby tracing out a way for the greater glory of his Descendants.

He left a Son named *Chunchi*, who was but six Years of Age, to succeed to his Crown: And committed the care of his Person and Education, as well as the Government of the Empire, to his Brother *Amavang*: who was as careful in the farther subjection of the refractory Provinces on one side, as *Ousangouei* was in the pursuit of *Licoung*, in order to take his just revenge of him, on the other: And we are accordingly told that in an Engagement *Ousangouei* himself cut *Licoung* to pieces, in Sacrifice to the *Manes* of his Father.

Amavang to whom was entrusted the supreme direction and administration of the War and Empire, acquitted himself with so much Honour in all his undertakings, that the reduction and maintenance of the Empire is to be ascribed to him as much as his Brother: He gave continual Proofs of his Wisdom and Prudence in the direction of the State, and forbearance of his Enemies: as he did also of his Valour and great Expedition, in the beating of Thousands of his Enemies; but he gave yet greater Evidences of the true Sense of the most exalted Honour which animated his elevated Soul, utterly untainted with any sinister ends, or private Interest, in surrendering as sincerely and freely the Empire to the young Prince as soon as ever he came of Age, as he had reduced, governed and preserved it to that time. This Action alone is sufficiently famous, by reason that very few parallel Examples can be produced. (*)

(*) *Nieubhoff* saith that *Amavang* died in the Year 1651, and adds a very particular Story which I cannot imagine where he had, for it is not only contradictory to all other Writers, but also to himself, concerning the time of his Death; for in the Year 1644, when his Brother *Tsongte* died, *Chunchi* was but six Years old, and consequently in 1651 could be but Thirteen: and yet *Nieubhoff* himself tells us, that when his Ne-

Chunchi's Reign was but short, for he died in 1662, and after his entry upon the Government, met with very few other Difficulties than those common to the Exercise of Sovereign Jurisdiction, and the Care of the State: In his Intervals of Relaxation from which, he discover'd a strong Propensity to Arts and Sciences, particularly to those which were Mathematical: It was this that engaged him to promote Father *Adam Schaal* to be President of a *Tribunal*, and graced him with his Favour (†), notwithstanding that he was a Stranger, and a Christian; this gave encouragement to hope that the Christian Religion would encrease; for when Princes begin to bestow their Favours on its Teachers, it opens a Door to their ingratiating themselves not only with the Commonalty, but with the Nobility themselves.

His Son *Camhi* or *Canchi*, which signifies *Peaceable*, succeeded him, being but eight Years of Age when his Father died. This is the present Emperor, whose Reign is crowned with such Universal Elogies. He is a Lover of Arts and Sciences, and hath indulged to the Christians such great Immunities (*) all over *China*, that it is to be hoped this mighty Empire may in time through the Divine Grace be wrought upon to quit their erroneous Pagan Doctrine,

phew was advanced to a proper Age, he surrender'd the Empire, and laid down his Protectorship. What *Nieuboff* saith of this Prince, whom all the World so highly praised both whilst living, and after his Death, and whom *Nieuboff* himself commends, is very surprizing; (for, with his good leave, it is not taken for any thing more than a Fable, as not being back'd by any Author.) However he tells us, That the Emperor *Chunchi* after *Amavang's* death, when his dangerous and treacherous Councils first came to light, was so enraged, that he caused his Body to be dug out of the Grave, (the most terrible and heaviest Punishment amongst, and an abomination to, the *Chinese*) his Tomb to be demolished, his Corps to be beaten with Sticks and Rods, and afterwards beheaded; and treated it with all the Marks of Disgrace, that could possibly be shewn to the blackest Traytor; killing or displacing all his Dependants and Friends.

(†) *Le Comte* saith, that the Emperor *Chunchi* came in Person to visit the said Father *Adam* above twenty times within the space of two Years, that he granted him leave to build two Churches in *Peking*, and consented to every thing that might contribute either to the Establishment or Propagation of the Faith; insomuch that prodigious Advances would have been made, if a too violent Passion had not made an alteration, by depriving us of this Prince, at a juncture when we most wanted his Protection. He died, saith he, of Grief for the death of one of his Concubines, which so strongly enclined him to the Service of the false Gods, that he would not hear of any other; upon which followed a severe Persecution, the ground of which was laid by this Mistress. Nor did she strike at the *Christians* alone, but was also fatal to the *Bonzi's*, who narrowly escaped utter destruction by her means.

(*) This relates to the Grant of Liberty to the *Christians* in 1692. See the 19 Chap.

and embrace the saving Faith of Jesus Christ ; which the good God grant.

His Father saw in his Infancy his excellent Endowments, and therefore passing by all elder Brothers, declared him his Successor in the Imperial Throne. During his Minority the *Christian* Church was in a suffering Condition, the four Lords Regents being bitterly incensed and prejudiced against that Holy Religion ; and then the Christians were obliged to try their Patience. Father *Adam Schaal* was thrown into Chains, and condemned to death ; but mercifully delivered by the wonderful hand of God ; and he died not long after, full of Years and Honour : Whilst his Enemies fell into Disgrace, and some of them died a shameful Death. After his decease Father *Verbieft* fell into the Favour of this present Emperor, and held the same place in his Grace to his last hour, as well as that of President in the *Mathematicks*. And after his death Father *Grimaldi* succeeded in his stead, and to the Favour of this Prince, whose Praises are below his real Merit.

For if those Persons may be believed which speak their own Experience, and nothing but what they are Eye and Ear-witnesses of, he is a Prince of whom it is much better to be silent, than to say but little. His Virtues are too great to be comprehended in a narrow compass, and my Pen too mean to do him justice : Wherefore I shall by my Silence excuse my self from this too difficult Task, and only repeat and sum up the Lives of the Princes of his Race, that have ruled the Empire. His Grandfather *Tsonte* scarce enjoy'd his new Acquisition so long as was requisite for him to travel through it, and died in 1644, leaving to succeed him *Chunchi*, a Prince of six Years of Age, but great Endowments, who died in 1662, after that he had declared the present Emperor his Heir, the greatest Action that he ever did, or cou'd do, He was eight Years of Age at the time of his Father's Decease. *Canchi*, or *Peaceable*, is his Name, who now peaceably enjoys and rules his Empire, and is honour'd, fear'd, and lov'd by his Subjects. In the beginning of his Reign he struggled with several dangerous and rough Seas, which great young Princes are oblig'd to break thro' before they reach a safe Harbour. Shortly after, and before he had scarce reached the Age of twenty, Prince *Ousangouei* rose up and carried on a vigorous War against him ; and *Canchi* being by Descent a *Tartar*, and on the other side *Ousangouei* a *Chinese*, and consequently more agreeable to the Populace, they the more blindly followed him, and such Numbers crouded to him, that it was not a little surprizing, that having already one half of the Empire, he did

did not carry the remainder. But the young Emperor by his endearing Qualifications so engaged the Hearts of his Subjects, that he at last concluded an honourable Peace with this Prince, which held several Years; and after his death the Emperor was Politick enough to allure his Sons to Court, and make a proper use of their Weakness to his own Advantage; and thus by one means or other he again subjected all Parts of his Empire under one Head, and is now their Emperor. The Kings of *Canton* and *Fokien* also took advantage of *Oufangouei's* Insurrection, and began to make War against him; but he knew how to draw off their Forces, and to raise Discord amongst the three Princes, (to which *Coxinga* may be added as a fourth) to divide them, and make them help to pull down each other; whereas possibly if they had all drawn one way, how brave a Soldier, and how accomplish'd a Statesman soever he is, he had been defeated and dethroned. Thus by his wise Conduct, gaining of time, and outliving his Enemies, he hath possessed himself of their Kingdoms. After the death of their Fathers, alluring the young Princes to him, or subduing them as ill Neighbours, he clear'd his Field of all the pernicious Seed that might infest it.

Having reduced his Empire to a peaceable State, he applied himself to the well-governing of it, to which end he chose the best of Men for his Ministers and Officers; honouring those that did well, and punishing those who went astray. He shewed them by his own Example, how great his Aversion was to Idleness, and how fond he was of Industry and Action. After the dispatching of State-affairs he employs himself either in Hunting, Fishing, or the Study of the Sciences; for being a learned Prince, he tenders and favours those who excell in the learned Arts, whether his Subjects or Strangers; preferring them to the highest Dignities, and not disdaining to make use of the *Europeans* in the most important Services, and to bestow on them the greatest Posts; nor is he ashamed to learn of them Astronomy and other Mathematical Arts, Anatomy, Medicine, and Natural Philosophy; in all which the Jesuits are his Instructors, from whom he daily condescends to receive Lessons: *Grimaldi*, *Gerbillon*, and *Pereira*, are three of that Society whom he has made use of in Embassies. The first of them was sent alone to *Muscovy* in 1686. and the two latter were added to the great Embassy, which proved so agreeably successful in 1689, for the adjusting Differences betwixt the *Great Czar* and this *Emperor*, at *Nogovium* or *Nipchou*. The Fathers *Schaal*, *Verbiest*, and some of the above-mentioned, he hath distinguished by the honourable Charge of Presidents of Tribunals,

and the Dignity of *Mandaryns*, and himself as well as the Prince his Son, always heard them discoursing of Arts and Sciences with utmost Pleasure.

For this mighty Emperor is not contented personally to excel in Arts and Sciences, but endeavours to emplant them in his Children, especially *Hoangtaise* the Prince, his Heir apparent, whom he himself particularly instructs. And the Education of Children, and reverencing their Parents, being one of the fundamental *Chinese* Political Maxims, this great Prince pleaseth himself with it; and the Son discovers such pregnant Signs of a good Genius, that far from degenerating from his illustrious Father, he gives just reason to hope that he will make as great advances in Wisdom as his so great Predecessor.

Whence it is, that if it should please God, that the *Christian* Religion should ever take root in the hearts of this great Father, and his no less Son, it might reasonably be hoped that *China* would soon submit to the Obedience of the Cross. The Learning of the *Jesuits* obliges them with an Opportunity to endear themselves not only to these two Princes, but likewise several others, who by the venerable respect paid to these learned Men, grow into a favourable Opinion not only of their Persons, but of their Doctrine; which is heightened by their Abilities manifested in both the former *Muscovite* Embassies, which was the Foundation of the favourable Edict promulgated in 1692, (about three Years before the writing of this) relating to the *Christian Religion*, by which a Door is opened without distinction to all Persons of all degrees, to embrace that holy Faith. And what enhances the value of this Favour is, that if *China* could be converted, with the Blessing of God, we may unquestionably expect the Conversion of all *India*, and all the farther distant bordering Nations; of which *China* being the Head, the lesser Members, as Politicians observe, would of course blindly follow, tho' with enlightned Eyes: To which the Lord give his Blessing.

The Dutch Translator's POSTSCRIPT.

THE Reader is here entertained by a *Chinese* Author speaking our Native Language, which we have translated out of barbarous and unintelligible *Latin*, and somewhat better *German*, into good *Low-dutch*. Both the Manuscripts (for this Tract was never printed) agreed in the main Sense of the Author; but yet in some few Places they differed in the expression of Numbers, or some other inconsiderable Particulars, and both of them were frequently obscure: Wherefore, wherever they were wholly unintelligible, or too widely differed from each other, we have either left Blanks, or supply'd the Defect by Extracts from the best Authors on this Subject, which we have translated into *Dutch*; and illustrated the dark places with Annotations, in order to give a clearer insight to those particulars which we thought wanted it, as well as to clear up and help what was but faintly and imperfectly represented, that nothing really worth Observation might pass untouch'd. Hence it is that in the first Chapter we have so clearly proved by undeniable evidences, that the Province of *Leaotung* lies without the great Wall, and detected the gross Errors of Geographers, who credulously following one another, have misplaced that Province. In our Notes also on the IVth Chapter, we have the various Names bestowed on Provinces by different Writers: Thus *Peking* is called *Pechely*; *Xantung*, *Quantong*; *Xansi*, *Xiansi*, *Chansi* and *Chiconsi*; *Xensi*, *Xienssi*, *Chensi* and *Chienssi*; *Nanking*, *Nankan*; *Quoantung*, *Quanton*, *Chanton* and *Canton*; *Suchuen*, *Soutchouen*; and several other Instances of this kind might be produced; for which reason we thought fit to express the Situation, *East* and *West*, *North* and *South*, *Buttings* and *Boundings*, more clearly and geographically than our Author hath done, he being sometimes a little perplexed on that Head. Likewise in the XXIVth Chapter we have attempted to solve what seems to shock Truth, where *Corea* is said to be an *Island* or *Peninsula*, not subject to *China*, and yet to pay an annual Tribute to it. In another place what is urged in evidence of the *Christian* Religion, its being long since planted in *China*, is the Cross found near *Signan Fu*, and still remaining there; which others take for as authentick a Testimony, as the Characters first contrived, and afterwards discovered, at *Metz*, are to prove all the Neighbouring Country to be antiently Dependants on, or the Conquests of, *France*; and will accordingly believe this as soon

soon as that *that* Cross hath lain so long buried, tho' the Letters are very old, and the Table so fair, as tho' it had not lain above one hundred Years. We shall not touch any farther on any other of this sort: The Reader in the perusal of the *Chinese* Author himself, and our Annotations, will find what may serve to Illustration. But how this Author came into *Latin*, (if I may so call that barbarous Stuff in which I found him) and also in *High-Dutch*, I can give no other account than what is hinted in the first Page, and the Assurance there given, that he is a *Chinese*, born in *Canton*, who having embraced the *Christian Faith*, travelled thro' *Siam* and *India*, and is by Profession a Surgeon, whose Name is *Dionysius Kao*, and that he himself handed the Manuscript Copies of this Tract to his above-mentioned Excellency the *Muscovite* Ambassador.

We ought also to remember the Reader, that our Author saith, Page 119, that whenever he mentions Miles, he means *French* Miles; but on this foot *Nanking* and *Peking* would be seven or eight hundred Hours distant from each other, when indeed they are not above two hundred, wherefore we have added [*Italian*] by reason that the *Chinese* Author might perhaps not only understand that Language, but have heard of such Miles, and not exactly account all his distances by *French* ones. Several Mistakes of this nature we have prevented, as well as reconciled some seeming Contradictions, and sometimes left Blanks with dots, thus as in the twentieth Chapter, that the Reader may make use of his own Judgment to determine the Breadth and Length of the Stones there, and adjust them to the *French* Mile or an Hour's Walk. For the same reason also, a few Pages farther, we have forbore too expressly to fix the time of the Birth and Death of *Confucius*, as well as the number of his Pupils; nor have we pretended to determine how many Years he was born before *Christ*, nor averred his Death to be in the seventy third Year of his Age, much less have we disputed whether he had seventy or seven hundred Scholars. It would be impertinent to point out any more Particulars of this nature; the Reader will find most of them observed in the Notes, to which we refer him, and take our Leaves; lest we shou'd disproportionately overload a short Description with a long Apology: Desiring the Reader only to put a favourable Construction upon any Mistakes he may meet with.

F I N I S.

